

THE

Country Gentleman's COMPANION.

CONTAINING,

- | | |
|---|--|
| <p>I. Directions for the Choice, Ordering, Dietting, and Breeding of Draft, Road, Hunting, and Running HORSES; the whole Art of Riding them; and the most approved Remedies for all the Diseases and Accidents they are subject to.</p> <p>II. The Ordering and Breeding of Bulls, Cows, Calves, Oxen, Sheep, Lambs, Goats, Swine, and Rabbits; and the best Remedies for the Cure of their respective Diseases.</p> <p>III. The fattening, cramming, and curing of Cocks, Hens, Capons, Chickens, Geese, and Turkeys; and of feeding Swans, Pheasants, Partridges, Pidgeons,</p> | <p><i>Quails, Doves, and other small Birds.</i></p> <p>IV. The Nature, Ordering, and Preservation of Bees.</p> <p>V. The Arts of Hunting, Coursing, Hawking, Angling, Fishing, and other Country Recreations; of curing Hawks, Hounds, &c. of ordering and making Fish-Ponds; and of taking and preserving Fish.</p> <p>VI. The Choice, Ordering, Breeding, and Dietting of Fighting Cocks, both before and after Battle.</p> <p>VII. A compendious Gardener's Kalendar, shewing what Work is to be done, monthly, in the Kitchen, Fruit, and Flower-Garden.</p> |
|---|--|

By a COUNTRY GENTLEMAN,

From his own Experience.

THE SECOND EDITION, including the Two Volumes
of the *London Impression.*

D U B L I N :

Printed for PETER WILSON, in *Damo-street.*

MDCCLV.



COMPTON DEC 10 1950

EXHIBIT A-102

1. The Commission of the European Communities (CEC) has been established to coordinate the economic and social policies of the member states and to ensure the functioning of the common market.

11. The following is a summary of the results of the study conducted by the author in the field of the history of the development of the Russian language in the 19th century. The results show that the Russian language underwent a significant transformation during this period, characterized by a shift from a predominantly literary language to a more spoken, colloquial form. This transformation was driven by a number of factors, including the influence of the French Revolution, the rise of the middle class, and the efforts of language reformers. The study also highlights the role of the press and the educational system in promoting these changes. The findings suggest that the Russian language of the 19th century was a product of both internal and external influences, and that it played a crucial role in the development of Russian literature and culture.

BY A COUNTRY GENTLEMAN

... 21 ... 13 ...

1. The following information was obtained from the files of the Department of the Interior, Bureau of Land Management, regarding the land in question:

U. S. N. I. M.

1995, 1996, 1997, 1998, 1999, 2000, 2001, 2002, 2003, 2004, 2005, 2006, 2007, 2008, 2009, 2010, 2011, 2012, 2013, 2014, 2015, 2016, 2017, 2018, 2019, 2020, 2021, 2022, 2023, 2024, 2025, 2026, 2027, 2028, 2029, 2030, 2031, 2032, 2033, 2034, 2035, 2036, 2037, 2038, 2039, 2040, 2041, 2042, 2043, 2044, 2045, 2046, 2047, 2048, 2049, 2050, 2051, 2052, 2053, 2054, 2055, 2056, 2057, 2058, 2059, 2060, 2061, 2062, 2063, 2064, 2065, 2066, 2067, 2068, 2069, 2070, 2071, 2072, 2073, 2074, 2075, 2076, 2077, 2078, 2079, 2080, 2081, 2082, 2083, 2084, 2085, 2086, 2087, 2088, 2089, 2090, 2091, 2092, 2093, 2094, 2095, 2096, 2097, 2098, 2099, 2100, 2101, 2102, 2103, 2104, 2105, 2106, 2107, 2108, 2109, 2110, 2111, 2112, 2113, 2114, 2115, 2116, 2117, 2118, 2119, 2120, 2121, 2122, 2123, 2124, 2125, 2126, 2127, 2128, 2129, 2130, 2131, 2132, 2133, 2134, 2135, 2136, 2137, 2138, 2139, 2140, 2141, 2142, 2143, 2144, 2145, 2146, 2147, 2148, 2149, 2150, 2151, 2152, 2153, 2154, 2155, 2156, 2157, 2158, 2159, 2160, 2161, 2162, 2163, 2164, 2165, 2166, 2167, 2168, 2169, 2170, 2171, 2172, 2173, 2174, 2175, 2176, 2177, 2178, 2179, 2180, 2181, 2182, 2183, 2184, 2185, 2186, 2187, 2188, 2189, 2190, 2191, 2192, 2193, 2194, 2195, 2196, 2197, 2198, 2199, 2200, 2201, 2202, 2203, 2204, 2205, 2206, 2207, 2208, 2209, 2210, 2211, 2212, 2213, 2214, 2215, 2216, 2217, 2218, 2219, 2220, 2221, 2222, 2223, 2224, 2225, 2226, 2227, 2228, 2229, 2230, 2231, 2232, 2233, 2234, 2235, 2236, 2237, 2238, 2239, 2240, 2241, 2242, 2243, 2244, 2245, 2246, 2247, 2248, 2249, 2250, 2251, 2252, 2253, 2254, 2255, 2256, 2257, 2258, 2259, 2260, 2261, 2262, 2263, 2264, 2265, 2266, 2267, 2268, 2269, 2270, 2271, 2272, 2273, 2274, 2275, 2276, 2277, 2278, 2279, 2280, 2281, 2282, 2283, 2284, 2285, 2286, 2287, 2288, 2289, 2290, 2291, 2292, 2293, 2294, 2295, 2296, 2297, 2298, 2299, 2300, 2301, 2302, 2303, 2304, 2305, 2306, 2307, 2308, 2309, 2310, 2311, 2312, 2313, 2314, 2315, 2316, 2317, 2318, 2319, 2320, 2321, 2322, 2323, 2324, 2325, 2326, 2327, 2328, 2329, 2330, 2331, 2332, 2333, 2334, 2335, 2336, 2337, 2338, 2339, 2340, 2341, 2342, 2343, 2344, 2345, 2346, 2347, 2348, 2349, 2350, 2351, 2352, 2353, 2354, 2355, 2356, 2357, 2358, 2359, 2360, 2361, 2362, 2363, 2364, 2365, 2366, 2367, 2368, 2369, 2370, 2371, 2372, 2373, 2374, 2375, 2376, 2377, 2378, 2379, 2380, 2381, 2382, 2383, 2384, 2385, 2386, 2387, 2388, 2389, 2390, 2391, 2392, 2393, 2394, 2395, 2396, 2397, 2398, 2399, 2400, 2401, 2402, 2403, 2404, 2405, 2406, 2407, 2408, 2409, 2410, 2411, 2412, 2413, 2414, 2415, 2416, 2417, 2418, 2419, 2420, 2421, 2422, 2423, 2424, 2425, 2426, 2427, 2428, 2429, 2430, 2431, 2432, 2433, 2434, 2435, 2436, 2437, 2438, 2439, 2440, 2441, 2442, 2443, 2444, 2445, 2446, 2447, 2448, 2449, 2450, 2451, 2452, 2453, 2454, 2455, 2456, 2457, 2458, 2459, 2460, 2461, 2462, 2463, 2464, 2465, 2466, 2467, 2468, 2469, 2470, 2471, 2472, 2473, 2474, 2475, 2476, 2477, 2478, 2479, 2480, 2481, 2482, 2483, 2484, 2485, 2486, 2487, 2488, 2489, 2490, 2491, 2492, 2493, 2494, 2495, 2496, 2497, 2498, 2499, 2500, 2501, 2502, 2503, 2504, 2505, 2506, 2507, 2508, 2509, 2510, 2511, 2512, 2513, 2514, 2515, 2516, 2517, 2518, 2519, 2520, 2521, 2522, 2523, 2524, 2525, 2526, 2527, 2528, 2529, 2530, 2531, 2532, 2533, 2534, 2535, 2536, 2537, 2538, 2539, 2540, 2541, 2542, 2543, 2544, 2545, 2546, 2547, 2548, 2549, 2550, 2551, 2552, 2553, 2554, 2555, 2556, 2557, 2558, 2559, 2560, 2561, 2562, 2563, 2564, 2565, 2566, 2567, 2568, 2569, 2570, 2571, 2572, 2573, 2574, 2575, 2576, 2577, 2578, 2579, 2580, 2581, 2582, 2583, 2584, 2585, 2586, 2587, 2588, 2589, 2590, 2591, 2592, 2593, 2594, 2595, 2596, 2597, 2598, 2599, 2600, 2601, 2602, 2603, 2604, 2605, 2606, 2607, 2608, 2609, 2610, 2611, 2612, 2613, 2614, 2615, 2616, 2617, 2618, 2619, 2620, 2621, 2622, 2623, 2624, 2625, 2626, 2627, 2628, 2629, 2630, 2631, 2632, 2633, 2634, 2635, 2636, 2637, 2638, 2639, 2640, 2641, 2642, 2643, 2644, 2645, 2646, 2647, 2648, 2649, 2650, 2651, 2652, 2653, 2654, 2655, 2656, 2657, 2658, 2659, 2660, 2661, 2662, 2663, 2664, 2665, 2666, 2667, 2668, 2669, 2670, 2671, 2672, 2673, 2674, 2675, 2676, 26

245242

P R E F A C E.

THE Treatise which I have now send into the World, under the Title of *The Country Gentleman's Companion*, is the result of many Years Experience and Observation, about the breeding and preserving of all those Kinds of Animals, by which a Country may be truly benefited; and by which the Country Gentleman, who takes Delight in breeding, and preserving them from those Distempers to which all Kinds of them are liable, either by Nature or Accidents, will be honestly and innocently enriched, by his diligent and useful, and therefore commendable Industry: By which he shews himself a true Friend, and a Blessing to his Country.

The Rules which I have laid down for the choosing and breeding of all these Kinds of useful and profitable Animals, are clear and perfectly instructive, and such as (if carefully observed) will not fail of answering the End for which I have made them publick.

And the Remedies which I have here set forth, for their Preservation from all those various Maladies incident to every Kind of them, together with the most proper Methods of using and applying them, are such as I have, by often-repeated Experiments, and long and attentive Observation, found to be most effectual for answering the afore-mentioned necessary End; and they are such as may be easily, and almost every where, procured at a very small Expence. Many of them have been hitherto unknown

to any, except myself; and such of them as have been known to others, have been very little considered or regarded by them, on Account of their Ignorance of the proper Methods of using and applying them.

That the Book may answer the Title, I have also added some Directions for shooting in the Long-Bow, &c. with Advantage, being an Exercise very conducive to the Improvement of bodily Health and Strength, and therefore altogether useless in the Age, for training up Mankind in military Knowledge.

A Desire of being useful to my Country in particular, and to Mankind in general, was my only Inducement to make these Papers of Observation publick; for such a Book hath been long and greatly wanted, altho' Books of Husbandry in this Age have greatly abounded. But I think I may with Truth say, that the Reader of this Book will find it perfect in its Kind; and that as there is nothing in it superfluous, impertinent, or unnecessary, so there is nothing omitted that is necessary for contributing to the Advancement of either the Profit or Pleasure of a Country Life, so far as they depend upon the breeding, and preserving from Distempers, all Kinds of useful and profitable Animals.



THE Country Gentleman's COMPANION.

CHAP. I.

Of the Horse in general.

FOR the Choice of the best Horse, it is divers, according to the Use for which you will employ him. If therefore you would have a Horse for the Wars, you shall chuse him that is of a good tall Stature, with a comely lean Head, an out-swelling Forehead, a large sparkling Eye, the White whereof is covered with the Eyebrows, and not at all discerned; or if at all, yet the least is best; a small thin Ear, short and pricking: If it be long, well carried, and ever moving, it is tolerable; but if dull or hanging, most hateful. A deep Neck, large Crest, broad Breast, bending Ribs, broad and straight Chine, round and full Buttock, with his Huckle-bones hid, a Tail high and broad, set on neither too thick nor too thin; for too much Hair shews Sloth, and too little too much Choler and Heat. A full, swelling Thigh, a broad, flat, and lean Leg, short pastern'd, strong jointed, and hollow Bones; of which the long is best, if they be not wrier'd, and the broad round the worst.

*Colours of
Horses.*

The best Colours are Brown-bay, Dapple-gray, Roand, Bright-bay, Black, with a white Near-foot behind, white Far-foot before, white Rache, or white Star; Chesnut or Sorrel, with any of those Marks, or Dun with a black Lift: And of these Horses, for the Wars, the Courser of *Naples* is accounted the best, the *Almain*, the *Sardinian*, or the *French*.

*Horses for
a Prince's
Seat.*

If you will chuse a Horse for a Prince's Seat, any supream Magistrate, or for any great Lady of State, or Woman of Eminence, you shall chuse him that is of the finest Shape, the best Rein, who naturally bears his Head in the best Place, without the Help of the Man's Hand; that is of nimblest and easiest Pace, gentle to get upon, bold without making Affrights, and most familiar and quiet in the Company of other Horses. His Colour should ever be Milk white, with red Frains, or without; or else fair Dapple-gray, with white Main and white Tail: And of these the *English* is best, then the *Hungarian*, the *Swedish*, the *Polish*, the *Irish*.

*Horses for
Travel.*

If you will chuse a Horse only for Travel, ever the better Shape, the better Hope; especially look that his Head be lean, Eyes swelling outward, his Neck well risen, his Chine well risen, his Joints very strong; but above all, his Pasterns short and straight, without bending in his going, and exceeding hollow and tough Hoofs. Let him be of temperate Nature, neither too furious nor too dull, willing to go without forcing, and not desirous to run when there is no Occasion.

*Hunting-
Horse.*

If you will chuse a Horse for Hunting, let his Shape in general be strong and well knit together, making equal Proportions; for as unequal Shapes shew Weakness, so equal Members assure Strength and Endurance. Your unequal Shapes are a great Head to a little Neck, a big Body to a thin Buttock, a large Limb to a little Foot, or any of these Contraries, or where any Member suits not with the whole Proportion of the Body, or with any Limb next adjoining. Above all, let your Hunting-Horse have a large lean



a big Weftand, and the Wind-pipe ftraight, loofe, well covered, and not bent in the Pride of his Reining. The *Engliſh* Horſe baſtardized with any of the former Races firſt ſpoke of, is of all the beſt.

If you chuſe a Horſe for Running, let him have all the fineſt Shape that may be; but above all Things, let him be nimble, quick and fiery, apt to fly with the leaſt Motion. Long Shapes are ſufferable; for though they ſhew Weakneſs, yet they aſſure ſudden Speed: And the beſt Horſe for this Uſe is the *Arabian*, *Barbary*, or his Baſtard Jennets are good, but the *Turkiſh* are better.

Running-Horſes.

If you will chuſe a Horſe for the Coach, which is called the Swift-Draught, let his Shape be tall, broad, and well furniſh'd, not groſs with much Fleſh, but with the Bigneſs of his Bones; eſpecially look he have a ſtrong Neck, a broad Breſt, a large Chine, ſound clean Limbs, and tough Hoofs: And for this Purpoſe, your large *Engliſh* Geldings are beſt, your *Flemiſh* Mares next, and your ſtrong ſton'd Horſes tolerable, *Flemiſh* or *Friſons*.

Coach-Horſes.

If you will chuſe a Horſe for Portage, that is, for the Pack or Hampers, chuſe him that is exceeding ſtrong of Body and Limbs, but not tall, with a broad Back, out Ribs, full Shoulders, and thick Withers; for if he be thin in that Part, you ſhall hardly keep his Back from galling: Be ſure that he take a ſtrong Stride with his Feet, for their Pace being neither Trot nor Amble, but only a Footpace, he which takes the largeſt Strides goes at the moſt Eaſe, and rides his Ground ſeaſteſt.

Pack-Horſes.

Laſtly, if you will chuſe a Horſe for the Cart or Plough, which is the ſlow Draught, chuſe him that is of moſt ordinary Height, for Horſes in the Cart unequally ſorted, never draw at Eaſe, but the tall hang up the low Horſe. Let them be of good ſtrong Portion, big breſted, large bodied, and ſtrong limb'd; by Nature rather inclined to crave the Whip, than to draw more than is needful.

Cart-Horſes.

And for this Purpoſe, Mares are moſt profitable; for, beſides the effecting of your Work, they yearly bring you forth Increaſe: Therefore,

Of Mares.

if you furnish your Draught with Mares to breed, observe in any wise to have them fair Fore-handed, that is, good Head, Neck, Breast and Shoulders; for the rest it is not so regardful, only let their Bodies be large, for the bigger Room a Foal hath in the Dam's Belly, the fairer are his Members: And above all Things, observe never to put your Draught-Beasts to the Saddle, for that alters their Pace, and hurts them in their Labour.

Now for the ordering of these several Horses: First, for the Horse for Service, during the Time of his Teaching, which is out of the Wars, you shall keep him high and lustily; his Food no Straw, but good Hay; his Provender clean dry Oats, or two Parts Oats, and one Part Beans or Pease, well dryed and hard. The Quantity of Half a Peck at a Watering, Morning, Noon, and Evening, is sufficient.

In his Days of Rest, you shall dress him betwixt Five and Six in the Morning, water betwixt Seven and Eight, and feed from Nine till after Eleven. In the Afternoon you shall dress betwixt Three and Four, water betwixt Four and Five, and give Provender till Six; the Litter at Eight, and give Food for all Night. The Night before he is ridden, you shall at Nine of the Clock at Night take away his Hay from him. At Four of the Clock in the Morning give him a Handful or two of Oats, which being eaten, turn him upon his Snaffle, rub all his Body and Legs over with dry Cloths, then saddle him, and make him fit for his Exercise. Soon as he is call'd for to be ridden, wash his Bit in fair Water, and put it into his Mouth with all other Things necessary, draw up his Girts, and see that no Buckles hurt him: Then lead him forth, and as soon as he hath been ridden, all sweating as he is, lead him into the Stable; and first rub him quickly over with dry Wisps, then take off his Saddle, and having rub'd him all over with dry Cloths, put on his Housing-cloth, then set on the Saddle again, and girt it; then lead him forth, and walk him up and down in gentle Manner, an Hour or more, till he be cold, then set him up, and after two or three Hours fasting, turn him to his Meat. Then in the Afternoon curb, rub, and dress him; then water him, and order him as is aforesaid.

For ordering of the Horse for a Prince, or great Lady's Seat, let it be in his Time of Rest, like unto the Horse for Service; and in his Time of Labour, like the travelling Horse, as shall be shewed instantly; only because he is to be more choicely kept, I mean in the beautifullest Manner, his Coat lying smooth and shining, and his whole Body without any Stain or ill-favouredness, you shall ever when he hath been ridden, and cometh in much sweating, presently have him into the Stable, and first rub him down with clean Wisps; then taking off his Saddle, with a Sword-blade, whose Edge is rebated, you shall stroke his Neck and Body clean over, leaving no Sweat nor Filth that can be gotten out; then cloath him up and set on the Saddle, and walk him forth as aforesaid. After, order and diet him as you do other travelling Horses. Dry Oats are his best Provender, if he be fat and full; and Oats and Beans if he be poor, or subject to lose his Flesh quickly.

*Ordering
of Horses
for a
Prince's
Seat.*

For your travelling Horse, you shall feed him with the finest Hay in the Winter, and the sweetest Grass in Summer. His Provender should be dry Oats, Beans, Pease or Bread, according to his Stomach. In the Time of Rest, Half a Peck at a Watering is sufficient. In the Time of his Labour, as much as he will eat with a good Stomach. When you travel him, water two Hours before you ride, then rub, dress, and lastly feed; then bridle up, and let him stand an Hour before you take his Back. Travel moderately in the Morning, till his Wind be rack'd, and his Limbs warm'd; then after do as your Affairs require. Be sure at Night to water your Horse two Miles before you come to your Journey's End, then the warmer you bring him to his Inn, the better. Walk not, nor wash not at all; the one doth beget Colds, the other foundering in the Feet or Body; but set him up warm, well dopt, and soundly rub'd with clean Litter. Give no Meat whilst the outwards Parts of your Horse are hot or wet with Sweat, as the Ear-roots, the Flanks, the Neck, or under his Chaps; but being dry, rub and feed him according to the Goodness of his Stomach. Change of Food begetteth a Stomach; so doth the washing of the

*Ordering
of travel-
ling Horses.*

Tongue or Nostrils with Vinegar, Wine and Salt, or warm Wine. Stop not your Horse's Fore-feet with Cow's Dung, till he be sufficiently cold, and that the Blood and Humours which were dispersed, be settled into their proper Places. Look well to his Back, that the Saddle hurt not; to the Girts, that they gall not; and to his Shoes, that they be large, fast, and easy.

*Ordering
of Hunt-
ing-Horses.*

For the ordering of your Hunting-Horse, let him in the Time of his Rest have all the Quietness that may be, much Litter, much Meat, and much Dressing; Water ever by him, and leave him to sleep as long as he pleaseth. Keep him to dung rather soft than hard, and look that it be well coloured and bright; for Darknes shews Grease, and Rednes inward Heating. Let Exercises and Marshes of sweet Malt after be his usual Scourings, and let Bread of clean Beans, or Beans and Wheat equally mixt, be his best Food, and Beans and Oats the most ordinary.

*Ordering
of Run-
ning-Hor-
ses.*

For the ordering of your Running-Horse, let him have no more Meat than to suffice Nature, Drink once in four and twenty Hours, and Dressing every Day once, at Noon only. Let him have much moderate Exercise, as Morning and Evening Airings, or the fetching of his Water, and know no Violence but in his Courses only. Let him stand dark and warm, have many Cloaths, and much Litter, being Wheat-Straw only. If he be very fat, scour often. If of reasonable State, scour seldom. If lean, then scour but with a sweet Marsh only. Be sure your Horse be empty before he course, and let his Food be the finest, lightest and quickest of Digestion that may be. The Sweats are more wholesome that are given Abroad; and the Cooling most natural, which is given before he come into the Stable. Keep his Limbs with cool Ointments, and by no Means let any hot Spices come in his Body. If he grow dry inwardly, wash'd Meat is very wholesome. If he grow loose, then give him Straw in more Abundance. Burning of sweet Perfume in the Stable is wholesome, and any Thing you either do about your Horse, or give unto your Horse, the more neat, cleanly and sweet that it is, the better it nourisheth.

For ordering the Coach-Horse, let him have good Dressing twice a Day, Hay and Provender his Belly full, and Litter enough to tumble on, and he cannot chuse but prosper. Let him be walk'd and wash'd after travelling; for by reason of their many Occasions to stand still, they must be inured to all Hardness, though it be much unwholesome. Their best Food is sweet Hay, and well dried Beans or Oats, or Bean-bread. Look well to the Strength of their Shoes, and the galling of their Harness. Keep their Legs clean, especially about the hinder Fetlocks; and when they are in the House, let them stand warmly cloathed.

*Ordering
of Coach-
Horses.*

For the ordering of the Pack-Horse, or the Cart-Horse, they need no Washing, Walking, or Hours of Fasting; only dress them well, look to their Shoes and Backs, and then fill their Bellies, and they will do their Labour. Their best Food is sweet Hay, Chaff or Pease, or Oat-hulls and Pease, or chop'd Straw and Pease mixt together; once a Week to give them warm Grains and Salt is not amiss, for their Labour will prevent the breeding of Worms, or such like Mischiefs.

*Ordering
of the Pack
and Cart-
Horse.*

Now for the general Preservation of Horses Health, it is good whilst a Horse is in Youth and Strength to let him Blood twice in the Year, that is, in the Beginning of the Spring and Beginning of the Fall, when you may best afford him a Week's Rest. After you have let him Blood two Days, give him a comfortable Drench; as two Spoonfuls of *Diapente*, or such like, which is called *Horse Mitbridate*, in a Quart of strong Ale. Use oft to perfume his Head with Frankincense, and in the Heat of Summer use oft to swim him. Let a fat Horse drink oft, and a little at once; and a lean Horse whensoever he hath Appetite. Much rubbing is comfortable, and cheareth every Member. Be sure to let your Horse eat Grasse once in a Year, for that cooleth the Blood, scours away gross Humours, and gives great Strength and Nourishment to the Body. If notwithstanding all these Principles, your Horse fall into Sickness and Disease, then look into the Chapters following, and you shall find

*For the Pre-
servation
of all Hor-
ses.*

the trueſt, beſt approved, and the moſt familiar Medicines for all Manner of Infirmities, that ever were known or publiſhed.

C H A P. II.

Of Riding in general; and of the particular Knowledge belonging to the Art of Riding of a great Horſe, or Horſe for Service or Pleaſure.

FIRST then to ſpeak of the taming of a young Colt, which is as it were the Preface or Introduction to the Art of Riding. You ſhall after he hath been in the Houſe a Week or Fortnight, and is familiar with the Man, and will withal patiently endure currying, combing, rubbing, clawing and handling in every Part and Member of his Body, without any Shew of Rebellion or Knaviſhneſs, which you ſhall compaſs by all gentle and eaſy Means, do nothing about him ſuddenly or raſhly, but with Leiſure and Moderation.

His Saddling and Bridling.

Then you ſhall offer him a Saddle, which you ſhall ſet in the Manger before him, that he may ſnell to it and look upon it, and you ſhall gingle the Girts and Stirrups about his Ears, to make him careleſs of the Noiſe; then with all Gentleneſs, after you have rub'd his Sides therewith, you ſhall ſet it on his Back, and gird it gently on, and then place his Crooper with all Eaſe; which done, you ſhall take a ſweet watering Trench, waſh'd and anointed with Honey and Salt, and put it into his Mouth, placing it to hang directly about his Tuſh, and as it were a little leaning thereupon. This you ſhall do in the Morning as ſoon as you have dreſs'd him, and then thus ſaddled and bridled, you ſhall lead him forth, and water him in your Hand abroad: Then bringing him in, and after he hath ſtood a little reined upon his Trench, an Hour or more, take away the Bridle and Saddle; and let him go to his Meat till the Evening. Then lead him forth (as before) with the Saddle to the Water; then when he is ſet up, gently take off his Saddle,

le, and cherish him, and then dress him and cloath him
p for all Night.

The next Day saddle and bridle him as
efore said, and put on him a strong Musrole
f writhen Iron, or a sharp Cavezan and
Martingal, which you shall buekle at such Length that
e may no more but feel it when he jirketh up his
Head, and then lead him forth into some new-plowed
field, or soft Ground; and there, after you have made
him trot a good Space about you in your Hand, and
hereby taken away from him all his Wantonness and
navish Distractions, you shall offer your Foot to the
stirrup, at which if he shews any Distaste, either in
ody or Countenance, you shall then course him about
gain: Then offer again, and with Leisure rise Half
Way up, and go down again; at which if he shrink,
correct him as before, but if he take it patiently, then
cherish him and so mount on the Saddle; which done,
after cherishing, light down again, and give him Bread
or Grasse to eat. Then look that your Girts be well
girted and straight; that the Crooper be strong, and of
just Length; that the Bridle hang even, and in its due
Place, without inward or outward Offence; that your
stirrups be fit, and generally all Things without Offence,
either to yourself or to the Beast, and then, as before, mount
his Back: Seat yourself just and even in the Saddle, make
the Reins of your Bridle of equal Length, carry your
Rod without Offence to his Eye in your Right-hand, the
Point either directly upright, or thwarted toward your
Left-shoulder. Then having cherish'd him, let the
Groom which before led him, having his Hand on the
Chaff-halter, lead him forward a dozen or twenty Paces;
then gently straining your Hand, with the Help of the
Footman, make him stand still: Then cherish him and
lead him forward again, and do this five or six Times
one after another, till by continual Use you make him of
your own Accord (without the Footman's Help, by
giving your Body and thrusting your Legs forward) go
forward, which as soon as he doth, you shall stay him
and cherish him; and then sitting on his Back, let your
Footman lead him Home, and bring him to the Black;
where, after you have cherish'd him, you shall gently
alight.

*The first
Backing.*

alight and cause him to be led up, and well dress'd and meated. The next Day you shall bring him forth as before, and in all Points take his Back as aforesaid, and so by the Help of the Footman trot him Fore-right Half a Mile at least; then let the Footman lay off his Hand and walk by him, till you have of yourself trotted him forth another Half Mile. Then cherish him, and make the Footman give him some Grass or Bread to eat; and then taking a large Compass, trot him Home and bring him to the Block as before, and there alight and set him up.

The third Day let your Footman light upon some spare Jade, and then bringing your Colt to the Block take his Back gently; and after you have cherish'd him the other riding before you, follow him forth-right a Mile, ever and anon, at the End of twenty or thirty Score, stopping the Colt gently, cherishing him, and making him yield and go back a Step or two, and then putting him forward again, till he be so perfect, that with the least Motion he will go forward, stop, and retire, which will be effected in two Days more: In which Space, if he chance at any Time to strike or rebel, you shall make him which rides before you take the spare Rein, and lead him forward, whilst you give him two or three good Lashes under the Belly, and then being in his Way, take the spare Rein to yourself again; and thus you shall do, till all Faults be amended. Then you shall spare your Horseman, or Guide, and only by yourself for three or four Days more trot him every Morning and Afternoon, at least a Mile or two forward using him only to stop and retire, and bringing him Home a contrary Way to that you went forth, till he be so perfect and willing, that he will take his Way how or in what Manner yourself please, ever observing to mount and dismount at the Block only, except some special Occasion constrain you to the contrary.

This you may very well bring to pass the first Week of the Horse's riding.

*The three
main Points
of a Horse-
man's Skill.*

As soon as you see your Horse will receive you to his Back, trot forth-right, stop and retire, and do all this with great Patience and Obedience; you shall then call into your Mind the three main Points of a Horse-
man's

man's Knowledge, which are Helps, Corrections, and Cherishings; and for Helps they consist in these: First, The Voice, which sounding sharply and chearfully, crying *Via, How, Hey,* and such like, add a Spirit and Liveliness to the Horse, and lend a great Help to all his Motions: Then the Bridle, which restrain'd or at Liberty, helps him how to do, and shews which Way to do: Then the Rod, which being only shewed is a Help to direct; being only moved, helps the Quickness and Nimbleness of the Motion; and being gently touch'd withal, helps the Loftiness of a Horse's Salts and Leaps, and makes him as it were gather all his Strength in one Point: And lastly, the Calves of the Legs, Stirrup-leathers and Stirrups, which moved by the Horse's Side, help him to Nimbleness, Swiftmess, and Readiness in turning. Some to these Helps add the Help of the Spur, chiefly in high Salts or Boundings, but it must be done in a just and true Time, and with such gentle Bitterness, that the Horse may understand it for a Help, or else he will take Distaste; and finding it favour like Correction, instead of bettering his Doings, do with more Disorder, as to spraul with his Fore-feet in advancing, to jerk out with one or both his Hinder-feet in the Corveit or Bounding, shaking of his Head, and such like, as will appear in Practice.

Now of Corrections, the most principal is the Spur, which must not at any Time be given triflingly or itchingly, but soundly and sharply, as oft as just Occasion shall require: Then the Rod, which upon Disorder, Sloth, or Miscarriage of the Members, must be given also soundly: Then the Voice, which being delivered sharply and roughly, as, *Ha Villain, Diablo,* and such like Threatnings, terrify the Horse, and make him afraid to disobey: And lastly the Bridle, which now and then stricken with a hard Choke in his Mouth, reformeth many Vices and Distemperatures of his Head. Yet this last must be done seldom, and with great Discretion, for to make a Custom thereof, is the ready Way to spoil a Horse's Mouth.

Of Corrections, and which they be.

Now

Of Cherishings.

Now of Cherishings, there are generally in Use but three; as first the Voice, which being deliver'd smoothly and lovingly, as crying, *Holla, so Boy, there Boy, there*, and such like, gives the Horse both a Chearfulness of Spirit, and a Knowledge that he hath done well: Then the Hand, by clapping him gently on the Neck or Buttock, or giving him Grass or other Food to eat, after he hath pleased you: And lastly, the big End of the Rod, by rubbing him therewith upon the Withers or Maine, which is very pleasing and delightful to the Horse.

Of the Musrole and Martingale.

Now after these ordinary and actual Helps, Corrections and Cherishings, you shall have respect to the Musrole, or Cavezan and Martingale, which carry in them all the three former both severall and unite; for it is first an especial Help and Guide to every well-disposed Horse, for setting of his Head in a true Place, forming of his Rein, and making him appear comely and gallant in the Eyes of the Beholders; then it is a sharp Correction when a Horse jerketh out his Nose, or disordereth his Head any Way, or striveth to plunge or run away with his Rider: And lastly, it is a great Cherishing unto the Beast, when he yieldeth his Head to your Hand by shrinking from his Face, and so leaving any more to torment him, but when he offendeth. Whence it comes that more from this than any Thing else, the Horse first gaineth the Knowledge of his Master's Will, and is desirous to perform it; therefore you shall be very careful to the placing of this upon the Horse: As first, that it hang somewhat low, and rest upon the tender Grissel of the Horse's Nose, whereby the Correction may be the sharper when Occasion requires it. Then that it be loose and not straight, whereby the Horse may feel upon the yielding in of his Head, how the Offence goeth from him, and so know that only his own Disorder is his own Punishment. Lastly, he shall be careful to note how he winneth the Horse's Head, and by those Degrees to draw his Martingale straiter and straiter, so as the Horse may ever have a gentle Feeling of the same, and no more, till his Head and Rein be brought to that Perfection that you desire, and then there to stay and keep the

the Martingale constantly in that Place only, which you shall perform in those few Days which you trot your Horse forth-right, being before you bring him to any Lesson, more than the Knowledge of yourself, and how to receive you to his Back, and trot forth obediently with you.

When your Horse is brought into some Certainty of Rein, will trot forth-right with you at your Pleasure, and by your former Exercise therein is brought to breathe and delight in his Travel, which will grow and increase upon him, as you grow and increase in your Labour; then you shall bring him to the treading forth of the large Rings, in this Manner.

Of treading the large Ring.

First, If he be of a heavy and sluggish Nature, slothful and dull, and albeit he have Strength and Sufficiency of Body, yet you find him slovenly and unapt, then you shall trot him into some new plowed Field, soft and deep: But if he be of quick and fiery Spirit, apt, nimble, and ready to learn, then you shall trot him into some sandy or gravelly Place, where is strong and firm Foot-hold, and there you shall mark out a spacious large Ring, at least three-score or fourscore Paces in Compass; and having walked him six or seven Times about the same on your Right-hand, you shall then by a little straitning of your Right-rein, and laying the Calf of your Left-leg to his Side, make a Half Circle within your Ring upon your Right-hand, down to the Center or Mid-point thereof, and then by straitning your Left-rein a little, and laying the Calf of your Right-leg to his Side, making another Half Circle to your Left-hand from the Center to the outmost Verge, which two half Circles contrary turned, will make a perfect *Roman S*, within the Ring. Then keeping your first large Circumference, walk your Horse about on your Left-hand as oft as you did on your Right, and then change within your Ring as you did before to your Right-hand again; then trot him first on the Right-hand, and then on the Left, so long as you shall think convenient. And although our ancient Masters in this Art have prescribed unto us certain Numbers of Ring-turns, and how oft it is meet to go about on either

Choice of Ground.

either Hand, as if all Horses were of one even Ability, yet I would wish you to neglect those Rules, and only to practise your Horse in this Lesson, according to the Strength of his Body, sometimes applying him therein an Hour, sometimes two, and sometimes three, more or less, according to your Discretion: For the Space of Time can neither bring Weariness nor Tiring; and for your change of Hands, you shall do it as oft as shall seem best to yourself, being ever very careful to give him the most Exercise, and that Hand on which he is ever most unwilling to go. And in this Lesson be careful also that he do it chearfully, lustily, nimbly quickning and inflaming his Spirits by all the Means possible; and when you find that he will trot his large Rings perfectly, which will questionless be in less than a Week's Space, being well applied therein, for you must not neglect any Morning, except the *Sabbath-Day*, hardly any Afternoon.

Of galloping large Rings.

Also if you find him slothful and heavy for there is no greater Hinderance than the Rider's too much Tenderneſs, nor no greater Furtherance than a continual moderate Exercise: Therefore, as I said, when he will trot his Rings well, then in the same Manner, and with the same Changes, you shall make him gallop the same Rings, which he shall do also with great Dexterity, Lightness, and much Nimbleness, without losing the least Part or Grace of his best Rein; nay, so careful you shall be thereof, that in his galloping, you shall, as it were, gather his Body together, and make his Rein rather better than it was, and make him take up his Feet so truly and loftily, that not any Eye may see or perceive a Falshood in his Stroke, but that his inward Feet play before his outward, and each of a Side follow the other so directly, that his Gallop may appear as the best Grace of all his Motions; neither shall you enter him into this Lesson rashly and hastily, but soberly and with Discretion, making him first gallop a Quarter of the Ring, then Half, then three Parts, and lastly the whole Ring; neither shall you force him into his Gallop with Violence, or the Sharpness of Spurs, but with Spirit and Mettle, making him by the Lightness and

Chearfulness

Chearfulness of your own Body, pass of his own accord into his Gallop; and especially in his Changes, where you may let him feel your Leg, and shew him your Rod on the contrary Side. And herein is to be noted, that continually those Changes (in as much as they are made in a much straiter Compass) must be done ever with great Quickness, and more stirring Nimbleness than intire Lessons.

Now for the Helps necessary in these large Ring-turns, they consist generally in the Voice, Rod, Calves of your Legs, and the Bridle: In the Voice, by quickning him up, and reviving his Spirits when he grows

*Helps in
the large
Ring-
turns.*

slothful, with these Words, *How, Hey, or Via*. In the Rod, by shewing it him on the contrary Side, or laying it on the contrary Shoulder, and sometimes by shaking it over his Head, (which is a Kind of threatening) chiefly when you make your Changes: In the Calves of your Legs, when you clap them hard to the contrary Side, to which he turneth, or by springing and jerking your Legs forward hard upon your Stirrup-leathers, which will quicken him and make him gather up his Limbs better than the Spur by many Degrees: And lastly in the Bridle, by drawing it in a little straiter, and holding it with some more Constancy when you put any of your former Helps in Use, or do any Thing with more Life or Courage, for that maketh him draw his Limbs together, and to straiten his Rings with gracely Comeliness.

For the Corrections in these large Rings, they be divers; as namely, the Bridle, the Spur, and the Rod, and sometimes the Voice, yet that but seldom. For the Bridle, you shall correct your Horse therewith, if

*Corrections
in the
Ring-
turns.*

he carry Head or Chaps awry, make as it were Mouths and ill-favoured Countenances, giving him now and then a little Check in the Mouth, and awakening him from such forgetful Passions, or now and then drawing the Trench to and fro in his Mouth, which will reform the Error: Then the Spur, which must be laid sharp and hard to his Sides, when you find your Helps will do no good, but that his Sloth rather more and more increaseth, or when he presseth and hangeth hard upon your

your Hand, or looseth the Touch of his Rein, or such like Vices. For the Rod, when you find that he neglecteth the shewing or shaking of it, or when he disordereth any of his Hinder-parts and will not gather them up comely together, then you shall therewith give him a sound Lash or two under the Belly, or over the contrary Shoulder; and to any of these former Corrections, you shall ever accompany the threatning of your Voice, when the Fault is too much foul, and no otherwise, because there should be ever an entire Love betwixt the Horse and the Horse-man; which continual Chiding will either take away, or at least root out the Apprehensions thereof.

*Cherishing
in the
Ring-
turns.*

Now for your Cherishings, they are those which I formerly spake of; only they must be used at no Time but when your Horse doth well, and hath pleased your Mind, both with his Cunning and Tractableness: And although the Time for the same be when he hath finish'd his Lessons, yet there is a secret pleasing and cherishing of a Horse with the Bridle, which must be exercised in the doing of his Lessons; and that is the sweetning of his Mouth by a little ceasing of your Bridle-hand, and gently drawing it up back again, letting it come and go with such an unperceiving Motion, that none but the Beast may know it.

*Of stopping
and giving
back.*

When your Horse can trot and gallop these large Rings with all Perfectness, which with good Industry will be perfected in less than a Fortnight's Exercise, you shall then proceed to make him stop fair, comely, and without Danger, which you shall do in this Manner: First, as soon as you have taken his Back, cherish him, put him gently forward, and bring him into a swift Trot. After you have trotted him forty or three-score Yards forward, you shall, by drawing in your Bridle-hand straitly and suddenly, make him gather his Hinder-legs and Fore-legs together, and so in an Instant stand still; which, as soon he doth immediately, you shall ease your Hand a little, yet not so much as may give him Liberty to press Forward, but rather to yield Backward; which, if you find he doth, you shall give him more Liberty and

and cherish him, and then having paused awhile, draw in your Bridle-hand, and make him go back two or three Paces; at which if he stick instantly, ease your Hand and draw it up again, letting it come and go till he yield, and having paused a little, make him do it again, increasing it every Day, and doubling his Doings till he be so ready, that when you please to give the Jerk, he will then give the Jerk, and then you shall look to the Comeliness of his Doings; that is to say, that he jerk not out his Hinder-legs till his Fore-legs be above the Ground; then that he jerk not one Leg farther out than the other, but both even together; then that he jerk not too high; and lastly, that he jerk not one Leg out whilst the other is on the Ground, all which are Errors of great Grossness. Therefore to make the Horse more perfect in this Lesson, it shall be good to teach him to jerk out behind when he standeth in the Stable, by jerking him on the Buttocks with your Rod, and not ceasing to molest him till he raise his Rump above the Ground, and then to cherish him, and so to apply him without any Ease and Rest till he do your Will; then when he is perfect, to put the same in Practice when you are in the Field on his Back, by turning your Rod in your Hand toward his Buttock, and touching him therewith, to make him jerk as aforesaid.

For the Helps, they are the constant staying his Mouth on the Bridle, the stroke of your Rod under his Belly, or the gentle touching him upon the Rump with the same. *Helps.*

The Corrections are only the even Stroke of your Spurs, when either he refuseth to jerk, or jerketh out disorderly and out of Malice; or the single Spur, on that Side on which he jerketh out most disorderly: And lastly, a restless holding of him to the Lesson, not giving him any Rest or Ease, till he do it in that Manner which you can wish. *Corrections.*

Then for his Cherishings, they are all those formerly mention'd, being bestowed upon him in the very Instant of his Well-doing. *Cherishings.*

When your Horse is perfect in all the Lessons formerly spoke of, and understandeth the Helps and Corrections belonging

belonging to the same, you shall then teach him to turn readily on both Hands, by straitning his large Ring and bringing them into much less Compass: And although amongst Horse-men, and in the Art of Horsemanship, there are divers and sundry Turns, some high and lofty, as the Turn upon the Corveit, Capriole, on Bounds; some close and near the Ground, as the turn Tarra, Tarra, or these we call Caralogo, Sepeigiare, and such like; and some swift and flying, as the Incavalare, Chambetta, and such like; yet find they all labour but to one End, which is to bring a Horse to an exact Swiftnes and Readines in turning, will, in as brief and plain Manner as I can, shew you how to compass the same. First therefore, you shall make out a Ring, some three or four Yards in Compass and in the same, with all Gentleness, awhile walk your Horse, suffering him to go the same at his own Pleasure, gathering his Head up by a little and little, and making him take Pleasure in the same, till you find that he taketh Knowledge of the Ring, and will with all Willingness make about the same, coveting rather to straiten it, than enlarge it; which perceived, you shall then carry your Bridle-hand constant and somewhat in strait, yet the outmost Rein ever somewhat more strait than the inmost, making the Horse rather look from the Ring than into the Ring, and the Calf of your Leg (as Occasion shall serve) somewhat near to the outward Part of the Horse, and then you shall turn him about the Ring; first on the one Side, and then on the other, making your Changes within the strait Ring as you did before within the large Ring.

And in this Sort, without ceasing, you shall exercise your Horse a full Hour together; then stop him, making him advance twice or thrice together; then retire in an even Line, and so stand still a pretty while, and cherish him; then when he hath taken fresh Breath, to begin again, and do as before, continually labouring by raising up your Bridle-hand, and thrusting forward your Legs and Body, to bring his trot to all the Swiftnes and Loftines that may be, and in your Changes to do the same so readily and roundly as may be: Also, making him to lap his outmost Leg so much over his inmost Leg

that he may cover it more than a Foot over; and thus you shall exercise him a whole Forenoon, at least a Week together, only doing his former Lessons but once over in a Morning, and no more: And in this Practice you teach him perfectly three Lessons together, that is the Turn Tarra, Tarra, the Incavalare, and the Chambetta; the turn Tarra, Tarra, in the outmost Circle of the strait Ring, and the Incavalare and Chambetta in the Changes, wherein he is forced to lap one Leg over another, or else to lift up the inmost Leg from the Ground while he brings the outmost over it. And surely in this Ring and these Changes consisteth all the main Art of Turning, and the chiefest Glory, both of the Horse and Horse-man; and therefore it is meet for every Rider to think this Lesson never perfectly learnt, and consequently continually to practice his Horse in the same, making him not only tread and trot these narrow Rings, but also gallop them; and from galloping them, to pass them about in Ground-salts, as by taking up his Fore-legs from the Ground both together, and bringing his Hinder-feet into their Place, and so passing the Ring about once, or twice, or thrice, at your Pleasure, or as oft as the Horse's Strength and Courage will allow: And this is the true Turn, called Tarra, Tarra, and of greatest Request with Horse-men, and likewise with Soldiers; and this will every Horse naturally and easily be brought unto, only by a continual trotting and galloping of these narrow Rings. Thus you see the Perfectness of your large Rings brings your Horse to an easy Use of the strait Rings; and the easy Knowledge of the strait Rings brings a Horse to the Perfection of Turning, which is the Ground and main Sum of this Art, as stopping begets retiring, and retiring advancing. Thus every Lesson, as it were a Chain, is link'd one to another.

The Helps belonging to Turning, are *Helps.*
all whatsoever are formerly spoken of, because it is a Lesson, which besides that it containeth in itself all other Lessons, so it must be done with more Courage, Art, and Nimbleness, than any else whatsoever, and therefore the Horse had need of all the Assistance that can possibly be given him.

The

Corrections. The Corrections are the Spurs given on the outmost Side, when the Horse sticks, and is harder to come about on the one Side, than on the other; and the Rod stricken hard on the outmost Side of the offending Member, as also a continual Labour, when the Horse shews either Unwillingness or Disobedience, touching the Slowness of his Turning; when he beats one Leg against another, or treads one Foot upon another, the Raps and Hurts he doth himself are sufficient Corrections, and will both make him know his Fault and amend it.

Cherishings.

For his Cherishings, they are also the former already spoke of; yet to be used, if possible, with greater Earnestness, in as much as this Lesson being most cunning, would for the Performance thereof ever receive the most Comfort.

Your Horse being brought to this Perfection, that he will perfectly tread his large Rings, stop, retire, advance before, jerk behind, and turn readily on either Hand, you shall then take away his Musrole and Trench, and instead thereof put upon his Head a gentle Cavezan, or two Joints and three Pieces, with a Chap-band underneath, which you shall buckle close, but not strait; and be sure that the Cavezan lie upon the tender Grissel of the Horse's Nose, somewhat near to the Upper-part of his Nostrils; then to the Chap-band you shall fasten the Martingale: And lastly, to the Rings on each Side the Cavezan, you shall fasten long divided Reins, more than a Yard and a Half in Length a Piece; then into his Mouth you shall put a sweet, smooth Cannon-Bit, with a plain watering Chain, the Cheek being of large Size, so as it may arm a little above the Point of his Shoulder; and the Kirble shall be thick, round and large, hanging loosely upon his nether Lip, and inticing the Horse with his Lip to play with the same. Thus armed you shall take his Back, and casting the Left-rein of your Cavezan over the Horse's Right-shoulder, you shall bear it with your Thumb, with the Reins of the Bit in your Left-hand; and the Right-reins of the Cavezan you shall cast over the Horse's Left-shoulder, and bear it with your Rod in your Right-hand, and so trot him forth the first Morning out-right a Mile or two in the High-way,

way, making him only feel and grow acquainted with the Bit, and only making him now and then stop and retire, and gathering up his Head into a due Place, and fashioning his Rein with all the Beauty and Comeliness that may be; which done, the next Day you shall bring him to his large Rings, and as was before shewed, there make him perfect with the Bit as you did with the Snaffle: First in trotting, then in galloping of the same; then make him stop, retire, advance, jerk behind, and come upon the Hand with a great deal more Perfection, and more Grace than was formerly done with the Trench, which is an easy Labour, in as much as the Bit is of much better Command, and brings more Comeliness to the Horse's Motions; is also a greater Help, a sharper Correction, and a Cherisher of more Comfort than any before used. And thus in the first Month you may make any Horse perfect upon the Trench in the Lessons before spoke of; so in the second Month you may make the same Lessons a great deal more perfect upon the Bit, and so presume in two Months to have a perfect Ground-Horse, fit either for Soldier or Scholar, that hath any good Rules of Horsemanship in him.

Now forasmuch as the Art in Turning in
Horses is of great Difficulty, and ought of
all Lessons to be most elaborate, I will speak
a little further thereof, and shew you the
Practice of these present Times, for the best Accom-
plishment of the same, without stirring up evil Motions
in the Horse, whence Restiveness and other wild Errors
do grow; for it is certain that every Horse naturally
desireth neither Offence, nor to offend: But the Indif-
ference of ignorant Horse-men, which will compel a
Horse to do, before he know what, or how to do, is the
begetting of those Evils which are hardly or ever re-
claimed: For a Horse is like an ill-brought-up Boy, who
having learnt Drunkenness in his Youth, will hardly be
sober in his Age; and, having once got a knavish
Quality, though he be ever so much punished for the
same, will yet now and then shew that the Remem-
brance is not utterly extinguished: And forasmuch as in
this Lesson of strait Turns, there is so much curious
Hardness that a Horse is most subject to rebel, and learn
many

*Of the
Turning-
Post.*

many Evils thereby; therefore, to prevent all these Evils, you shall cause a smooth strong Post to be well ram'd and fix'd in the Earth in the Midst of the strait Ring, at the very Point and Centre thereof; then causing a Footman to stand at the Post, you shall give him the Right-rein of your Cavezan, which you shall make him hold about the Post, and so walk or trot your Horse about the same on your Right-hand as long as you please; then taking up the Right-rein, give him the Left-rein, and do as much upon the Left-hand, and thus change from Hand to Hand, as oft as you shall think convenient, till you have brought your Horse to the absolute Perfection of every Turn, the Post being such a Guide and Bond unto the Horse, that albeit the Horseman were of himself utterly ignorant, yet it is impossible the Horse should either disorder or disobey the Rider's Purpose.

Of Managing.

When your Horse can thus perfectly serve every several Turn either strait or open with his Bit, you shall then teach him to manage, which is the only Posture for the Use of the Sword on Horse-back, and you shall do it in this Manner: First, cause some By-stander to prick up in the Earth two riping Rods, about twenty or forty Yards or more, as you think good, distant one from the other; then walk your Horse in a strait Turn or Ring about the first on your Right-hand, and so passing him in an even Furrow down to the other Rod, walk about it also in a narrow Ring on your Left-hand; then thrust him into a gentle Gallop down the even Furrow, till you come to the first Rod, and there making him, as it were stop and advance, without any Pause or Intermission of Time, thrust him forward again, and beat the Turn Tarra, Tarra, about it on your Right-hand; then gallop forth right to the other Rod, and in the same Manner beat the Turn about on your Left-hand: And thus do as oft as you shall think it convenient for your own Practice and the Horse's Strength.

Diversities of Manages.

Now of these Manages, our ancient Masters in Horsemanship have made divers Kinds: As Manage with Rest, and Manage without Rest; Manage with Single-turns, and Manage with Double-turns;

Turns; which indeed doth rather breed Confusion than Understanding, in either the Horse or Horse-man: therefore, for your better Knowledge, I will reduce them only but to two Kinds; that is, Manage open, and Manage close. Your open Manage is that which I shewed you before, when you turn Tarra, Tarra, which is the most open of all strait Turns; and your close Manage is when you turn upon the Incavalare, or Hambetta, which are the closest of all Turns, and may be done as before I shewed in a flying Manner, even upon one Foot; which, although it be artful, yet it is not so glorious and safe for the Soldier's Practice; only this you may be most assured of, that when a Horse can manage upon both these Turns, he may manage without more Instruction upon any other Turn whatsoever.

When your Horse is perfect in the Manages before-said, you may then pass a *Career*, at your Pleasure; which is to run

*Of the
Career.*

Your Horse forthright at his full Speed, and then making him stop quickly, suddenly, firm, and close on his Buttock: In which Lesson there needeth little Instructions, but only some few Observations; as first, that you make not your Career too long, whereby the Horse may be weakened; nor too short, whereby his true Wind and Courage may be undiscovered; but competent and indifferent, as about four or five Score Yards at the most; then that you start him gently without a Fright; and lastly, that you first give him a little Warning with your riddle-hand, and then stop him firmly and strongly; which Place of Stop, if it be a little bending downward, is a great deal the better. And thus in these Lessons already shewed you, consisteth all the full Perfection of a Horse for Service in the Wars, which any painful Man may bring his Horse well unto, in less than three Months, however our Ancients in former Time have been blinded, and in the same Practice have wasted two Years ere they brought it to Perfection.

Now forasmuch as to the Art of Riding along divers other Salts and Leaps, right, pleasant, and curious to behold; and tho' not generally used in the Wars, yet not utterly useless for the same: And since they are many Times very needful

*Horses for
Pleasure.*

needful for the Health of Man's Body, I will by no Means abridge our *English* Husbandman of the same, but proceed to the Lessons which are meet for Horses of Pleasure; of which the first is to make a Horse bound aloft with his Fore-feet from the Ground; and you shall do it in this Manner.

Of bounding aloft.

When you have trotted your Horse forth-right a dozen or twenty Yards, you shall stop him, and when he hath advanced once or twice, you shall a little straiten your Bridle-hand, and then give him the even Stroke of both your Spurs together hard, which at first will but only quicken and amaze him; but doing it again and again, it will breed other Thoughts in him, and he being of Spirit and Mettle (as it is lost Labour to offer to teach a Jade such Motions) he will presently gather up his Body, and either rise little or much from the Ground; then presently cherish him, and after some Rest offer him the like again, and thus do till you have made him bound twice or thrice; then make much of him, and do no more for that Day. The next Day renew his Lesson again, and double his Exercise, increasing so Day by Day till he come to that Perfectness, that he will bound whensoever your Spurs shall command him.

Of the Corvet.

When your Horse can bound perfectly, then you shall teach him the Corvet in this Manner: You shall at the Corner, where two Walls join together, a little hollow the Ground, a Horse's Length or more, and then place a smooth strong Post by the Side of the Hollowness, a Horse's Length likewise from the Wall; then over-against the Post fasten an Iron Ring in the Wall: This done, ride your Horse into the hollow Place, and fasten one of the Reins of the Cavezan unto the Ring, and the other about the Post; then after you have cherish'd your Horse, make him advance, by the Help of the Calves of your Legs only twice or thrice together; then let him stand still, and cherish him; then make him to advance again, at least a dozen Times together: Then rest, and after advancing twenty or forty Times together, daily increasing his Advancing as he grows perfect therein, till you perceive that he hath got such Habit therein, that he will by no

Means

ans prefs forward, but keeping his Ground certain, stance both before and behind of an equal Height, and p one just and certain Time with the Motion of your gs, neither doing slower nor faster, but all after one inner and Leisure. But if you find that he doth not e his Hinder-parts high enough, then you shall cause ootman to stand by you, and as you make him ad- ce before, so the Footman shall jerk him gently upon Hinderfillets with his Rod, to raise up his Hinder- ts. Also this will bring your Horse in few Days to a ekt and brave Corvet; so that after you may do it ny Place where you please, without the Help either your Wall or Post, or other By-stander.

When your Horse is made perfect in the rvet, and that he will do it readily and ely, you shall, at the End of every third ourth Advancing, give him the Stroke

*Of the
Gallop-
Galliard.*

your Spurs, and make him bound aloft; then put him his Corvet again as before, and then make him nd again; and thus at the End of every third Ad- cing see you make him bound, for the Length of a t-bar, or an ordinary Managing-furrow, according he Horse's Strength: And this is called the Gallop- alliard, which if it be taught a Horse along by the e of some Wall or smooth Pale, it is so much the bet- and a great deal fewer Disorders will arise and trou- the Rider.

The next Lesson you shall teach your rse after the Gallop-Galliard, is the Ca- olle, or Goat's Leap, which is the same

*Of the
Capriolle.*

anner of Motion that the Corvet is, only it is to be e Forward, and much Ground gained in the Salt, the Horse is to raise his Hinder-parts as high, or er higher than his Fore-parts, and to keep rather a ter than slower Time in doing of it; therefore when teach your Horse to do it, you shall bring him into e Hollow-furrow where the Ground is a little de- ding, and turning his Head to the Descent, put into the Corvet temperate and gently; then when give him the Calves of your Legs to raise up his Fore- ts, in the same Instant jerk your Leg violently for- d again, that he may not stick, but carry his Hinder-

legs after his Fore-legs, and let some skilful Footman standing by your Side jerk the Horse over the Fill with his Rod, and make him raise up his Hinder-parts and thus do without ceasing, till he perform your Will nimbly and cunningly, and then forget not to cherish him and give him all Comfort possible. And this Lesson and the other, which consist of violent and quick Springs or Leaps, should ever be practised the first in a Morning whilst a Horse is fresh and lusty, for to put him to this after his Fire-edge is taken away, will but bring him to a loathing of his Instruction, or at the best to do this but slovenly, beastly, and unwillingly.

*Of going
aside.*

There is also another Motion which is very pleasing to the Eye, though it be very troublesome to the Body, which is to make a Horse go Side-long, of which Hand soever the Rider is disposed; and is very necessary in the Wars, because it is the avoiding of any Blow coming from the Enemy. This Motion when you intend to teach your Horse, you shall draw up your Bridle-hand somewhat strait; and you determine to have him go aside to your Right-hand, lay your Left-rein close to his Neck, and the Cavalier your Left-leg close to his Side, and as you did in the Incavalare, make him lap or put his Left-leg over his Right; then turning your Rod backward, and jerking him gently on the Left-hinder-thigh, make him bring his Hinder parts to the Right-side also, and stand in an even Line as at the first; then make him remove his Fore-parts more than before, so that he may stand as if he were cross over the even Line, and then make him bring his Hinder-parts after, and stand in an even Line again, and thus do till by long Practice he will move his Fore-parts and Hinder-parts both together, and go Side-long as far as you please, then cherish him. If you will have him go toward your Left-hand, do as you did before, using all your Helps and Corrections on the Right-hand only. And thus much I think is sufficient to have spoken touching all the several Lessons meet to be taught to a Horse whatsoever, whether he be for Service or for Pleasure; and which being perform'd artfully, carefully, and with Patience, you may presume your Horse is complete and perfect; the rather, since no Man can

any Invention, or teach any other Motions to a
se, which may be good and comely, but you shall
ly perceive that they are received from some of these
ady rehearsed.

Now if you shall be called to ride before
Prince, you must not observe the Liberty
our own Will, but the State of the Per-
before whom you ride, and the Grace
the Horse which you ride: And therefore be-
come into the Riding-place, you shall chuse your
ound, so that the Person before whom you are to ride
stand in the Midst thereof, so as he may well behold
Passage of the Horse, both to him and from him;
being seated in a comely Order, and every Orna-
nt about you handsome and decent, you shall put
r Horse gently forth into a comely Trot, and being
e against the Person of Estate, bow your Body down
he Crest of your Horse; then raising yourself again,
Half a Score Yards beyond him, and there marking
a narrow Ring, thrust your Horse into a gentle
lop, and give him two or three managing Turns
s short Ground as may be, to shew his Nimbleness
Readiness; as he is upon his last Turn, his Face
g towards the great Person, stop him comely and
e, and make him to advance twice or thrice; then
ing taken Breath, put him into a Gallop-Galliard, and
als along the Length of the even Furrow with that
making him do it also round about the Ring: Then
Face being toward the Prince, stop him and give him
a Breath; then thrust him into the Capriolle, now
then make him jerk out behind, yet so as it may be
eived it is your Will, and the Horse's Malice; and
ing gone about the Ring with that Salt, and his Face
ght to look upon the Prince, stop him again and
him Breath.

*Riding be-
fore a
Prince.*

Then drawing nearer to the Prince, you
beat the Turn Tarra, Tarra; first in
etty large Compass, then by small De-
s straitning it a little and a little, draw it to the very
tre where you may give two or three close Flying-
s, and then changing your Hands, undo all that
did before, till you come to the Ring's first Large-
ness;

*Of the
Caragolo.*

ness; then the Horse's Face being direct upon the Prince stop him and put him into a Corvet, and in that Motion hold him a pretty Space, making him do it first in an even Line; first to the Right-hand, then to the Left-hand; now Backward, then forward again; and thus having perform'd every Motion orderly and comely, bring down your Body to the Prince, and so depart.

*To ride
for Re-
creation.*

But if you intend to ride only for Recreation, then you shall mark what Lesson your Horse is most imperfect in, and what that Lesson you shall ever, when you ride, both begin and end; after it you shall fall to those Lessons which are to yourself most difficult, and by the Practice of them bring yourself to a Perfection; then consequently, to all other Lessons, repeating (as it were) every one over more or less, lest want of Use breed Forgetfulness, and Forgetfulness utter Ignorance. But your Recreation in Riding be tied to especial Rules of Health, and that your Practice therein proceeds from the Commandment of your Physician then your Pleasure, then I would wish you, in the Morning, to begin with a stirring, rough Lesson, as the Galliard, Bounding, or such like, which having a little stirred your Blood, and made it warm, then you shall calm it again with a gentle Manage, or the gallop of large Rings; then to stir the Spirits again, to beat the Stone down, or to procure Appetite, pass into the Capriole or Corvet; and then to make quiet those more Parts, set the Turn called Tarra, Tarra, the Inclosure, and such like. And thus one while stirring your Blood, and another while moderately allaying such stirring, you shall give your Body that due and proper Exercise which is most fit for Health and long Life. Many other Ways this Recreation may be used for the Good of a Man's Body; which, because particular infirmities must give particular Rules how and when to use it, I will, at this Time, speak no farther thereof, but refer the Exercise to their own Pleasures, which shall prescribe the same, and to the Good they shall find in the Practice.

C H A P. III.

the Breeding of all Sorts of Horses fit for the Husbandman's Use.

FIRST have Respect unto the Ground whereon he lieth or enjoyeth; for every Ground is not meet to breed on, but some too good, some too bad; some too good, because they may be exhausted to a more beneficial Commodity, Horses having a World of Casualties attending on them, and many Years before the true Profit doth arise; and some too bad, because the extreme Barrenness of the same will deny competent Nourishment to the Thing bred; and so, to the Loss of Time and Profit, add Mortality.

The Grounds, then, meet to breed Horses on, would neither be extremely fruitful nor extreme barren, but of an intermediate Mixture, yielding rather a short, yet Burthen, than a long, rich and fruitful; it would rather lie high than low, but, howsoever, firm and sound under Foot; it would be full of Mole-Hills, uneven Treadings, Hills, and much Cragginess, to bring Horses to Nimbleness of Foot; it would have good Store of fresh Water, an open, sharp Air, and some convenient Covert. And this Ground is best if it be several times inclosed, yet may be bred upon though it be open and in common, only some more Carefulness to be look'd upon a little before and in the Time of Foaling: Nay, the Grounds which are neither several nor common, are good also to breed on, and those be your Teathering Grounds, which we call particular Grounds; for though they be proper commonly to one Man, yet they are not divided nor eaten otherwise than at their Owner's pleasure: And these Teathering Grounds are as good as any Grounds for the first nourishing of a Foal, if they be amongst Corn Ground, or any Grain, except Pease

*Of
Grounds
to Breed on.*

Division of Grounds. If you have much Ground to breed on you shall divide it into many Pastures, the least and barrenest for your Stallion to range with your Mares in; those which have least Danger of Waters are for your Mares to foal in; the fruitfullest and of best Growth, for your Mares to milk in; and the most spacious and unevenest to bring up your Colts after they are weaned.

Choice of Stallion, and which is best. For the Choice of a good Stallion, which is best for our Kingdom, Opinions swayeth so far, that a Man can hardly give well-received Directions; yet surely, Men will be ruled by the Truth of Experience, the best Stallion to beget Horses for the War is the Courser, the Jennet, or the *Turks*, the best for coursing and running is the *Barbary*; the best for hunting is the Bastard Courser, begot of the *English*; the best for the Coach is the *Flemish*; the best for Travelling or Burthen is the *English*, and the best for the Ease of the *Irish* Hobby.

Choice of Mares. For the Choice of Mares you shall generally respect their Shapes and Mettles, especially that they be beautifully Fore-handled; for they give much Goodness to their Foals: And of their Kinds, any of the Races before spoken of is very good, or any of them mix'd with our true *English* Race, as Bastard-courser, Mare, Bastard-jennet, Bastard-Turk, *Barbary*, &c.

When to put them together. The best Time to put your Stallion and Mares together is in the Middle of *March*; if you have any Grass, as you should have great Care for that Purpose; and of your Foal falling in *March* is worth two falling in *May*, because he possesseth, as it were, two Winters in a Year and is thereby so hardened, that almost nothing can afterwards impair him; and the best Time to take your Horses from the Mares again, is at the End of *April*, or Middle of *May*; in which you shall note, that from the Middle of *March* 'till the Midst of *May*, you may at any Time put your Stallions to your Mares, and a Month's Continuance is ever sufficient; provided even as near as you can, that you put them together at the

Encrea

Increase of the Moon; for Foals got in the Wane are counted strong and healthful.

For Covering of Mares it is to be done two Days, out of Hand, or in Hand; out of Hand, when the Horse and Mares run together abroad, as is before said, or turned loose into some empty Barn, three Nights, one after another, which is the surest and the safest Way; for a Mare's holding, or in Hand, early in a Morning and late at an Evening two or three Days together. When you bring the Horse to the Mare, and make him cover her once or twice at a Time, holding him fast in your Hand, and when the Act is done, lead him back to the Stable. And in this Act you shall ever serve, as soon as the Horse comes from her Back, presently to cast a Pail of cold Water on her Hinderparts, or else to chase her swiftly up and down, for fear, standing still, she cast out the Seed, which is very ordinary.

Of Covering Mares.

To know whether your Mare hold to the Horse or no, there be divers Ways; of which the best is, by offering her the Horse again at the next Encrease of the Moon, which if she willingly receive, it is a Sign she held not before; but if she refuse, then it is most certain she has shed; or if you pour a Spoonful of cold Vinegar into her Ear, if she shake only her Head, it is a Sign she holds; if she shake Head, Body and all, then truly it is a Sign that she doth not hold: Lastly, if, after she is covered, you see her scour, her Coat grow smooth and shining, and that she doth (as it were) renew and increase in licking, then it is a Sign she holds; but if she stand at a Stay, without any Amendment, then offer her the Horse again, for she is not served.

To know if a Mare hold.

To make your Mares conceive most Male Foals, you shall be sure to keep your Stallion proud, and your Mare poor, that his lust mastering hers, he may only be predominant and chief in the Action. Many other Rules Fancy deviseth, but they err in their Ends, and I would no Means have this Discourse capable of any Uncertainty.

To conceive Male Foals.

*To provoke
Lust.*

If you have any Advantage given you by Friendship or otherwise, whereby you may have a Mare at the present very well cover'd, only yours not yet ready for the Horse, you shall in this Case, to provoke Lust in her, give her drink good Store of clarified Honey and new Milk mixed together; and then, with a Bush of Nettles, to nettle her privy Parts, and then immediately offer to the Horse.

*To keep
Mares
from Barrenness.*

To keep your Mares from Barrenness and to make them ever apt to conceive Foals, you shall by no Means feed to extreme fat, but keep them in a middle State of Body, by moderate Labour; for the leaner they are when they come to take Horse, the much better they will conceive.

*Ordering
Mares
after
Covering.*

After your Mares have been covered and that you perceive in them the Mark of conceiving, you shall let them rest three Weeks or a Month, that the Substance may knit; then after moderately labour or travel them, 'till you see them spring, and then turn them abroad, and let them run 'till they foal; for to hold them after is dangerous and unwholesome.

*A Help for
Mares
after
Foaling.*

If your Mare be hard of foaling, or not cleanse after she hath foaled, you shall take a Pint of running Water, whereunto add a good Store of Fennel hath been boiled in Wine, and as much strong, old, sweet Wine with a fourth Part of the best Sallad Oil, and having mix'd them well together, being but luke-warm, pour it into her Nostrils, and then hold and stop the close, that she may strain her whole Body, and it will presently give her Ease.

*Ordering
Mares
after
Foaling.*

As soon as your Mare hath foal'd, you shall remove her into the best Grass you have, which is fresh and unsoiled, to suck her Milk spring; and if it be early in the Year you shall have a Care that there be good Shelter in the same, and there let her nourish her Foal most Part of the Summer following.

As touching the weaning of Foals, though some use to wean them at *Michaelmas* or *Martinmas* following, out of a Supposition that the Winter Milk is not good or wholesome; yet they are much deceived, and if you can, by any convenient Means, (saving great Losses) let your Foals run with their Dams the whole Year, even 'till they foal again, for it will keep the Foal in better Health, in more Lust, and less subject to Tenderness.

Weaning of Foals.

When you intend to wean your Foals, you shall take them from their Dams overnight, and drive them into some empty house, where they may rest, and the Mares be free from their Noises: Then on the Morning following give to every Foal, fasting, a Branch or two of Savin, anointed or roll'd in Butter; and then having rested two Hours after, give them a little Meat, as Grass, Hay, or Garbage of Corn, with some clear Water, and do this three Days together; then, seeing that they have forgotten their Dams, geld such Coltfoals as you intend to make Geldings of; and after their swellings are past, put them into your other Coltfoals to a Pasture provided for them by themselves, and your Mare-foals into another by themselves; which Pastures may either be high Woods, Commons, or such-like spacious Pieces of Ground, where they may run 'till they be ready for the Saddle.

Ordering after the Weaning.

Now, albeit I proportion unto you this manner of gelding of Foals, yet I would have you know that the best and safest Way to geld them is, if it may be, under the Dam when they suck, as at nine, or at fifteen Days of age, if the Stones appear, or else so soon as you can, by any Means, perceive them fall down into the Cod, when there will be no Danger of swelling, or otherchiefs, which commonly attend the Action. And as much touching the Breeding of Horses, and the Observations due to the same, thro' all the Courses and Stages thereof, as hath been found by ancient Practice and Experience.

Gelding of Colts.

C H A P. IV.

Of Horses for Travel, and how to make them amble.

TH E Marks whereby you shall chuse a good travelling Horse, are these; he shall be of good Colour and Shape, lean headed, and round foreheaded, a full Eye, open Nostrils, wide jawed, loose thropled, deep neck'd, thin crested, broad Breast, flat chinn'd, open ribb'd, clean limb'd, short jointed, strong hoofed, well mettled, neither fiery nor craving, strong in every Member, and easy to mount and get up upon; he shall follow without halling, and stand still when he is restrained.

*To make
a Horse
amble.*

Now forasmuch as there are a World of good Horses which are not easy, and a World of easy Horses which are not good, you shall, by these Directions following, make any Horse amble whatsoever: First then, you shall understand, that Practice hath made divers Men believe, that divers Ways they can make a Horse amble.

*Divers
Ways of
Ambling.*

As by gagging them in the Mouths, by toiling them in deep Earth, by the Help of Shoes, by galloping and tiring, or such like, all which are ill and imperfect; the Truth is, there is but one certain and true Way to compass it, and that is to make a strong girth Well flat and well quilted with Cotton, four Pasterns for the Smalls of his Fore-legs, under his Knees, and for the Smalls of his Hinder-legs somewhat below the Spaw Joints: To these Patterns you shall fix Straps of Leather, with good Iron Buckles to make shorter or longer at Pleasure; and having placed them about his Legs, you shall take two several round Ropes of an equal Twist, made with strong Loops at either End, and above eight Handfuls in Length; and these, the Horse standing to a true Proportion, you shall fasten to the four Straps of Leather; to wit, one of them to his near Fore-leg and his near Hinder-leg, and the other to

far Fore-leg and his far Hinder-leg, which is call'd amongst Horsemen Trammelling.

With these you shall let him walk in some enclosed Ground, till he can so perfectly go in the same, that, when at any Time you offer to chase him, you may see him amble swiftly and truly; then you shall take his Back, and ride him with the same Trammels, at least three or four Times a Day, till you find he is so perfect, that no Way can be so rough and uneven, as to compel him to alter his Stroke, to go unnimblely. This done, you may first take away one Trammel, then after the other, and only wreath about under his Fore-Petlocks thick and heavy great Rolls of Hay and Straw Ropes, and so ride him in the same a good Space after, for it will make him amble easy.

Then cut them away, and ride and exercise him without any Thing but the ordinary Help of the Bridles, and there is no doubt but he will keep his Pace, to your full Contentment and Pleasure.

Now, during this Time of your Teaching, if your Horse strike not a large Stroke, and over-reach enough, when you shall make the Trammel the straighter, but if he over-reach too much, then you shall give it more Liberty: And herein you shall find that an Inch straightening or an Inch enlarging, will add or abate at least half a Foot, an whole Foot and direct Stroke. And thus much touching the teaching of any Horse to amble, of what Nature or Quality soever he be, or how unapt or untoward soever to learn.

CHAP. V.

Of the Ordering and Dieting of the Hunting Horse.

TO begin, then, with the first ordering of a hunting Horse, you shall know that the best Time to take him from Grass is about Bartholomew-tide, the day being fair, dry and pleasant; and as soon as he is taken

taken up, to let him stand all that Night in any waste House, to empty his Body; the next Day stable him and give him Wheat Straw, if you please, but no longer in any wise; for tho' the old Rule is to take up Horse Bellies with Straw, yet it streightneth the Guts, heats the Liver; and hurteth the Wind: Therefore let only moderate Exercise, as riding him forth to Water Morning and Evening, and other Airings, do what you expect Straw should; and for his Food, let it be Hay that is sweet, though rough, and either old, or at least well sweat in the Mow.

*Cloathing
the Horse*

After his Belly is emptied, you shall cloath him first with a single Cloth, while the Heat endureth, and after with more as you shall see Occasion require; and when you begin to cloath the Horse, then shall you dress, curry and rub him also.

Now, for as much as it is a Rule with ignorant Horsemen, that if they have but the Name of keeping a Hunting Horse, they will, with all Care, (without any Reason) lay many Cloaths upon him, as if it were a special Physick; you shall know they are much deceived therein and may sooner do Hurt than Good, with Multiplicity of Cloaths: Therefore, to cloath a Horse right, cloath according to the Weather, and the Temper of his Body; and thus, if you see your Horse be sleight, smooth and well colour'd, then cloath him temperately, as with a single Cloath of Canvas, or Sack-cloth at the most; and if then, as the Year grows colder, you find his Hair rise or stare about his Neck, Flanks, or outward Parts, then you shall add to it a woollen Cloth, or more, if Need require, 'till his Hair fall smooth again; holding it for your Rule, that a rough Coat shews want of Cloaths, and a smooth Coat Cloathing enough; yet if your Horse have been clean fed, taken Exercise sufficient, and hath not much Glut within him, if then you find that in the Night he sweateth in his Cloaths, then it is a Sign he is over fed; but if he be foul inwardly, or hath not sweated formerly, and now sweats coming to good Feeding, then you shall augment rather than diminish any Cloathing for his Foulness, but that breaking out and being evacuated, he will come to Driness of Body again, and so

continue

continue all the Year after. And surely, for an ordinary proportion of Cloaths, I hold a Canvas Cloth, and a Cloth of Housewife's Woollen, to be at full sufficient for a hunting Horse.

A Hunting Horse would be dress'd in his Days of Rest twice a Day; that is, before he go to his Morning watering, and before he go to his Evening watering: For the Manner of his dressing, after he is unclothed, you shall first curry him from the tips of his Ears to the settling on of his Tail, all his whole Body most entirely over with an Iron Comb, his Legs, under the knees and Cambrels only excepted; then you shall dust him, then curry him again all over with a round Brush of Bristles, then dust him the second Time, then rub all the loose Hairs away with your Hands, wet in clean Water, and so rub 'till the Horse be as dry as at the first; then rub all his Body and Limbs over with an Hair-Cloth; lastly, rub him over with a fine white Linen Rubber, then pick his Eyes, Nostrils, Sheath, Noses, Tuels and Feet very clean, and so cloath him, and stop him round with Wisps, if you water him within the House, otherwise saddle him, after his Body is wrapp'd in a Woollen Cloth, and so ride him forth to the Water.

Of Dressing the Hunting Horse.

The best Water for a hunting Horse, is either a running River or a clear Spring; remote from the Stable a Mile, or a Mile and an half at most, and near unto some plain Piece of ground, where you may scope and gallop after he hath drank; and as soon as you bring your Horse to the Water, let him take his full Draught, without Trouble or Interruption; then gallop and scope him up and down a little, and so bring him to the Water again, and let him drink what he pleases, and then gallop him again; and thus do 'till you find he will drink no more; then, having scoped him a little, walk him, with all Gentleness, home, and there cloath him, stop him round with great soft Wisps, and so let him stand an Hour upon his Bridle, and then feed him.

Of Watering the Hunting Horse.

To

*Of Feeding
the Hunt-
ing Horse.*

To speak first of the Food for hunting Horses, the most ordinary is good sweet sound Oats, either thoroughly dried with Age, or else in the Kiln, or in the Sun; and if your Horse be either low of Flesh, or not of perfect Stomach, if to two Parts of those Oats you add a third Part of clean, old Beans, it shall be very good and wholesome; and if your Horse be in Diet for a Month and have lost his Stomach, if then you cause these Beans to be spelted upon a Kiln, and so mix'd with Oats, will recover him. The next Food, which is somewhat stronger and better, is Bread thus made; take two Bushels of good, clean Beans, and one Bushel of Wheat and grind them together; then, through a fine Rango bolt out the Quantity of two Pecks of pure Meal, and bake it in two or three Loaves by itself, and the rest through a Meal Sieve, and knead it with Water and a good Store of Barm, and so bake it in great Loaves and with the coarser Bread feed your Horse in his Rest and with the finer against the Days of sore Labor. Now, for the Hours of his Feeding, it shall be in the Morning, after his coming from Water, an Hour and high Noon, after his coming from his Evening Water and at Nine or Ten o' Clock at Night, upon the Days of his Rest; but upon the Days of his Exercise, two Hours after he is thoroughly cold inwardly and outwardly, and then after according to the Hours aforementioned. Lastly, for the Proportion of Food, you shall keep to no certain Quantity, but according to the Horse's Stomach, that is to say, you shall feed him by little at once, so long as he eats with a good Appetite, but when he begins to trifle or fumble with his Meal, then to give him no more. Now for his Hay, you shall see that it be dry, short, uplandish Hay, and so it is sweet, respect not how coarse or rough it is, since it is more to scour his Teeth and cool his Stomach, than any Nourishment expected from it.

The Exercise of the Horse.

Touching the Horse's Exercise, which is only in the following the Hounds, you shall be sure to train him after those which are the most swift and speedy; for so you shall know the Truth, and not be deceived in your Opinion.

Touching

Toucing the Days, it shall be twice a Week at least, but most commonly thrice; as for the Quantity of his Exercise, it must be according to his Foulness or Cleaness; for if he be very foul, you must then exercise him moderately, to break his Grease; if half foul half clean, then somewhat more, to break his Grease; and if altogether clean, then you may take what you please of him (provided that you do nothing to discourage his spirits, to abate his Mettle, or to lame his Limbs) and after every Day's Exercise be assured to give him, either the same Night or the next Day following something by Way of scouring, or otherwise, to take away the Grease formerly melted; by Means whereof you shall be ever sure to keep your Horse in all good Health and Perfection.

The best or most excellent Way to scour or purge your Horse from all Grease, Glut or Filthiness within his Body, which is a secret hitherto was never either sufficiently taught, or perfectly learned, is to take of Anniseeds three Ounces, of Cummin Seeds six Drachms, of Carthamus a Drachm and an Half, of Fennegreek Seed one Ounce two Drachms, of Brimstone one Ounce and an Half, beat all these to a fine Powder, and searse them; then take of Sallad Oil a Pint and two Ounces, of Honey a Pound and an Half, and of White Wine four Pints; then, with as much fine white Meal as will suffice, make all into a strong, stiff Paste, and knead and work it well: This Paste keep in a clean Cloth, for it will last long; and after your Horse hath been hunted, and is at Night or in the Morning exceeding thirsty, take a Ball thereof, as big as a Man's Fist, and wash or dissolve it in a Gallon or two of cold Water, and it will make the Water look white, like Milk; then offer it the Horse to drink in the dark, lest the Colour displease him; if he drink it, then feed him; but if he refuse to drink it, yet care not, but let him fast without Drink 'till he take it, which assuredly he will do in twice or thrice offering; and after once he hath taken it, be then assured he will forsake any other Drink for it; of this Drink your Horse can never take too much nor too oft, if he have Exercise, otherwise it feeds too sore. For all inward Infirmities whatsoever, it is a present Remedy; therefore I would

would not with any Horseman of Virtue at any Time to be without it; and being once made, it will last three or four Months at least.

*Ordering
a Horse
after
Exercise.*

After your running Horse hath been exercised, either with hunting, running, Train-scents, or otherwise, you shall ever cool him well in the Field before you bring him home; but being come to the Stable, you shall neither wash nor walk, but instantly house him; give him Store of fresh Litter, and rub him therewith, and with dry Cloths, 'till there be not a wet Hair about him; then cloath him with his ordinary Cloaths, and wisp him round; then cast another spare Cloth over him, which you may bate at your Pleasure, and so let him stand 'till it be Time to feed him. And thus you may keep any hunting Horse, either for Match or otherwise, in as good State and Strength as any Horseman in this Kingdom, though he exceed you far, both in Reputation and Experience.

CHAP. VI.

Of the Ordering and Dieting of the Running Horse.

FIRST, for his taking up from Grass, (for there, for Order sake, we must begin) it shall be at the same Time of the Year, and after the same Manner that you took up your hunting Horse; and 'till you have ensamed him, hardened his Flesh, taken away his inward Grease, and brought him to a good Perfectness of Wind, you shall cloath him, dress him, water him, feed him, exercise him, purge him, and order him after Labour, in all Points and all Things, as you did your hunting Horse.

*Of Cloath-
ing him.*

When he is thus clean of Body and Wind, you shall then lay on him some more Cloaths than you did on your hunting Horse, to purge his Body a little the more, and to make him the more apt to sweat, and evacuate Humours as they shall grow; the ordinary Quantity whereof, would

be a warm, narrow woollen Cloth about his Body, on either Side his Heart, then a fair, white Sheet, a woollen Cloth above it, and a Canvass Cloth or two above it, and before his Breast a woollen Cloth, at least two double; he should continually stand upon a clean Litter, and have his Stable very dark, and perfumed with Juniper, when the Strength of his Dung shall annoy it.

For his dressing, it shall be, in all Points, done as you did to your hunting Horse, only to dress him once a Day is sufficient, and that ever in the Afternoon; but for rubbing his Limbs or Body with dry Cloths or Wisps, you shall do that as often as you come into the Stable, provided that you turn but his Cloaths up, but not take them from his Body.

Of Dressing him.

You shall water your running Horse as you water'd your hunting Horse, and give him the same Exercise after it, only you shall not bring him into the Stable for at least an Hour, or more, after he is watered.

Of Watering him.

The best Food for your running Horse, is either good, sweet Oats, well dried, sunned and beaten, or Bread made of two Parts Wheat and but one Part Beans, and bolted, and sifted and kneaded, as was before shewed; only if you add, to your better Sort of Bread, the Whites of twenty or thirty Eggs, and with the Barm a little Ale also, it will be much the better; for you shall not respect how little Water you use at all: The Hours you feed in, and the Quantity of the Food, shall be the same, and in the same Manner, as was mention'd before for the hunting Horse; yet with these Observations, that if your Horse be very lean, sickly, and have a weak Stomach, that then you may, as before is shewed, give him with his Oats a few spelted Beans, or else wash his Oats in strong Ale or Beer, or in the Whites of a couple of Eggs.

Of Feeding him.

Touching his Exercise, it consisteth in two Kinds, the one airing, the other courting: Airing is a moderate, gentle Exercise, which you shall use Morning and Evening, by riding or leading your Horse a Foot-pace, but riding is better, and less in Danger of Cold; in the Morning, after

Of his Exercise by Airing.

after his Water, up to the Hills; and in the Evening, after his Water, by the River Side, by the Space of an Hour or two together; and before you lead him forth to air, you shall be sure to give him a rare Egg, broken, into his Mouth, as soon as his Bridle is put on, for it will encrease Wind; and this airing you shall by no Means forbear, but upon his Days of purging or sweating, or when it much raineth, for then to air is unwholesome. Again, if your Horse be very fat, you shall air before Sun rise, and after Sun set; but if he be lean, then you shall let him have all the Strength and Comfort of the Sun you can devise; and during this airing, you shall be sure that your Horse be cloathed very warm, especially before the Breast, and on each Side the Heart, for Cold to a running Horse is mortal.

*Exercise by
Coursing.*

You shall course your Horse according to his Strength and Ability of Body, that is to say, twice a Week, thrice, or as oft as you see Cause; and you shall course him sometimes in his Cloaths, to make him sweat, and consume Grease, and that must be done moderately and gently; and sometimes without his Cloaths, to encrease Wind; and that shall be done sharply and swiftly; you shall, by keeping your Horse fasting the Night before, be sure that his Body be empty before he do course; to wash his Tongue and Nostrils with Vinegar, or to piss in his Mouth, before you take his Back, is very wholesome: You shall lead him in your Hand, well and warm cloathed, to the Course, and there uncloath him, and rub his Limbs well; then, having coursed him, after a little Breathing-taking, cloath him again, and so ride him home, there rub him thoroughly, and let him stand 'till he be fully cold, which perceived, let his first Meat you give him be a handful or two of Pollard Wheat; then after, his ordinary Meat as aforesaid.

Of Sweats.

There is also another Exercise for your running Horse, which is, Sweats in his Cloaths, either abroad or in the House; for Sweats in his Cloaths abroad, they are those which are taken upon the Course, and are formerly spoke of, that they must be given by a moderate galloping, no Man running; and as soon as your Horse hath passed over his Course,

and

The Gentleman's Companion.

42

and is in a high Sweat, you shall instantly have him home, and there lay more Cloaths upon him, and keep him stirring 'till he have sweat so in the Stable an Hour or more; then abate his Cloaths by little and little, 'till he be perfectly cooled and dried, which you must further, by rubbing him continually with dry Cloths, and by laying dry Cloths on, and taking the wet away. But for Sweats in his Cloaths, without any Exercise abroad, you shall give them either when the Weather is so much unseasonable, that you cannot go forth, or when your Horse is so much in Danger of Lameness, that you dare not strain him; and you shall do it thus: First take a Blanket, folded, and warm'd very hot, and wrap it about his Body, then over it lay two or three more, and wisp them round, then over them as many Coverlids, and pin them fast and close; then make the Horse stir up and down the Stable 'till he begins to sweat, then lay on more Cloaths, and as the Sweat trickleth down his Face, so rub it away with dry Cloths, 'till he hath sweated sufficiently; then, as before is shewed, abate the Cloaths by little and little, and rub him in every Part, 'till he be as dry as at first.

After every Course or Sweat, you shall scour or purge your Horse in the same Manner, and with the same Medicine as you did your hunting Horse; for it is the best that can by Art be invented, being both a Purge and a Restorative, cleansing and comforting all the Parts of a Horse's Body; but if you think it purgeth not enough, then you shall take twenty Raisins of the Sun, the Stones pick'd out, and ten Figs slit in the Midst, boil them in a Pottle of fair running Water, till it comes to be thick, then mix it with Powder of Liquorice, Anniseeds, and Sugarcandy, till it comes to a stiff Paste; then make pretty round Balls thereof, and roll them up in Butter, and give your Horse three or four of them the next Morning after his Sweat or Course, and ride him an Hour after, and then set him up warm.

After your Horse hath been coursed or sweated, and is, as before said, cold and dry, you shall then unbridle him, give him some few Wheat Ears, and then, at an Hour or

Of scouring him.

Ordering after Exercise.

two

two after, give him a very sweet Malt; then some Bread after, and at his due Hour dress him; and give him, when you find him thirsty, some cold Water, with a Ball of your Leaven dissolved into it, and so let him stand 'till you feed him for all Night.

General Rules for a Running Horse.

Course not your Horse sore for at least four or five Days before you run your Match, lest the Soreness of his Limbs abate him of his Speed.

Except your Horse be a very foul Feeder, muzzle him not above two or three Nights before his Match, and the Night before his bloody Courses.

Give your Horse as well his gentle Courses as his sharp Courses, upon the Race he must run, that he may as well find Comfort as Displeasure thereon.

In training your Horse, observe not the Number of the Miles, but the Labour fit for your Horse.

Be sure, upon the Match Day, that your Horse be empty, and that he take his Rest untroubled, 'till you prepare to lead him forth.

Shoe your Horse ever a Day before you run him, that the Pain of the Knocks of the Hammer may be out of his Feet.

Saddle your Horse on the Race Day in the Stable, before you lead him forth, and fix both the Pannels and the Girths to his Back and Sides, with Shoemakers Wax, to prevent all Dangers.

Lead your Horse to his Course with all Gentleness, and give him Leave to smell to other Horses Dung, that thereby he may be inticed to stale, and empty his Body as he goes.

When you come to the Place where you must start, first rub his Limbs well, then uncloath him, then take his Back, and the Word given, start him with all Gentleness and Quietness that may be, lest, doing any Thing rashly, you happen to choak him in his own Wind.

And thus much for the ordering and dieting of the Running Horse, and the Particularities belonging to the same.

C H A P. VII.

The Ordering of the Travelling Horse.

NOW, for our Husbandman's travelling Horse, which is to carry him on his Journies, and about his Business in the Country.

General Rules for a Travelling Horse.

He shall first feed him with the best sweet Hay, dry Oats, or dry Beans and Oats mix'd together; in his Travel he shall feed him according to his Stomach, more or less; and in his Rest, at a certain Proportion, as half a Peck at each watering is utterly sufficient.

In your Travel, feed your Horse early, that he may take his Rest soon.

In Travel, by no Means wash nor walk your Horse, but be sure to rub him clean.

Water him a Mile before you come to your Inn, or more, as shall lie in your Journey; or if you fail thereof, forbear it 'till next Morning, for Water hath often done Hurt, want of Water never did any.

Let your Horse neither eat nor drink when he is extreme hot, for both are unwholesome.

When the Days are extreme hot, labour your Horse Morning and Evening, and forbear high Noon.

Take not your Saddle off suddenly, but at Leisure; and laying on the Cloth, lay on the Saddle again, 'till he be cold.

Litter your Horse deep; and, in the Days of his Rest, let it also lie under him.

Dress your Horse twice a Day when he rests, and once when he travels.

If the Horse be stoned, let him go to Soil, and be purged with Grass, in May; a Month is Time long enough; and that Grass which grows in Orchards, under Trees, is best.

Let blood Spring and Fall, for they are the best Times to prevent Sickneses.

In

In your journeying alight at every steep Hill, for it is a great Refreshing and Comfort to your Horse.

Before you sleep, every Night in your Journey, see all your Horse's Feet stop'd with Ox Dung, for it taketh away the Heat of Travel and Surbating.

Many other necessary Rules there are, but so dependent upon those already shewn, that whoso keepeth them, shall not be ignorant of any of the rest, for they differ more in Name than Nature.

C H A P. VIII.

How to cure all general inward Sickneses in Horses, which trouble the whole Body:

Of Fevers of all Sorts, Plagues, Infections, and such like.

SICKNESSES in general are of two Kinds, one offending the whole Body, the other a particular Member; the first hidden, and not visible; the other apparent, and known by its outward Demonstration. Of the first, then, which offendeth the whole Body, are Fevers of all Sorts, as the Quotidian, the Tertian, the Quartan, the Continual, the Hittique; the Fevers in Autumn, in Summer, or in Winter; the Fever by Surfeit, Fever pestilent, Fever accidental, or the general Plague; they are all known by these Signs, much trembling, panting and sweating, a fullen Countenance, that was wont to be chearful, hot Breath, Faintness in Labour, Decay of Stomach, and Costiveness in the Body. Any, or all of which when you perceive, first let the Horse Blood, and after give him this Drink.

The Cure. Take of Celladine, Roots Leaves and all, a good Handful, as much Wormwood, and as much Rue, wash them well, and then bruise them in a Mortar; which done, boil them in a Quart of Ale well, then strain them, and add to the Liquor half a Pound of sweet Butter; then, being but luke-warm, give it the Horse to drink: Or half an Ounce of Diapente, in a Pint of Muskadine.

Of the Head-ach, Frenzy or Staggers.

The Signs to know these Diseases, which, indeed, are all of one Nature, and work all one Effect of Mortality, are hanging down of the Head, watry Eyes, Rage and Reeling.

The Cure is, to let the Horse Blood in the Neck, three Mornings together, and every Morning to take a great Quantity; then, after each Morning blood-letting, to give the Horse this Drink: Take a Quart of Ale, and boil it, with a big white Bread Crust, then take it from the Fire, and dissolve three or four Spoonfuls of Honey in it; then, luke-warm, give it the Horse to drink, and cover his Temples over with a Plaister of Pitch, and keep his Head exceeding warm; let his Meat be little and his Stable dark. But to give him the former Quantity of Diapente, either in Muskaline or Honey Water, is the best Cure.

The Cure.

Of the Sleeping Evil.

The Sleeping Evil, or Lethargy in Horses, proceeds from cold, phlegmy, moist Humours, which bind up the vital Parts, and make them dull and heavy. The Signs are, continual sleeping, or Desire thereunto.

The Cure is, to keep him much waking, and, twice in one Week, to give him much sweet Soap (in nature of a Pill) as a Duck's Egg; and then after give him to drink a little new Milk and Honey, which is the only Cure, at the first, for this Disease.

The Cure.

Of the Falling Evil, Planet-struck, Night-mare, or Palsy.

Though these Diseases have several Faces, and look tho' there were much Difference between them, yet they are in Nature all one, and proceed all from one effence, which is only cold, phlegmatick Humours, engender'd about the Brain, and benumbing the Senses, weakening the Members; sometimes causing a Horse fall down, and then it is called the Falling Evil; sometimes

sometimes weakening but one Member only, then it is called Planet-struck; sometimes oppressing a Horse's Stomach, and making him sweat in his Sleep, and then it is called the Night-mare; and sometimes spoiling an especial Member, by some strange Contraction, and then it is called a Palsy.

The Cure. The Cure for any of these Infirmities, is to give the Horse this purging Pill: Take of Tar three Spoonfuls, of sweet Butter the like Quantity, beat them well together with the Powder of Liquorice, Anniseeds and Sugarcandy, 'till it be like Paste, then make it into three round Balls, and put into each Ball two or three Cloves of Garlick, and so give them unto the Horse, observing to warm him both before and after, and likewise keep him fasting two or three Hours both before and after.

Of the General Cramp, or Convulsion of Sinews.

Cramps are taken to be the contracting or drawing together of the Sinews of any one Member; but Convulsions are, when the whole Body, from the setting on of the Head, to the extremest Parts, are generally contracted and stiffened.

The Cure. The Cure of either is, first to chafe and rub the Member contracted, with Vinegar and common Oil, and then to wrap it all over with wet Hay or rotten Litter, or else with wet woollen Cloth either of which is a present Remedy.

Of any Cough or Cold whatsoever, wet or dry; or of any Consumption or Putrefaction of the Lungs whatsoever.

A Cold is got by unnatural Heats and too sudden Coolings, and these Colds engender Coughs, and then Coughs Putrefaction, or Rottenness of the Lungs. The Cure, therefore, for them all in general, is to take Handful or two of the white and greenish Moss which grows upon an old Oak Pole, or any old Oak Wood and boil it in a Quart of Milk 'till it be thick, and being cold, turned to a Jelly; then strain it, and give the Horse lukewarm, every Morning, 'till his Cough ends.

ds; or else take three Quarters of an Ounce of the
Conserve of Elicampane, and dissolve it in a Pint of
Milk, and, lukewarm, give it the Horse fasting; then
feed him after it, set him up warm, and feed him at ordi-
nary Times; this do three Mornings together.

Of the Running Glanders.

Take of Auripigmentum two Drachms, of Tussila-
nis, made into Powder, as much; then mixing them
together with Turpentine till they be like Paste, and
making thereof little Cakes, dry them before the Fire;
then taking a Chafing-Dish and Coals, and laying one
two of the Cakes thereon, cover them with a Funnel
; and then, the Smoak rising, put the Funnel into
the Horse's Nostrils, and let the Smoak go up into his
Head; which done, ride the Horse till he sweats; do
this once every Morning before he be watered, till the
Sneezing at his Nostrils ceases, and the Kernels under his
Nose wear away.

Of Hidebound, or Consumption of the Flesh.

Hidebound, or Consumption of the Flesh, proceeds
from unreasonable Travel, disorderly Diet, and many
other Defects. It is known by a general Dislike, and Lean-
ness over the whole Body, and by the sticking of the
Skin close to the same, in such Sort that it will not rise
from the Body.

The Cure is, first to let the Horse Blood,
and then give him to drink, three or four
Mornings together, a Quart of new Milk, with two
Ounces of Honey and one Ounce of London Treacle;
and let his Food be either Tudden Barley, warm Grains
with Salt, or Beans slit in a Mill; his Drink Mashies.

*the Breast Pain, or any other Sickness proceeding from
the Heart, as the Anticor, and such like.*

These Diseases proceed from too rank Feeding and
rich Pastures: The Signs are a Faultering in his Fore-
feet, and a Disability to bow down his Neck.

The Cure.

The Cure is, to let him Blood, and give him, three Mornings together, two Spoonfuls of Diapente in a Quart of Ale or Beer, for it alway putteth away all Infection from the Heart.

Of Tired Horses.

If your Horse be tired, either in journeying or a hunting Match, your best Help for him is to give him warm Urine to drink, to let him Blood in the Mouth, and suffer him to lick up and swallow the same; then, if you can come where any Nettles are, to rub his Mouth and Sheath well therewith; then gently to ride him until you come to your resting Place, where set him up very warm; and, before you go to Bed, give him six Spoonfuls of Aqua Vitæ to drink, and as much Provender as he will eat. The next Morning rub his Legs with Sheeps-foot Oil, and it will bring fresh Nimbleness unto his Sinews.

Of Diseases in the Stomach; as Surfeits, loathing Meat or Drink, or such like.

If your Horse, with the Glut of Provender, or eating raw Food, have given such Offence to his Stomach that he casteth up all that he eateth or drinketh, you shall first give him a comfortable Drench, as Diapente, or Treaphamicon, in Ale or Beer; and then, keeping him fasting, let him have no Food but what he eateth out of your Hand, which would be Bread well baked and dried, and, after every two or three Bits, a Lock of sweet Hay, and his Drink should be only new Milk, 'till his Stomach hath gotten Strength; and, in a Bag, you shall commonly hang at his Nose four brown Bread steep'd in Vinegar, at which he must ever smell; and his Stomach will quickly come again to its first Strength.

Of Foundering in the Body.

Foundering in the Body is of Surfeits the mortallest and soonest gotten; it proceedeth from intemperance in riding a horse when he is fat, and then suddenly suffering him to take cold; than washing a fat Horse, there nothing

Nothing sooner bringeth this Infirmity. The Signs are
Redness of Countenance, staring Hair, Stiffness of Limbs,
and loose of Belly.

The Cure is only to give him whole
strong Meat, as Bread of clean Beans,
and warm Drink; and, for two or three Mornings to-
gether, a Quart of Ale brew'd with Pepper and Cinna-
mon, and an Ounce of London Treacle.

Of the Hungry Evil.

The Hungry Evil is an unnatural and over hasty
greediness in a Horse to devour his Meat faster than he
can chew it, and is only known by his greedy snatching
his Meat, as if he would devour it whole.

The Cure is, to give him to drink Milk,
and Wheat Meal mix'd together, by a
quart at a Time, and to feed with Provender by a lit-
tle and little, 'till he forsakes it.

*Of the Diseases of the Liver; as Inflammations, Obstruc-
tions and Consumptions.*

The Liver, which is the Vessel of Blood, is subject
to many Diseases, according to the Distemperature of
the Blood; and the Signs to know it are a stinking
breath, and a mutual looking to his Body.

The Cure is to take Aristolochia longa,
and boil it in running Water till the half
part be consumed, and let the Horse drink continually
thereof, and it will cure all Evils about the Liver, or
any inward Conduits of Blood.

Of the Diseases of the Gall, and especially of the Yellows.

From the overflowing of the Gall, or rather want of
Gall, which is the Vessel of Choler, spring many mor-
tal Diseases, especially the Yellows, which is an extreme
pain mortal Sickness, if it be not prevented in Time;
the Signs are, Yellowness of the Eyes and Skin, and
chiefly underneath his Upper Lip, next unto his Fore-
teeth, a sudden and faint Falling down by the High-
way,

way, or in the Stable, and an universal Sweat over the Body.

The Cure. The Cure is, first to let the Horse Bleed in the Neck, in the Mouth and under the Eyes; then take two penny worth of Saffron, which being dried and made into fine Powder, mix with sweet Butter, and, in Manner of a Pill, give it in Balls to the Horse, three Mornings together; let his Drink be warm and his Hay sprinkled with Water. A Quart of strong Decoction of Celladine helps it also.

Of the Sickness of the Spleen.

The Spleen, which is the Vessel of Melancholy when it is overcharged therewith, grows painful, hard and great, in such sort, that sometimes it is visible. The Signs to know it are, much groaning, hasty feeding, and a continual looking to his Left side only.

The Cure. The Cure is, take Agrimony, and beat a good Quantity of it in the Water which the Horse shall drink; and, chopping the Leaves small mix them very well with sweet May Butter, and give the Horse two or three good round Balls thereof, in the Manner of Pills.

Of the Dropsy, or evil Habit of the Body.

The Dropsy is that evil Habit of the Body, which engender'd by Surfeits and unreasonable Labour, altereth the Colours and Complexions of Horses, and changeth the Hairs in such an unnatural Sort, that a Man shall not know the Beast with which he hath been most familiar.

The Cure. The Cure is, to take a Handful or two of Worm-wood, and boiling it in Ale or Beer, a Quart or better, give it the Horse to drink lukewarm, Morning and Evening, and let him only drink his Water at Noon-time of the Day.

Of the Cholick, Belly-ach and Belly-bound.

The Cholick or Belly-ach is a fretting, gnawing, swelling of the Belly, or Great Bag, proceeding from

Indy Humours, or from eating of green Corn or Pulse, or Grains, without Salt or Labour, or Bread dough-k'd: And Belly-bound is, when a Horse cannot dung. The Cure of the Cholick or Belly-ach is, take good Store of the Herb Dill, and *The Cure.* put it in the Water you give your Horse to drink; but if he cannot dung, then you shall boil in his Water good Store of the Herb call'd Fenugreek, and it will make him loose without Danger or hurting.

Of the Lax, or Bloody-flux.

The Lax, or Bloody-flux, is an unnatural Looseness of a Horse's Body; which not being stopp'd, will, for want of other Excrement, make a Horse void Blood only.

The Cure is, take a handful of the Herb *The Cure.* Shepherds-purse, and boil it in a Quart of strong Ale; and, when it is luke-warm, take the Seed of the Herb Wood-rose, stamp'd, put it therein, and give it the Horse to drink.

Of the Falling of the Fundament.

It cometh through Mistake and Weakness; and is secured. Take Town-Cresses, and, having dried *The Cure.* them to Powder, with your Hand put some of the Powder on the Fundament, and then strew the Powder thereon; or it lay a little Honey thereon, and then strew more of the Powder, mix'd with the Powder of Cummin, and helpeth.

Of Bots and Worms of all Sorts.

Bots, and gnawing of Worms, are grievous Pains; the Signs to know them are, the Horse's oft beating his Belly, and tumbling and wallowing on the Ground, and much Desire to lie on his Back. The Cure is, take the Leaves chopt of *The Cure.* Herb Savin, and mix them with Honey Butter, and making two or three Balls thereof, make the Horse swallow them down, and it will help him.

Of the Pain in the Kidneys, Pain-Piss, or the Stone.

All these Diseases, spring from one Ground, which only Gravel and hard Matter gathered together in the Kidneys, and so stopping the Conduits of Urine; the Signs are only that the Horse will often strain to piss, but cannot.

The Cure. The Cure is, to take a Handful Maiden-hair, and steep it all Night in a Quart of strong Ale, and give it the Horse to drink every Morning till he be well: This will break a Stone whatsoever in a Horse.

Of the Strangurion.

It is a Soreness in the Horse's Yard, and a hot burning Smarting when he pisseth; the Signs are, he will piss often, yet but a Drop or two at once.

The Cure. The Cure is, to boil in the Water what he drinketh, good Store of the Herb May or Hog's Fennel, and it will cure him.

Of pissing Blood.

This cometh with over travelling a Horse, or travelling a Horse sore in the Winter, when he goeth to Grass.

The Cure. The Cure is, take Aristolochia longa Handful, and boil it in a Quart of Ale, and give it the Horse to drink lukewarm; and give him Rest.

Of the Colt-Evil, Mattering of the Yard, Falling of the Yard, Shedding the Seed.

All these Evils proceed from much Lust in a Horse.
The Cure. The Cure is, the Powder of the Horse-Arse, and the Leaves of Bettony: Steep them with White Wine to a moist Salve, and anoint the Sore therewith, and it will heal all Imperfections in the Yard; but, if the Horse shed his Seed, then beat Venice Turpentine and Sugar together, and give him every Morning a good round Ball thereof until the Flux stop.

Of the particular Diseases in Mares, Barrenness, Consumption, Rage of Love, casting Foals, Hardness to Foal, and how to make a Mare cast her Foal.

If you would have your Mare barren, let good Store of the Herb Agnus Castus be boiled in the Water she drinketh. If you would have her fruitful, then boil good Store of Motherwort in the Water which she drinketh. If she lose her Belly, which sheweth a Consumption of the Uterus, you shall then give her a Quart of Brine to drink, Mugwort being boiled therein. If your Mare, thro' Pride of Keeping, grow into too extream Lust, so that she will neglect her Food, through the Violence of her fleshly Appetite, as it is often seen among them, you shall House her for two or three Days, and give her every Morning a Ball of Butter and Agnus Castus chop'd together; if you would have your Mare cast a Foal, take a Handful of Ditony, and boil it in a Quart of Ale, and she will deliver her presently. If she cannot Foal, take the Herb Horse-Mint, and either dry it or stamp it, and make the Powder or Juice, and mix it with strong Ale; then give it the Mare, and it will help her. If your Mare from former Bruisings or Strokes be apt to cast her Foals, as many are, you shall keep her at Grass very warm, and once in a Week give her a good warm Malt of Drink. This secretly knitteth beyond Expectation.

Of drinking Venom; as Horse-Leaches, Hens-Dung, or such like.

If your Horse have drunk Horse-Leaches, Hens-Dung, Leeches, or such like venomous Things, which you shall know by his panting, swelling, or scouring; you shall take the Herb Sow-thistle, and drying it, beat it into Powder, and put three Spoonfuls thereof in a Quart of Ale, and give it the Horse to drink.

Of Suppositaries, Glisters, and Purgations.

If your Horse, by Sickness, strict Diet, or too vehement Travel, grow dry and costive in his Body, as is ordinary, the easiest Means in Extremity to help him, is

to give him a Suppositary; the best of which is, to take a Candle of Four in the Pound, and cut off five Inches at the bigger End, and thrusting it up a good Way with your Hand into his Fundament, presently clap down his Tail, and hold it hard to his Tail a Quarter of an Hour or Half an Hour, and then give him Liberty to dung. But, if this be not strong enough, then you shall give him a Glister, that is, take four Handfuls of the Hens Anise, and boil it in a Pottle of running Water till it be consumed; then take the Decoction, and mix it with a Pint of Sallad Oil and a pretty Quantity of Sugar, and with a Glister-pipe, give it him at his Tail; but, if this be too weak, then give him a Purgation thus. Take twenty Raisins of the Sun, without Stones, and ten Figs slit; boil them in a Pottle of running Water till it comes to a Jelly; then mix it with the Powder of Liquorice, Aniseeds and Sugarcandy, till it be like Paste, then make it into Balls, and roll it in sweet Butter and Sugar, and so give it the Horse to the Quantity of three Hens Eggs.

Of Neezings and Frictions.

There be two other excellent Helps for sick Horses, as Frictions and Neezings: The first to comfort the outward Parts of the Body, when the vital Powers are diminished; the other to purge the Head, when it is stopp'd with Phlegm, Cold, or other thick Humours. And of Frictions, the best is Vinegar and Patch-grease, melted together, and very hot chafed into the Horse's Body against the Hair: And to make a Horse sneeze, there is nothing better than to take a Bunch of Pellitory of Spain, and binding it to a Stick, thrust it up into a Horse's Nostrils, and it will make him sneeze without Hurt or Violence.

Of Diseases in the Eyes; as Watry-eyes, Bloodshot-eyes, Dim-eyes, Moon-eyes, Stroke in the Eye, Wart in the Eye, Inflammation in the Eye, Pearl, Pin, Web, or Harw.

Unto the Eye belongeth many Diseases, all which have their true Signs in their Names; and, as touching

that which is watry, blood-thotten, dim, moon stricken, or inflamed, they have all one Cure.

The Cure is, take Wormwood, and beat it in a Mortar with the Gall of a Bulb; strain it, and anoint the Horse's Eye therewith, and it is an approved Remedy. But for the Wart, Pearl, Pin, or Web, which are Evils grown in and upon the Eye, to take them off, take the Juice of the Herb Betin, and wash the Eye therewith, and it will wear the Spots away; for the Haw, every Smith can cut it out.

Of the Imposthume in the Ear, Pole-evil, Fistula, Swelling after Blood-letting; any gall'd Back, Canker in the Withers, Sit-fast, Wens, Navel-gall, or any hollow Ulcer.

These Diseases are so apparent and common, that they need no further Description but their Names.

The most certain Cure is, to take Clay off a Mud or Lome-wall, without Lime, the Straws and all; and, boiling it in strong Vinegar, apply it Plaster-wise to the Sore, and it will of its own Nature search to the Bottom and heal it; provided, that if you see any dead or proud Flesh to arise, that then you either eat or cut it away.

Of the Vives.

For the Vives, which is an Inflammation of the Kernel between the Chap and the Neck of the Horse. Take of Pepper, One-pennyworth; of Swines Grease, one Spoonful; the Juice of a Handful of Rue; Vinegar, two Spoonfuls; mix them together, and then put it equally into both the Horse's Ears, and tie them up with two flat Laces; then shake the Ears, that the Medicine may go down; which done, let the Horse bleed in the Neck and in the Temple-Veins, and it is a certain Cure.

Of the Strangle, or any Boil, Boleb, or other Imposthumes whatsoever.

All these Diseases are of one Nature, being only hard Boils and Imposthumes, gathered together by evil Hu-

mours, either between the Chaps, or elsewhere on the Body.

The Cure. The Cure is, take Southernwood and dry it to Powder, and with Barley Meal and the Yolk of an Egg, make it into a Salve; and lay it to the Impoſthume; and it will ripen it, break it, and heal it.

Of the Canker in the Noſe, or any other Part of the Body.

To heal any Canker, in what Part ſoever it be.

The Cure. Take the Juice of Plantain, as much Vinegar, and the ſame Weight of the Powder of Allum; and with it anoint the Sore twice or thrice a Day, and it will kill it and cure it.

Of ſtaunching of Blood, whether it be at the Noſe, or proceed from any Wound.

If your Horſe bleed violently at the Noſe, and will not be ſtaid; then you ſhall take Beriony, and ſtamp it in a Mortar with Bay-ſalt or White-ſalt, and ſtop it into the Horſe's Noſe, or apply it to the Wound, and it will ſtaunch it: But, if you be ſuddenly taken, as riding by the Highway, or otherwiſe, and cannot get this Herb, you ſhall then take any Woollen Cloth, or any Felt Hat, and with a Knife ſcrape a fine Lint from it, and apply it to the bleeding Place, and it will ſtaunch it preſently.

Of the Diſeaſes in the Mouth; as bloody Riſts, Ligs, Lampas, Camery, Inflammation, Tongue-hurt, or the Barbs.

If you find any Infirmitie in your Horſe's Mouth; as the bloody Riſts, which are Chaps or Riſts in the Palate of the Horſe's Mouth; the Ligs, which are little Puſtules or Bladders within the Horſe's Lips; the Lampas, which is an Excreſſion of Fleſh above the Teeth; the Camery, which is little Warts in the Roof of the Mouth; Inflammation, which is Bliſters; Barbs, which are two little Paps under the Tongue, or any Hurt on the Tongue, by Bite, or otherwiſe.

The Cure. You ſhall take the Leaves of Wormwood and the Leaves of Shirtwit, and beat them in

a Mortar with a little Honey, and with it anoint the
res, and it will heal them; as for the Lampas, they
must be burnt away, which the ignorantest Smith can
easily do.

Of Pain in the Teeth, or loose Teeth.

For any Pain in the Teeth, take Bettony and seeth it
in Ale or Vinegar till a Half Part be consumed, and wash
all the Gums therewith; but, if they be loose, then only
rub them with the Leaves of Elicampane or Horsechelm,
after they have been let blood, and it will fasten them.

Of the Crick in the Neck.

For the Crick in the Neck, you shall first chase it with
the Friction before specified, and then anoint and bathe
it with Soap and Vinegar boiled together.

*Of the Falling of the Crest, Manginess in the Main, or
Shedding of the Hair.*

All these Diseases proceed from Poverty, Mislike, or
over Riding; and the best Cure of the Falling of the
Crest, is, Blood-letting and proud Keeping, with Store
of Meat for Strength and Fatness, ever will raise up the
Crest: But, if the Main be mangy, you shall anoint it
with Butter and Brimstone; and, if the Hair falls away,
then take Southernwood, and burn it to Ashes; then
take those Ashes, and mixing them with common Oil,
anoint the Place therewith, and it will bring Hair pre-
sently, smooth, thick, and fair.

Of Pain in the Withers.

A Horse's Withers are subject to many Griefs and
Swellings, which proceed from cold Humours, and some-
times from evil Saddles; therefore, if at any Time you
see any Swelling about them, you shall take the Herb
Hart's Tongue, and boil it with the Oil of Roses, and
very hot apply it to the Sore, and it will assuage it, or
else break it and heal it.

Of fowaying the Back, or Weakness in the Back.

These two Infirmities are dangerous, and may be eased, but never absolutely cured; therefore, where you find them, take Colworts and boil them in Oil, and rubbing them in a little Bean Meal charge the Back, and will strengthen it.

Of the Itch in the Tail, of the general Scab and Manginess, or of the Farcy.

For any of these Diseases, take fresh Grease, and yelow Arsnick, mix them together, and where the Manginess or Itch is, there rub it hard in, the Sore being made raw: But, if it be for Farcy, then with a Knife slit all the Knots both hard and soft, and then rub in the Medicine; which done, tie up the Horse, so as he may not come to bite himself: And then, after he hath stood two or three Hours, take old Piss and Salt boild together, provided always that you first let him Blood, and take good Store from him, and also give him every Morning a strong Scouring, or a strong Purge, both which are shewed before.

Of many Halting which cometh by Strain or Stroke, either before or behind, from the Shoulder or Hip, down to the Hoof.

Many Infirmities there are which make a Horse halt; as Pinching the Shoulder, Wrench in the Shoulder, Wrench in the nether Joint, splatting the Shoulder, Shoulder pight, Strains in Joints, and such like; all which, as they happen by one Accident, namely, by the Violence of some Slip or Strain, they may be cured by one Medicine, and it is thus: After you have found where the Grief is, as you may do by griping and pinching every single Member, then where he most complaineth, there is his most Grief, you shall take, if the Strain be new, Vinegar, Bolus armoniack, the Whites of Eggs, and Bean-flour, and having beaten them to a perfect Salve, lay them, very hot, to the sore Place, and it will cure it: But if the Strain be old, then take Vinegar and Butter,

Butter, and melting them, together with Wheat-Bran, make it into a Poultis, and lay it to the Sore as hot as may be; and it will, without Doubt, take away the Grief.

Of Foundering in the Feet.

Of Foundering there be two Sorts, a dry and a wet; the dry Foundering is incurable; the wet is thus to be cured: First pare the Soles of his Feet so thin that you may see the Quick, then let him bleed at every Toe, and let them bleed well, then stop the Vein with Tallow and Rosin, and, having tack'd hollow Shoes on his Feet, rub them with Bran, Tar and Tallow, as boiling hot as may be, and renew it once in two Days, for a Week together; then exercise him much, and his Feet will come to their true Use and Nimbleness.

The Splent, Curbe, Bone-spaven, or any knobby or bony Excreffion or Ring-bone.

Splent is a bony Excreffion under the Knee, or the Fore-leg; the Curbe is the like behind the Hinder-hoof; Spaven is the like on the Inside of the Hinder-hoof; the Ring-bone is the like on the Cronet of the Hoof.

Cure is, first, upon the Top of the Excreffion, make a Slit with your Knife the Length of a Barly-corn, a little more, and then, with a fine Cornet, raise the Bone from the Bone; and having made it hollow, the Head of the Excreffion, and no more, take a little Wax and dip it into the Oil of Origanum, thrust it into the Hole, cover the Knob, and so let it remain till the Wax is rot, and that Nature casteth out both the Matter and the Core. As for the Ring-bone, you shall not scarify and anoint it with the Oil only.

Malander, Selander, Pains, Scratches, Mellet, Mules, Crown-Scabs, and such like.

To cure any of these Sorrancess, you shall take Verdigrease and soft Grease, and grinding them together to an Ointment, put it into a Box by itself; then take Wax, Grease and Turpentine, of each alike, and being melted

melted together, put that Salve into another Box; then when you come to dress the Sore, after you have taken off the Scab and made it raw, you shall anoint it with your green Salve of Verdigrease and fresh Grease only for two or three Days; it is a sharp Salve, and will kill the cankerous Humour; then, when you see the Sore look fair, you shall take two Parts of the yellow Salve and one of the green, and, mixing them together, anoint the Sore therewith 'till it be whole, making it stronger or weaker as you shall find Occasion.

Of an Upper Attaint, or Nether Attaint, or any Hurt Over-reaching.

Attaints are Strokes or Cuts by over-reaching, either on the back Sinew of the Fore-leg, on the Heels, or on the nether Joints; and may be safely healed by the former Medicines and Means which healeth the Malader or Selander, in the former Chapter; only, for Over-reaches, you shall, before you apply your Salve, lay the Sore plain and open, without Hollowness, wash it with Beer and Salt, or Vinegar and Salt.

Of the Infirmary of Hoofs; as false Quarters, loose casting Hoofs, Hoof-bound, Hoof-running, Hoof-buried, Hoof-burt, Hoof-soft, Hoof-hard, or generally to preserve Hoofs.

Many are the Diseases which the Hoof is subject to, as first, by false Quarters, which come by pride and must be helped by good shoeing, where the Hoof must bear upon every Part of the Foot, except the false Quarters. If the Hoof be loose, anoint it with Pitch of Burgundy, and it will knit it: If it be clean cast off, then Pitch of Burgundy and Tallow mixed together, will bring a new one: If it be broken or strained, it must be very well open'd at the Heel, the Soal kept moist, and the Cronet be anointed with Fat of Bacon and Tar: If the Frush of the Feet run with stinking Matter, it must be stopp'd with Soot, Turpentine and Bolearmoniack mix'd together: If it be cracked or broken, then anoint it with Pitch and Linseed Oil melted to a soft Salve: If it be soft, then stopp

and the Ashes of a burnt Felt mix'd together; If the
Hoofs be hard, lay hot burning Cinders upon them, and
stop them with Tow and Tallow; and generally,
the preserving of all good Hoofs, anoint them daily
with the Sward or Rind of fat Bacon.

*the Blood-Spaven, or Hoof-bony, or any other unna-
tural Swelling, from what Cause soever it proceedeth.*

These two Sorrances are Pustules, or soft round
swellings, the first on the Inside of the Hinder-hoof,
the other on the very Huckle of the Hoof behind;
they are soft and very sore.

The Cure is, first, to take up the Vein *The Cure.*
and let it bleed only from below;

then having knit it fast with two Shoemakers Ends on
either Side the Slit, cut the Vein in two Pieces; then
mix Linseed, and bruise it in a Mortar, then mix it
with Cow-dung and heat it in a Frying-pan, and so
anoint it to the Swelling only; and if it break or run,
heal it with a Plaister of Pitch, and the Horse
never be troubled with Spaven more. But if the
Swelling come by Strain or Bruise, then take Patch-
work, and, melting it, anoint the Sore therewith,
hold a hot Iron near it, to sink in the Grease; then
bind a Linen Cloth about it, and it will assuage all
the Swellings whatsoever.

Of Wind-Galls.

Wind-galls are little Blebs, or soft Swellings on each
Side the Fetlock, procured by much Travel on hard
ways.

The Cure is, to prick them, and to let
the Jelly, and then dry up the Sore *The Cure.*
with a Plaister of Pitch.

Enterfairing or Shackle-gall, or any Gallings.

Enterfairing is hewing one Leg on another, and
striking off the Skin; it proceedeth from Weakness, or
Infirmity of the Horse's Pace: And Shackle-gall is any
Swelling underneath the Fetlock.

The

The Cure. The Cure is, to anoint them with Turpentine and Verdigrease, mix'd together, or Turpentine alone, if it rankle not too much.

Hurts on the Cronet; as the Quitterbone or Mailong.

The Quitterbone is an hollow Ulcer on the Top of the Cronet; and so is the Mailong.

The Cure. The Cure is, first, to taint it with Verdigrease until you have eaten out the Sore, and made the Wound very clean; then you shall fill it up with the same Salves that you heal the Scratch.

Of Wounds in the Foot; as Gravelling, Pricking, Retait or Cloying.

Your Horse having any Wound in his Foot, by Mischance soever, you shall first search it, and then shall see that it be clear of any Nail Point, or Splint to annoy it; then wash it very well with Wine and Salt, and after taint it with the Oil call'd Egyptiacum, and then lay hot upon the Flax-hurds, Turpentine, Oil and Wax mingled together, and anoint all the Top of the Hoof and with Bolearmoniack and Vinegar; do this once until the Sore be whole.

To draw out a Stub or Thorn.

Take the Herb Dittany, and bruise it in a Mortar with black Soap, and lay it to the Sore, and it will draw out the Splint, Iron, Thorn or Stub.

Of the Aubury, or Tetter.

The Aubury is a bloody Wart on any Part of the Horse's Body; and the Tetter is a canker-like it.

The Cure. The Cure of both is, with an Iron to scarify the one plain to the Body, and to mix it with Vinegar, Honey and the Powder of Sulphur, and with it anoint the Sore till it be whole.

Of the Cords, or String-bait.

This is an unnatural Binding of the Sinews, which perfection a Horse bringeth into the World with; and therefore it is certainly incurable, and not painful, but only an Eye-sore; yet the best Way to stop it from worse Inconvenience, is to bathe his Limbs the Decoction of Coleworts.

Of Spur-galling, or fretting the Skin and Hair.

Nothing is better for this than Piss and Salt, with which wash the Sore daily.

Of healing any old Sore or Wound.

Fresh Butter and the Herb Ameos, chop'd and beaten together to a Salve, will heal any Wound or any old Sore.

Of Sinews being cut.

If the Horse's Sinews be cut, take the Leaves of wild Rose or Woodbine, and, beating them in a Mortar with May Butter, apply it to the Sore, and it will knit the Sinews.

Of eating away dead Flesh.

Take Stubwort, lap it in a red Dock-leaf, roast it in hot Cinders, and lay it to the Sore, and it will eat away any dead Flesh. So will Verdigrease, burnt Almonds, or Lime.

Of Knots in the Joints.

Take Grease, apply'd as before shew'd for Swellings, and take away any hard Knots in the Flesh or upon the Joints.

Of venomous Wounds; as biting with a Mad Dog, Tusks of Beasts, Serpents, or such like.

For any of these mortal or venomous Wounds, take Rowan, Calamint, and the Grains of Wheat, and beat them in a Mortar with Water of Southernwood; make it to a Salve, and lay it on the Sore, and it will heal it.

Of

Of Lice and Nits.

This Filthiness of Vermin is bred in a Horse thro' unnatural Dislike and Poverty.

The Cure. The Cure is, take the Juice of Beets Stavesaker, beaten together, and with anoint the Horse's Body over, and it will make him clean.

Of defending a Horse from Flies.

Take the Juice of Pellitory of Spain, and, mix'd with Milk, anoint the Horse's Belly therewith, and Flies will trouble him.

Of broken Bones, or Bones out of Joint.

After you have placed the Bones in their true Place, take the Fern-Osmund and beat it in a Mortar with Oil of Swallows, and anoint all the Member, splint it and roll it up, and in fifteen Days the Bones knit and be strong.

Of drying up Sores, when they are almost whole.

Allum burnt, unslack'd Lime, the Ashes of an Shoe Soal burnt, or Oyster-shells burnt; any of these simply by themselves will dry up any Sore, tho' ever so moist.

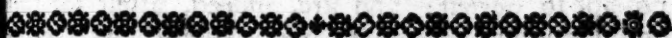
A most famous Receipt to make a Horse that is lean, full of inward Sickness, sound and fat in few Days, having been often approved of.

Take of Wheat Meal six Pounds, Aniseeds two Ounces, Cummin-seeds six Drachms, Carthamus one Drachm a half, Fennugreek-seeds one Ounce two Drachms, Brimstone one Ounce and half, Saffad Oil one Ounce, Honey one Pound and a half, White Wine four Pounds. This must be made into Paste, the hard Simples pounded into Powder and finely sears'd, and then mixed together, and so made into Balls as big as a Fift, then every Watering consume one of those into his cold Water which he drinks Morning and Evening, for fifteen Days together; and if at first he

ty to drink the Water, yet mind it not, but let him
till he drinks it, and after he begins to take it he
drink it with great Greediness.

How to make a white Star.

Hit the Horse's Forehead the Length of your Star,
then raise the Skin up with a Cornet, and put in a
of Lead as big as the Star, and let it remain so
or three Days together; then let it out, and press
on the Skin with your Hand, and that Hair will fall
y, and White will come in the Place; or to scald
Face or Skin with a sower Apple roasted, will bring
the Hair.



*be general Cure and Ordering
of the Bull, Cow, Calf, or
Ox.*

CHAP. I.

*the Bull, Cow, Calf, or Ox; their Shape and
Breed, Use, Choice, and Preservation.*

FORASMUCH as the Males of all Creatures
are the principal in the Breed and Generation
of Things, and that the Fruit which issueth
in their Seed, participateth most with their outward
shapes and inward Qualities, I think fittest in this
ce, where I intend to treat of Horned-Cattle and
at, to speak first of the Choice of a fair Bull, being
the Breeders principalest Instrument of Profit.

You shall understand then, that of our
English Cattle (for I will not speak of those
Italy, and other foreign Countries, as
our Authors do, and forget my own) the

*The Coun-
tries for
Breed.*

best

best are bred in *Yorkshire, Derbyshire, Lancashire, Staffordshire, Lincolnshire, Gloucestershire, and Somersetshire*; though they which are bred in *Yorkshire, Derbyshire, Lancashire, and Staffordshire*, are generally all Black Colour; and those whose Blackness is purest, and their Hair is like Velvet, are esteemed best: They have exceeding large Horns, and very white, with black Tints; they are of stately Shape, large, round, and huddled together in every Member, short jointed, most comely to the Eye; so that they are esteemed excellent in the Market. Those in *Lincolnshire*, are most Part Py'd with more White than the other Colours; their Horns little and crooked; of Bodies exceeding long and large; lean and thin thighed; strong hooded, not apt to Surfeit; and are, indeed, fittest for Labour and Draught. Those in *Somersetshire* and *Gloucestershire*, are generally of a Blood-red Colour, in all Shapes like unto those in *Lincolnshire*, and fittest for their Use.

Of not mixing; and mixing of Races.

Now to mix a Race of these black ones together, is not good; for their Shapes and Colours are so contrary, that their Issue are very uncomely: Therefore I would wish all Men to make their Breeds either simply from one and the same Kind, or else to mix *Yorkshire* with *Staffordshire*, with *Lancashire*, or *Derbyshire*, with one of the black Races; and so likewise *Lincolnshire* with *Somersetshire*, or *Somersetshire* with *Gloucestershire*.

The Shape of the Bull.

Now for the Shape of your Bull, should be of a sharp and quick Countenance, his Horns the larger the better, Neck fleshy, his Belly long and large, his Forefeet broad and curled, his Eyes black and large, his Ears rough within, and Hair like Velvet, his Muzzle long and broad at the Upper-lip; but narrow and small at the Nether; his Nostril crooked within, yet wide and open; his Dew-lip extending from his Nether-lip down to his Forebothes, large Side, thin and hairy, his Breasts rough and big, his Shoulders large, broad and deep, his Ribs broad and wide, his Back strait and flat, to the setting on of his Tail, which should stand high, his Huckle-bones round and fair appearing, making a

Buttock

ocks square, his Thighs round, his Legs strait and
jointed, his Knees round and big, his Hoofs or
feet long and hollow, his Tail long and bush-haired,
his Pizzle round, and also well haired.

These Bulls as they are for Breed, so
are excellent good for the Draught, they naturally draw better single, like

*The Use of
the Bull.*

Oxen, than in the Yoak, like Oxen. The Reason,
suppose, being, because they can hardly be matched in
equal Manner.

Now for the Cow, you shall chuse her of

the same Country with your Bull, and as

as may be of one Colour, only her

Udder should ever be white, with

Teats and no more, her Belly should be round and

her Forehead broad and smooth, and all her

Parts such as are before shewed in the Male

the Use of the Cow is twofold, either

the Dairy, or for Breed. The red Cow

is the best Milk, and the black Cow

giveth forth the goodliest Calf. The young Cow is

best for Breed, yet the indifferent old are not to be

used. The Cow which giveth Milk longest, is best

for both Purposes, for she which goes long Dry, loseth

her Profit, and is less fit for Teeming, for com-
monly they are subject to Feed, and that straineth the

Udder or Matrix.

Now for Calves. There are two Ways

of feeding them; the one to let them run

with their Dams all the Year, which is best,

maketh the goodliest Beast; the other,

to take them from their Dams, after their first sucking,

to bring them up on the Finger with flotten Milk,

and cold only taken away and no more; for to give

young Calf hot Milk is pretent Death, or very dan-
gerous.

Now your Calf be calved in the five Days

of the Change, which is called the

Change, do not rear it, for most assuredly it

will have the Sturdy; therefore preserve it only for the

Use. Also when you have preserved those Male

Calves,

*Of the
Cow's Use.*

*Of Calves,
and their
nourishing.*

*Observa-
tions.*

Calves, which shall be Bulls, then geld the rest Oxen; and the younger they are gelt, the better. The best Time for rearing of Calves is from *Michaelmas* to *Candlemas*. A Calf should be nourished with Milk twelve Weeks, only a Fortnight before you wean from Milk, let the Milk be mixt with Water. As soon as your Calf hath drunk one Month, you shall take the finest, sweetest, and softest Hay you can get, and putting little Wisps into Cloven-sticks, place them so as the Calf may come to them and learn to eat Hay. At *Lady-Day*, when the Weather is fairer, you may turn your Calves to Grass; but by no Means let it be rough but short and sweet, so that they may get it with little Labour.

*Of the Ox,
and his
Use.*

Now of the Ox: You shall understand that the larger are the best and most profitable, both for Draught or Feeding; he is the strongest to endure Labour, the best able to contain both Flesh and Tallow. Now of his Shape, it differeth nothing from that of the Horse, only his Face should be smooth, and his Belly deep. That Ox is fittest for the Yoak which is of gentlest nature, and most familiar with the Man. In matching your Oxen for the Yoak, let them, as near as may be, be of one Height, Spirit, and Strength; for the stronger will ever wrong the weaker, and the duller will hinder him that is of free Spirit, except the Driver be careful to keep the dull Ox to his Labour. Oxen for the Yoak should, by no Means, be put beyond their ordinary Pace; for Violence in travel heats them, Heat breeds Surfeit, and Surfeit those Diseases which make them unapt to Feed, or for any other Use of Goodness.

*Of the
Ox's Food
for Labour.
Feeding.*

Your Ox for the Yoak will labour with Barley-straw, or Pease-straw; and Blend-fodder, which is Hay and Straw mix'd together, he will desire no more Feeding.

*Oxen to
feed for the
Butcher.*

Now for your Ox to feed, he should be as much as may be, be ever of lusty young Years, or if old yet healthful and unbruised, which you shall know by a good Tail and a good Pizzle; for, if the Hair of one

h be lost, then he is a Waster, and he will be long Feeding. If you do see the Ox doth lick himself all over, it is a good Sign that he is Marketable and will be sold; for it shews Soundness, and that the Beast taketh Joy in himself: Yet, whilst he doth so lick himself, he feedeth not, for his own Pride hindereth him, and therefore the Husbandman will lay the Ox's own Dung on his Hide, which will make him leave licking, and get to his Food. Now, if you go to chuse a fat Beast, you shall handle his Hindmost-rib; and, if it be soft and loose, like Down, then it shews the Ox is outwardly well fed; so doth soft Huckle-bones, and a big Neck, and and knotty. If his Cod be big and full, it shews he is well tallowed, and so doth the Crop behind the shoulders. If it be a Cow, then handle her Navel; and, if that be big, round and soft, surely she is well bred. Many other Observations there are, but they are so well known, and common in every Man's Use, that they need no curious Demonstration.

Now for the Preservation of these Cattle in good and perfect Health, it will be necessary that for the young and lusty, and indeed generally for all Sorts, except Calves,

To preserve Cattle in Health.

let them bleed twice in the Year, namely, the Spring and Fall, the Moon being in any of the lower Signs, and also to give them to drink of the Pickle of Olives mixed with a Head of Garlick bruised therein; and for young Calves, be only careful that they go not too soon to Grass, and small Danger is to be feared. Now, notwithstanding all a Man's Carefulness, Beasts daily get Infirmities, and often fall into mortal Extremities; peruse, therefore, this Chapter following, and you shall find a Cure for every particular Disease.

CHAP. II.

Of the Fever in Cattle.

CATTLE are most subject unto a Fever, and it cometh either from Surfeit of Food, being raw and musty, or from Flux of cold Humours, ingender'd by bad Keeping. The Signs are Trembling, heavy eyes, a foaming Mouth, and much Groaning. And

The Cure. And the Cure is, you shall let him bleed; then give him to drink a Quart of Ale, in which is boiled three or four Roots of Plantain, and two Spoonfuls of the best London Treacle, and his Hay be sprinkled with Water.

Of any inward Sickness in Cattle.

For any inward Sickness or Drooping in Cattle, take a Quart of strong Ale, and boil it with a Handful of Wormwood, and Half a Handful of Rue; then strain it, and add to it two Spoonfuls of the Juice of Garlic, as much of the Juice of Housleek, and as much London Treacle; then give it the Beast to drink, being more but lukewarm.

Of the Diseases in the Head; as the Sturdy, or Turning-evil.

This Disease of the Sturdy, is known by a continual turning about of the Beast in one Place.

The Cure. And the Cure is, to cast the Beast; having made his Feet fast, to slit the upper Part of his Forehead Cross-ways, about four Inches each Way; then turning up the Skin, and laying the Skull bare, cut a Piece out of the Skull two Inches square or more; then look next unto the Panicle of the Brain, and you shall see a Bladder lie full of Water and Blood, which you shall very gently take out and throw away; then anoint the Place with warm fresh Butter, turn down the Skin, and with a Needle and a little Silk, stitch it close together; then lay on a hot Plaster of Oil, Turpentine, Wax, and a little Rosin melted together with Flax-hurds; and so folding warm woollen Cloths about the Head, let the Beast rise, and so remain three or four Days ere you dress it again, and then dress it up like another Wound; only observe in this Cure by no Means you touch the Brain, for that is mortal, and then the Help is both common and most easy.

Diseases in the Eyes of Cattle; as the Haw, a Stroke, Inflammation, Weeping, or the Pin or Web.

For any general Soreness in the Eyes of Cattle, take Water of Eye-bright, mixt with the Juice of Aspleek, and wash them therewith, and it will recover them; but, if a Haw breed therein, then you must cut it out, which every simple Smith can do. For a Stroke, Inflammation, Pin or Web, which sends Excressions upon the Eyes, take a new laid Egg, and put out Half the White, then fill it up with Salt, and a little Ginger, and roast it extream hard in Cinders: Which done, beat it to Powder, Shell all; but, before you roast it, wrap it in a wet Cloth, and put of this Powder into the Beast's Eye, it will heal and cure it.

Diseases in the Mouth; as Barbs under the Tongue, Blain on the Tongue, Teeth loose, or Tongue venomd.

These Barbs, or Paps, which grow under the Gums of Cattle, and being inflamed do hinder them from feeding, you shall with a keen Pair of Nippers cut away close by the Flesh; and, if they bleed (as they will do if they be rank) you shall then with a red-hot Bodkin sear them, and drop on the Top of the seared Places a Drop or two of Rozen and Butter mixt together; but, if they bleed not, then only rub them with Sage and Salt, and they will heal. Now for a Blain on the Tongue, by some called the Tin-blain; it is a Blister which groweth at the Root of the Tongue, and cometh through Heat of the Stomach and much drinking, and is oft very mortal, for it will rise so high and so big that it will stop the Wind of the

The Cure is, to thrust your Hand into the Mouth of the Beast, and draw out his Tongue with your Nail to break the Blister; and then wash the sore Place with strong Brine, or Sage Salt, and Water. If you find more Blisters than one, break all, and wash them, and it is a present Cure. For loose Teeth, you shall let the Beast Blood in

E

his

his Gums, and under his Tail; then wash his Chaps with Sage and Woodbine Leaves, boiled in Brandy. Lastly, if the Tongue be venom'd, which you shall know by the unnatural Swelling thereof, you shall take Plantain; and, boiling it with Vinegar and Salt, wash the Tongue therewith, and it will cure it.

Of Diseases in the Neck; as being galled, bruised, swell'd, out of Joint, or having the Closh.

If any Ox's Neck be galled, bruised, or swell'd, take the Yoak, take the Leaves of round Aristolochia; beating them in a Mortar with Tallow or fresh Grease, anoint the sore Place therewith, and it will not only heal it, but any Strain in the Neck, even if the Bone be a little disorder'd. Now for the Closh, or Clous, which causeth a Beast to peel and lose the Hair from his Neck, and is bred by drawing in wet and rainy Weather, you shall take the Ashes of an old burnt Shoe, and strewn upon the Neck, and then rub it over with Tallow and Turpentine mixt together.

Of the Pestilence, Gargill, or Murrain in Beasts.

This Pestilence or Murrain amongst Beasts, is bred by divers Occasions; as from Rankness of Blood, from Feeding, from Corruption of the Air, Intemperance of the Weather, Inundation of Floods, or the Infection of other Cattle: Much might be said of the Violence and Mortality thereof, which hath utterly unfurnish'd whole Countries.

The Cure. But to go to the Cure; you shall give to all your Cattle, as well the sound as the sick, this Medicine, which never failed to preserve many as have taken it: Take of old Urine a Quart, mix it with a Handful of Hen's Dung dissolved therein, and let your Beast drink it.

Of the Misking, or Leanness of Beasts.

If your Beast fall into any unnatural Misking or Leanness, which you shall know by the discoloring of his Hair, you shall then cause him first to be

ood, and after take sweet Butter, then beat it into Mortar, with a little Myrrh and the Shaving of Ivory; and, being kept Fasting, make him swallow down two three Balls thereof. If it be in the Winter, feed him with sweet Hay; if in the Summer, put him to Grass.

Of the Diseases in the Guts; as Flux, Costiveness, Cholick, and such like.

If your Beast be troubled with any sore Lax, or body-flux, you shall take a Handful of the Seeds of Woodrose, and being dried and beaten to Powder, brew with a Quart of strong Ale, and give it the Beast to drink: But if he be too dry or costive in his Body, you shall take a Handful of Fennugreek, boil it in a Quart of Ale, and give it him to drink; but, for any Cholick or Belly-ach, or Gnawing of the Guts, boil in Water which he drinketh good Store of Oil, and it will help him.

Of Pissing of Blood.

Now if your Beast piss Blood, which cometh either of over-labouring, or of hard and sour feeding, you shall take Shepherd's-Purse, boil it in a Quart of Red Wine, and then strain it; then put to it a little Cinnamon, and so give it the Beast to drink.

Of dropping Nostrils, or any Cold in the Head.

If your Beast's Nostrils run continually, which is a sign of Cold in the Head, you shall take Butter and Mistletoe, and mixing them together, anoint two Geese withers therewith, and thrust them up into the Nostrils of the Beast; and use thus to do every Morning, till they leave dropping.

Of any Swelling in a Beast whatsoever.

If your Beast have any outward Swelling, bathe it in Vinegar exceeding hot, and it will assuage it; if the Swelling be inward, then boil round Aristolochia in his Water.

Of the Worm in the Tail.

There is a Worm which will breed in the Tail of the Beast, and doth not only keep him from feeding, but also eateth away the Hair of the Tail, and disfigure the Beast.

The Cure.

The Cure is, to wash the Tail in strong Lye made of Urine and Ash-wood Ashes, and that will kill the Worm, and so heal and dry the Sore.

Of any Cough, or Shortness of Breath in Cattle.

If your Beast be troubled with the Cough, or Shortness of Breath, you shall give him to drink divers Mornings together a Spoonful or two of Tar dissolved in Quart of new Milk, and a Head of Garlick clean peeled and bruised.

Of any Imposthume, Boil, or Botch in a Beast.

If your Beast be troubled with any Imposthume, Boil, or Botch, you shall take Lily Roots and boil them in Milk till they be soft, so that you may make them like Pap; then being very hot clap it to the Sore, and when it comes to be soft, open it with a hot Iron, and let out the Filth; then heal it up with Tar, Turpentine, and Oil mixt together.

Of Diseases in the Sinews, as Weakness, Stiffness, Soreness.

If you find by the unnimble going of your Beast that his Sinews are weak, shrunk, or tender, take Marshmallows and Chickweed, and boil them in the Dregs of Ale or in Vinegar; and being very hot, lay it to the affected Member, and it will comfort the Sinews.

Of the general Scab; particular Scab, Itch, or Scald in Cattle.

If your Beast be troubled with some few Scabs here and there on his Body, you shall only rub them off, and anoint

oint the Place with black Soap and Tar mixt together, and it will heal them: But if the Scab be universally over the Body, and the Scabs mixt with a dry Scurf, then you shall first let the Beast Blood, after rub of the Scabs and Scurf till the Skin bleed, then wash it with old Urine and green Copperas together; and, after the bathing is dry, anoint the Body with Boar's Grease and Brimstone mingled together.

Of the Hide-bound, or dry Skin in Cattle.

This Grief cometh of over-much Labour and evil keeping, and above all other Beasts your *Lincolnshire* Cattle are subject unto it: The Signs are a discoloured and hard Skin, with much Leanness.

The Cure is, to let him Blood, and to give him to drink a Quart of good strong Ale, brewed with Myrrh, and the Powder of Bay-berries, for want of Berries, the Bay-tree Leaves; then keep him warm, and feed him with Hay that is a little Mow-rotten, and only looketh red, but is not dusty or mouldy, that will get him an Appetite to drink, and drinking will loosen his Skin.

Of the Diseases in the Lungs; especially the Lung-grown.

The Lungs of a Beast are much subject to Sicknes, which may appear by much Panting and Shortness of Breath: The Sign being a continual Coughing; but that which is before prescribed for the Cough, will cure these; only for a Beast which is Lung-grown, or when his Lungs grown to his Side, which cometh through some extream Drought taken in the Summer season, and is known by the Cough, hoarse or hollow Coughing: You shall take a Pint of Tanner's Ooze, and mix it with a Pint of new Milk and one Ounce of brown Sarcandy, and give it the Beast to drink. This hath been found a present Cure; or to give him a Ball as big as a Man's Fist, of Tar and Butter mixt together, is a certain Cure.

Of biting by a mad Dog, or any other venomous Beast.

If your Beast be bitten by a mad Dog, or any other venomous Beast, you shall take Plantain, and beat it in a Mortar with Bolearmoniack, Sanguis Draconis, Barley-Meal, the Whites of Eggs, and Plaster-wine, and apply it to the Sore, renewing it once in fourteen Hours.

Of the falling down of the Palate of a Beast's Mouth.

Labour and Drought will make the Palate of a Beast's Mouth to fall down, which you shall know by a certain hollow changing in his Mouth when he would eat, and by his sighing, and a desire to eat, but cannot.

The Cure. The ordinary Cure is, you shall cast the Beast, and with your Hand thrust it into his Mouth, then let him bleed in the Palate, and anoint it with Honey and Salt, and then put him to Grass, for he shall eat no dry Meat.

Of any Grief or Pain in the Hoof of a Beast, and of the Foul.

Take Mugwort, and beat it in a Mortar with Butter or Tallow; then apply it to the Hoof of the Beast, and it will take away any Grief whatsoever: But, if he be troubled with that Disease, which is called the Foul, and commonly by treading in Man's Ordure, which breedeth a Soreness and Swelling between the Clefts of the Hoof.

The Cure. You shall for the Cure cast the Beast, and with a Hay-rope rub him so between the same, that you make him bleed, and anoint the Place with Tar, Turpentine, and Kitchen-mixt together; then keep him out of the Dirt, and he will soon be Whole.

Of Bruising in general, on what Part of the Body they be.

Take Brook-lime the Less, and fry it with Tallow, and so lay it hot to the Bruise; and it will either cure it, or else ripen it, break it, and heal it, as hath been often approved.

swallowing down Hen's Dung, or any poisonous Thing.

If your Beast have swallowed down Hen's Dung, or Leeches, or any other poisonous Thing, you shall take a Pint of strong Vinegar, Half so much Oil, sweet Butter, and two Spoonfuls of London Treacle; on mixing them together on the Fire, give it the Beast to drink, and it will cure him.

Of killing Lice, or Ticks.

Beasts that are bred in Woods under dropping of Trees, or in barren and unwholesome Places, are much subject to Lice, Ticks, and other Vermin.

The Cure whereof is to anoint their Body with fresh Grease, Pepper, Stave-
The Cure.
ner and Quicksilver, beaten together, until the quicksilver be slain.

Of the Dewboln, or general Gargil.

Howsoever some of our *English* Writers are opinioned, this Dewboln, or general Gargil, is a poisonous and violent Swelling, beginning at the nether Part of the Dewlap; and if it be not prevented, the Swelling will ascend upward to the Throat of the Beast, and when it is incurable: Therefore, for the Preservation of your Beast, as soon as you see the Swelling appear, cast your Beast, and slit the swell'd Place of the Dewlap, at least four Inches in Length; then take a Handful or two of Spear-Grass, or Knot-Grass, and thrusting it into the Wound, stitch it up close; then anoint it with Butter and Salt, and so let it rot and wear away of itself: When you perceive that his Body be swell'd, which is a sign that the Poison is dispers'd inwardly, then it shall be good to give him a Quart of Ale and Rue boil'd together, and so to chafe him up and down well, both before and after.

Of the Loss of the Cud.

A Beast will many Times, through Carelessness Chewing, lose his Cud, and then mourn and leave eat.

The Cure. The certain Cure whereof is to take little four Leaven and Salt; then beating in a Mortar with Man's Urine and Loam, make a pre big Ball, and force him to swallow it down, and it recover his Cud.

Of killing of all Sorts of Worms; either in the Cow, or Calf.

There is nothing killeth Worms in the Bodies Cattle, sooner than Saven chopp'd small and beaten with sweet Butter, and so given in round Balls to the Beast, nor any Thing maketh them void them so soon as Fox Wort, and a little black Soap mixt together, and give the Beast to drink.

Of the vomiting of Blood.

This Disease cometh through Rankness of Blood got in fruitful Pastures, after hard Keeping; insomuch that you shall see the Blood flow from their Mouths.

The Cure. The Cure is, first to let the Beast Blood, and then give to drink Bolearmoniack and Ale mixt together.

Of the Gout in Cattle.

If your Beast be troubled with the Gout, which you shall know by the sudden Swelling of his Joints, and falling again, you shall take Galingal; then boil in the Dregs of Ale and sweet Butter, and Poultis-wise apply it to the offended Member.

Of milking of a Beast.

Milking, is when a Beast will oft fall, and oft rise as he is at his Labour, and cannot endure to stand a while together: It proceeds from some Stroke or Bruise either by Cudgel, or other blunt Weapon.

The Cure is, not to raise him suddenly, to give him Ale and some Stone-Pitch *The Cure* very well together to drink.

Of provoking a Beast to piss.

If your Beast cannot piss, steep Smalage, or the Roots Raddish, in a Quart of Ale, and give it him to drink, it presently helpeth.

Of the over-flowing of the Gall in Beasts.

The over-flowing of the Gall, is ever known by the owners of the Skin, and the Eyes of the Beast. The Cure is, to give him a Quart of Saffron, and Turmeric mix'd together, to drink, after he hath been let Blood; and so do the Mornings together. *The Cure*

A Beast that is gored; either with a Stake or the Horn of another Beast.

Take Turpentine and Oil, and heat them on the fire; then taint the Wound therewith, and it will cure it.

Of a Cow that is Wethered.

This Disease is, when a Cow after her Calving cannot cast her Cleaning; and therefore to compel her to it, you shall take the Juice of Bettony, Mugwort, Mallows, of each three Spoonfuls, mix'd with a Quart of Ale, and give it the Beast to drink: Also give her to eat scorched Barley, and it will force her to cast her Burthen suddenly.

Of drawing out Thorns or Stubs.

Take black Snails and black Soap, and beat them together; then apply them to the Sore, and it will draw the Grief to be apparent.

Of purging of Cattle.

There is nothing doth purge a Beast so naturally; as green weedy Grass, which groweth in Orchards

under Trees; nor any Medicine doth purge the better than Tar, Butter, and Sugarcandy mixt together, and given in Balls as big as an Hen's Egg.

Of being Shrew-run, or Shrew-bitten.

A Shrew-Mouse, which is a Mouse with short Legs, and a long Head like a Swine's, is venomous, and, if it bite a Beast, the Sore will swell and run, and put the Beast in Danger; but if it only run on a Beast, it feebleth his Hinder-parts, and maketh him unable to go.

The Cure. The Cure for being Shrew-bitten, is the same which is formerly shewed for biting of other venomous Beasts; but, if he be Shrew-run, you shall only draw him under, or beat him with a Bramble, which groweth at both Ends in the Furrows of Corn-Lands.

Of Faintness in Labour.

If your Beast in his Labour and Heat of the day chance to faint, you shall loose him, and drive him to the running Stream to drink; then give him two or three Ospines full of parch'd Barley to eat, and he will labour fresh again.

Of breeding Milk in a Cow.

If your Cow after her Calving cannot let down Milk, you shall give her a Quart of strong Possie-mix'd with Anni-seeds and Coriander-seeds, beaten to Powder, to drink every Morning; and it will not only make her Milk spring, but also encrease it wonderfully.

Of Bones out of Joint, or Bones broken.

If any Beast have a Bone broken, or misplaced, you have set it right, and in its true Place, you shall wrap a Plaister about it, made of Burgundy Pitch, Turpentine, and Linseed Oil; then splint it, and let it rest fifteen Days, and it will do it much good.

Of the Rot in Beasts.

If your Beast be subject to Rottennes, which you may know by his Leanness, Mistle, and continual cowering behind, you shall take Bay-berries, beaten to powder, Myrrh, Ivy-leaves, Elder-leaves, Featherfew, a good Lump of dry Clay and Bay-salt: Mix these together in strong Urine; and, being warm, give the Beast Half a Pint thereof to drink, and it will knit and preserve them.

Of the Pantas.

The Pantas is a very faint Disease, and maketh a Beast to sweat, shake and pant much.

The Cure is to give him, in Ale and Wine mixt together, a little Soot and a little Earning to drink, two or three Mornings before you pour him.

Of all Manner of Wounds in Beasts.

To cure any Wounds in Beasts given by Edge-Tools, or otherwise, where the Skin is broke, take Hog's grease, Tar, Turpentine and Wax, of each a like quantity, and a Quarter so much Verdigrease; then melt them all together into one Salve, and apply it to the Wound, by spreading it upon a Cloth, and it will heal it without any rank or dead Flesh.

Of Sheep.

CHAP. I.

Of Sheep in general; their Use, Choice, Shape, and Preservation.

TO enter into any long Discourse of Praise or Profit of Sheep, or to shew my Reading, Relation of the Sheep of other Countries, were frivolous; because I am to write much in a very little Paper, and I speak only to my Countrymen, the English, who desire to learn and know their own Profit. Know then, that whosoever will stock himself with good Sheep must look into the Nature of the Soil in which he liveth for Sheep, according to the Earth and Air in which they live, do alter their Nature and Properties: The barren Sheep becoming good, in good Soils; and the good Sheep barren, in evil Soils. If then you desire to have Sheep of a curious fine Staple of Wool, from whence you may draw a Thread as fine as Silk, you shall find such in *Herefordshire*, about *Lempster Side*, and other special Parts of that Country; in that Part of *Worcestershire*, joining upon *Shropshire*, and many such-like Places; yet these Sheep are very little of Bone, black faced, and bear a very little Burthen. The Sheep upon *Cotswold Hills* are of better Bone, Shape, and Burthen; but their Staple is coarser and deeper. The Sheep in that Part of *Worcestershire*, which joineth on *Warwickshire*, and many Parts of *Warwickshire*, all *Leicestershire*, *Buckinghamshire*, and Part of *Northamptonshire*; and that Part of *Nottinghamshire*, which is exempted from the Forest of *Sherwood*, beareth a large boned Sheep, of the best Shape and deepest Staple chiefly, if they be Pastured Sheep; yet is their Wool coarser than that of *Cotswold*, *Lincolnshire*, especially in the salt Marshes, has the largest Sheep, but not the best Wool; for their Legs and Bellies are long and naked, and their Staple is coarse.

than any other. The Sheep in *Yorkshire*, and so
thward, are of reasonable big Bone, but of a Staple
gh and hairy; and the *Welsh* Sheep are of all the
st, for they are both little and of worse Staple; and,
eed, are praised only in the Dish, for they are the
etest Mutton.

If now, knowing the Natures and Pro-
ties of the Sheep of every County, you
about to stock your Ground, be sure to
ng your Sheep from a worser Soil, to a
ter; and not from a better to a worse.

The Lear, which is the Earth on which
sheep lyeth, and giveth him his Colour,
much to be respected. The read Lear

held the best; the Duskyish, inclining to a little Red-
s, is tolerable; but the White or Dirty Lear stark
ght. In the Choice, therefore, of your Sheep,
ife the biggest Boned, with the best Wool; the
ple being soft, greasy, well curled, and close toge-
r, so that a Man shall have much-ado to part it with
Fingers. These Sheep, besides the bearing of the
t Burthen, are always the best Butcher's Ware, and
soonest away in the Market: Therefore, in the
oice of Sheep for your Breed, have a principal Re-
ct to your Rams, for they either marr or make a
ck.

Let them then, as near as you can have
se Properties or Shapes: First, large of
dy in every general Part, with a long
dy and a large Belly; his Forehead should be broad,
nd, and well rising; a chearful large Eye; strait
rt Nostrils, and a very small Muzzel; by no Means
y Horns, for the Fodder-Sheep is the best Breeder,
d his Issue never dangereth the Dam in Yeanning, as
horned Sheep do: Besides, those Sheep which have
Horns, are of such Strength of Head, that they
ve often been seen to kill those Sheep, which have
e largest Horns and best wrinkled. A Sheep should
ve a large upright Neck, somewhat bending like the
ck of a Horse, a very broad Back, round Buttocks,
thick Tail, and short jointed Legs, small, clean and
ble, his Wool should be thick and deep, covering
his

*Of the
Choice of
Sheep.*

*Of the
Lear.*

*The Shape
of a Sheep.*

his Belly all over; also his Face, and even to his Nostrils, and so downwards to his very Knees and Hind-houghs. And thus, according to the Shape, Properties and Soil, from whence you chuse your Rams, do the rest of your Flock also.

When

*Ewes should
bring
forth.*

The best Time for your Ewes to bring forth their young Ones, is, if they be Pasture-Sheep, about the latter End of April, and so until the Beginning of June; but if they be Field-Sheep, then from the beginning of January 'till the End of March, that the Lambs may be strong, and able before May-Day to follow their Dams over the rough Fallow-lands and Warre-Furrows, which weak Lambs are not able to do: Although to yeare thus early in the Winter, when there is no Grass springing, and the Sharpness of the Weather also is dangerous; yet the Husbandman must provide Shelter and sweet Fodder; and the Shepherd, with great Vigilance, be stirring at all Hours to prevent Evils, for the Reasons before shewed; and, though the Ewe at first be scant of Milk, yet as the warm Weather increaseth, and the Grass beginneth to spring, so will her Milk spring also.

*Ordering
of Lambs.*

Now for your Lambs: About Michaelmas you shall separate the Male from the Female; and, having chosen out the worst, which you mean to keep for Rams, put them aside, and then geld the rest, which every orderly Shepherd can do sufficiently, for there is no Danger in gelding young Lambs. The first Year a Male Lamb is called a Weather-Hog, and a Female Lamb an Ewe-Hog. The second Year the Male is a Weather, and the Female a Theaf, and then she may be put to the Ram; but if you let her go over that Year also, then she is a Double-Theaf, and will both herself be the goodlier Shearer, and also bring forth the goodlier Lamb; whence it comes, that the best Sheep-Masters, make more account of the Double-Theaf, than of any other Breed.

*Needful
Observations.*

You shall observe never to shear your Lambs till they be full Hogs. You shall ever wash three Days before you shear. The best Time of Sheering is, from July

August. Ewes are ever good Breeders, from three years old, till their Mouths break. If you would have your Ewes bring forth Male Lambs, note when the North-Wind bloweth, and driving your Flock against the Wind, let your Rams ride as they go, and this will make the Ewes to conceive Male Lambs: So likewise, if you would have Female Lambs, put your Rams to the Ewes when the Wind bloweth out of the South.

Now, for the general Preservation of Sheep; feed them as much as you can upon high Grounds, which are dry and fruitful, the Grass sweet, yet so short that it must be got with much Labour; but if you are obliged to feed them upon low and moist Grounds, which are infectious, you shall not bring your Sheep from the Fold (for I now speak to the honest *English* Husbandman) until the Sun be risen, and that the Beams begin to draw the Dew from the Earth; then, having let them forth, drive them to their Place of Feeding, and there, with your dog, chase them up and down till they be weary; then let them either feed, or take their rest, which they please. This Chasing first beateth away Mildews, and all other Dews from the Earth; as also those Webs, Moulds and Flakes, which lying on the Earth, and a Sheep picking them up, do breed Rottenness: Also this Chasing stirreth up that natural Heat in a Sheep, which drinketh up and wasteth the Abundance of Moisture, which else would turn to Rottenness. Besides a Sheep, being thus chased and wearied, will fall to his Food more deliberately, and not with such Greediness as otherwise he would, and also make Choice of that Meat which is best for his Health. If a Shepherd once in a Month, or always when he hath Occasion to handle his Sheep, rub their Mouths with Bay-salt, it is an excellent Preservation against all Manner of Sickness, and very comfortable for a Sheep also; for a Sheep will very well live, and abate of his Flesh, by rubbing his Mouth once a Day with Bay-salt only. Now, forasmuch as notwithstanding these Principles a Sheep falleth into many Infirmities, hereafter follow the several Cures of all Manner of Diseases.

C H A P. II.

The Signs to know a sound Sheep, and one that is unsound.

IF a Sheep be sound and perfect, his Eye will be bright and chearful, the White pure without Spots, and the Strings red; his Gums also will be red, his Teeth white and even, his Skin on his Brisket will be red, and so will each Side betwixt his Body and his Shoulders, where Wool grows not; his Skin in general will be loose, his Wool fast, his Breath long, and his Feet not hot: But, if he be unsound, then these Signs will have contrary Faces; his Eyes will be heavy, pale and spotted; his Breast and Gums white; his Teeth yellow and foul; his Wool, when it is pulled, will easily part from his Body; and, when he is dead, open him, and you shall find his Belly full of Water, his Liver yellow, his Liver putrified, and his Flesh moist and waterish.

C H A P. III.

Of Sicknefs in general, or the Fever amongst Sheep.

CHANGE of Pasture is a great Cure for sick Sheep; yet if you find any more particularly troubled than the rest, take Puliol-Royal, and stamping it, mix the Juice with Water and Vinegar, the Quantity of Half a Pint, and give it the Sheep with a Horn luke warm; and by no Means let the Sheep be much chafed. Also in these Sicknefses, the Shepherd must have a great Care to note from whence the Disease groweth; if it proceeds from Cold, then to drive his Sheep to Shelter, if from Heat, then to feed them in shady and cool Places.

Of the general Scab, or Itch in Sheep.

This general Scab, or Itch in Sheep, is of all Diseases most common among them, proceeding from rainy and wet Weather, which falling upon their Skins, if they happen to be chafed or heated after, they presently break forth into the Scab, which you shall know by a white filthy Scurf sticking upon their Skins: And the most usual Medicine for the same, which all Shepherds is to anoint the Place with Tar and Grease, mixt together; but, if upon the first Appearance of the Itch, you steep Pulver-Royal in Water, and wash the Skin therewith, it will preserve them from running into the Scab.

Of killing Maggots in Sheep.

If a Sheep be troubled with Maggots, you shall take Rose-Grease, Tar, and Brimstone, and mix them together on the Fire, then anoint the Place therewith, and it will kill the Maggots.

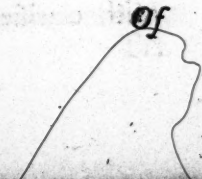
Of the red Water.

The red Water is a poisonous Disease in Sheep, offending the Heart; and is, indeed, as the Pestilence among other Cattle: Therefore, when you find any of your Sheep infected therewith, you shall first let him bleed in the Foot between the Claws, and also under the Tail; then lay to the sore Places Rue, or Wormwood, beaten with Bay-salt, and it helpeth.

Of Lung-sick, or any Cough or Cold.

If your Sheep be troubled with any Sicknes in his Lungs, which you shall know by his coughing and shortness of Breath, you shall take Tussilago, or Colts-foot and Lung-wort; and, stamping them, strain the Juice into a little Honey and Water, and give it the Sheep to drink.

of



Of the Worm in the Claw of the Sheep, or any other Part.

This Worm breedeth commonly before, between the Claw of the Foot; but wheresoever it breedeth, is known by the Head, which is like a Tuft of Hair, and will stick forth in a Bunch.

The Cure. The Cure is, to slit the Foot, and draw out the Worm, without breaking it; then anoint the Place with Tar and Tallow mixt together; for Tar simply of itself will draw too much.

Of the Wildfire in Sheep.

This Disease, which is called the Wildfire, is a very infectious Sickness, and will endanger the whole Flock; but, howsoever incurable it is held, yet it is certain that if you take Chervile, and stamping it with old Ale, make a Salve thereof, and anoint the Sore therewith, will kill the Fire, and set the Sheep safe: And therefore, for this Disease, bury the first infected Sheep alive, with his Heels upwards, before the Sheep-door, yet this Medicine hath been ever found more effectual.

Of the Diseases of the Gall; as Cholera, Jaundice, or such like.

These Diseases are known by the Yellowness of the Sheep's Skin.

The Cure. The Cure is, to take Plantain and Lintuce; and, stamping them together, mix their Juice with Vinegar, and give Half a Pint to a Sheep to drink.

Of the tough Phlegm, or stopping in Sheep.

If your Sheep be stoppt in the Head, Breast, or Wind, either with tough Phlegm or other cold Humors, which you shall know by the running of the Nostrils, then take the Powder of Puliol-Royal, and mixing it with clarified Honey, dissolve it in warm Water, and

Quant

The Gentleman's Companion.

91

Quantity of Half a Pint, then give it the Sheep to drink, it will loosen the Phlegm.

Of broken Bones in Sheep, or Bones out of Joint.

If your Sheep chance to break a Leg, or have any Bone misplaced, you shall, after you have set it straight and right again, first bathe it with Oil and Wine; dipping a Cloth in molten Pitch-grease, roll it about, and splint it as Occasion shall serve, and so let it remain nine Days; then dress it again, and at the End of the next nine Days the Sheep will be able to go.

Of any Sickness in Lambs.

If your Lamb be sick, you shall give it Mare's Milk, Goat's Milk, or the own Dam's Milk mixt with Water, drink, and keep it very warm.

Of the Sturdy, turning Evil, or More-found.

These Diseases proceed from Rankness of Blood, which offendeth the Brain and other inward Parts.

The Cure then is to let the Sheep Blood in the Eye-veins, Temple-veins, and through the Nostrils; then to rub the Places with young Nettles bruised. *The Cure.*

Diseases in the Eyes; as the Haw, Dimness, or any Soreness.

If your Sheep have any Imperfection in his Eyes, you shall drop the Juice of Celandine into them, and it is a present Help.

Of Water in a Sheep's Belly.

If a Sheep have Water in his Belly, between the outward Flesh and the Rim, then you may safely adventure to let it forth by making a little Hole through the Flesh, putting in a Quill; but, if it be between the Rim and the Bag, then it is incurable, for you must by no means cut the Rim asunder: When the Water is let forth, you shall stitch up the Hole, and anoint it with Tar.

Tar and Butter mixt together. This Water, if it
main in the Body, will rot the Sheep.

Of the tag'd or belt Sheep.

A Sheep is said to be tag'd or belt, when by a continual Squirt running out of his Ordure, he bewrayeth his Tail in such wise, that through the Heat of the Dun scaldeth and breedeth the Scab therein.

The Cure. The Cure is, with a Pair of Shears to away the Tags, and to lay the Sore bare raw; then to throw Earth dry'd upon it, and after Tar and Goose-Grease mixt together.

Of the Pox in Sheep.

The Pox in Sheep are small red Pimples, like Pustules rising on the Skin, and they are infectious.

The Cure. The Cure is, to take Rosemary, and the Leaves in Vinegar; then bathe the Sores therewith, and it will heal them. Change Pasture is good for this Disease, and you shall also separate the sick from the sound.

Of the Wood-evil, or Cramp.

This Disease is Weakness or Straitning of the Sides got by Colds and Surfeits. It is very mortal, and will run through a whole Flock.

The Cure. The Cure is, to take Cinque-foil, or leaved Grass, and boil it in Wine; then give the Sheep a Pint thereof to drink; keep him warm, and chafe his Legs with Oil and Vinegar.

Of making an Ewe to love her own Lamb, or any other Ewe's Lamb.

If an Ewe grow unnatural, and will not take to her Lamb, after she hath yeaned it, you shall take a little of the Clean of the Ewe, which is the Bed in which the Lamb lay, and force the Ewe to eat it, or at least chew it in her Mouth, and she will fall to love it naturally; but if an Ewe have cast her Lamb, and you would have her take to another Ewe's Lamb, you shall take the Lamb

h is dead, and with it rub and daub the live Lamb
wer, and so put it to the Ewe, and she will take as
ral to it, as if it were her own.

Of licking up Poison.

a Sheep chance to lick up any Poison, you shall
give it by a sudden Swelling and Reeling of the

he Cure is, as soon as you see it stagger,
pen the Mouth, and you shall find one *The Cure.*
ore Blisters upon the Tongue-Roots; you shall pre-
y break them with your Fingers, and rub them with
n or Sage; then piss into the Sheep's Mouth, and it
do well.

Of Lambs yeaning sick.

a Lamb be yeaned sick and weak, the Shepherd
fold it up in his Cloak, blow into the Mouth of it;
then drawing the Dam's Dugs, squirt Milk into the
th of it.

Of making an Ewe to be easily delivered.

an Ewe can hardly bring forth or yeane her Lamb,
shall take Balsam-mint, or Horse-mint, and put
the Juice or Powder of it into a little strong Ale;
give it the Ewe to drink, and she will yeane presently.

To fasten Sheeps Teeth.

a Sheep's Teeth be loose, let him Blood in his
s and under his Tail, and then rub his Teeth with
e, Salt and Sage.

Of increasing Milk in Ewes.

othing increaseth Milk in Ewes more than Change
sture and Feeding, driving them one while unto the
another while to the Valleys; and where the Grass
ettest and short, the Sheep eateth with best Appe-
here see you continue longest; and touching giving
Fitches, Dill, Anni-seeds, and such like, this
ge of Ground will make Milk spring much better.

Of

Of the Staggers, or Leaf-Sickness in Lambs, or elder Sheep.

The Staggers is ingendered in Sheep, by surfeiting Oak-leaves, Hawthorn-leaves, or such like, which are very apt unto. It is a cold, corrupt Blood or Phlegm gathered together about the Brain; and, indeed, suddenly mortal.

The Cure. The best Cure is, to take Assafoetida, dissolve it in warm Water; then put a Quantity of Half a Spoonful into each Ear of the Sheep or Lamb, and it is a present Remedy.

Of Worms in the Guts of Sheep or Lambs.

Sheep are as subject to Worms in their Guts and much as any other Cattle whatsoever, which you know by beating their Bellies with their Feet, and looking continually at their Bellies.

The Cure. The Cure is, to take the Leaves of Carduus marianus, and to stamp them; then mixing Juice thereof with Honey, give it the Sheep to drink, and then chase him a little, and keep him two or three Hours fasting.

Of the Loss of the Cud.

That which helpeth the Loss of the Cud in a Cow, the same is a present Remedy for Sheep, as is spoke of before in a former Chapter.

Of saving Sheep from the Rot.

Now as this Disease of Rottenness is the cruellest of all other among Sheep, and extendeth his Violence to all the Flock; nay, over Townships and Countie. And, though it be held of most Men incurable, yet the Government, and this Receipt which I shall deliver, will not only prevent it, but preserve your Sheep. Therefore, as soon as you perceive that any of your Sheep are tainted, you shall take Adraces, which is a Salt gathered from the salt Marshes in the Heat of Summer, when the Tide is going away, and leaving certain Drops of salt Water on the Grass, then the violent

the Sun turns it to Salt; and, to speak briefly, all Salt made by the Violence of the Sun's Heat only, is taken in Adraces, of which there is infinite Store in *Spain*. With this Adraces rub the Mouths of all your Sheep once a Week, and you shall never need to fear the rotting of them, for it hath been well tried; and, as I imagine, the Experiment was found out from this very sound. It is a Rule, and well known at this Day in *Wiltshire* and in *Kent*, that upon the salt Marshes Sheep did never die of the Rot: No other Reason being known, therefore, but the licking up of that Salt; and, without Doubt, it is most infallible and most easy.

C H A P. IV.

A few Precepts for the Shepherd.

IT is meet that every good and careful Shepherd should know what Food is good for Sheep, and what is hurtful; that following the one, and eschewing the other, he may ever keep his Cattle in Health. The Grass that is most wholesome for Sheep, is that which is growing in it good Store of Mellilot, Clover, Trefoil, Cinque-foil, Broom, Pimpernell, and white Turnep.

The Grass which is unwholesome for Sheep, is that which hath growing amongst it, Spear-wort, Pennywort, or Penny-grass, and any Weed which grows from the foundations or Overflows of Water; likewise, Knot-grass is not good, nor Mildew'd-grass. Of all Rots, the Hunger-rot is the worst; for it both putrifieth the Flesh and Skin, and this is most incident to Field-Sheep; but to Pasture-Sheep it never happeneth. The next to it, is the Pelt-rot, which cometh by great Store of Rain immediately after a Sheep is new shorn, which maddening the Skin, corrupteth the Body; and this also is incident to Field-sheep which want Shelter.

There be little white Snails which a Sheep will lick up, and they will soon rot him.

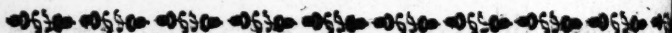
There

There will grow upon Ewe's Teats little dry Scabs which will stop their Milk; when the Lambs suck, the Shepherd must take Care to pull them away.

A Sheep will have a Bladder of Water under his Cloot sometimes, which the Shepherd must be careful to cut out and lance, or the Sheep will not prosper.

It is good not to shear a Sheep before *Midsummer*; the more he sweateth in his Wool, the better, and more kindly it is.

If you will know the Age of your Sheep, look in his Mouth; and when he is one Shear, he will have two broad Teeth afore; when he is two, he will have four broad Teeth; when he is three, he will have six; and when he is four, he will have eight afore: And, about those Years, his Mouth will begin to break; for, touching that Rule of the Evenness and Unevenness of the Mouth, it is uncertain, and faileth upon many Occasions.



Of Goats.

CHAP. I.

Of Goats, and their Nature.

SEEING Goats are not of any general Use in our Kingdom, but only nourished in some wild and barren Places, where Cattle of better Proportion can hardly be maintained, as in the mountainous Parts of *Wales*, in the barrenest Parts of *Cornwall* and *Devonshire*, on *Malborn Hills*, and some few about the *Peak*. I will not enter upon any large Discourse, but, as briefly as I can, give you their Natures and Cures.

The Nature of Goats.

you shall then know, that the Goat is a
of a hot, strong, and lusty Constitution;
; especially in the Act of Generation;
that they exceed all other Cattle;
at to live on Mountains that be high, craggy, and
of Bushes, Briars, and other Woods. They will
in any plain Pastures, but their special Delight is
upon Trees. They are so nimble of Foot,
they will go in Places of greatest Danger. The
which cometh from them is their Milk, which is
excellent Restorative; and their Kids, which are
excellent Venison. They are in other Countries, as
in, the Islands of the Azores, and the Islands of
Canaries, preserved for the Chase, and for Hunt-
as we preserve our Deer, both red and fallow, and
excellent Pastime.

The Shape of a Goat.

the Shape of a Goat, he should have
ge Body, and well haired; great
upright Joints, not bending; a
plain and short; a Head small and slender; large
s, and bending; a big Eye, and a long Beard;
his Colour White, Black, or Py'd. Some do use
ear them, to make rough Mantles of; but it is
with us in England. The She-Goat should have
Teats, big Udder, hanging Ears, and no Horns,
ey have in many Places.

The ordering of Goats.

These Goats should be kept in small
s or Herds, as not above a Hundred
Herd. As they must in the Heat of
ner have much Shade, so in the Win-
terwise much Shelter, for they can neither endure
mity of Heat nor Cold; especially the Violence of
er, for that will make the She-Goat cast her Kid,
ng it forth untimely. These love Mast well, but
you must give them other Food to mix with it.
best Time to let the Male and Female go together,
ut the Beginning of December. If you house Goats
Winter, let them have no Litter to lye on, but
loor paved or gravelled; for otherwise their own
will annoy them; they must also be kept very
y, for they can endure no filthy Savours. For

the young Kids, you shall in all Points order the you do your Lambs.

Now for their Preservation; if they be suffered to and chuse their own Food, they are to themselves good Physicians, that they will seldom or never troubled with any inward Sicknes; only the tinnor Excess of their Lust maketh them grow soon old, and both past Use and Profit. For those particular Diseases which accidentally fall upon them, here follow Cures.

C H A P. II.

Of the Pestilence in Goats, or any inward and Sicknes.

WHEN you perceive your Goats to droop, look with sullen or sad Countenances, it is assured Sign of Sicknes; but if they foam or lather the Mouth, then it is a Sign of the Pestilence.

The Cure. The Cure is, first to separate them the Sound; then to let them Blood, give them the Buds and Leaves of Celandine, Rushes and Reeds to eat, and it is a present Remedy.

Of the Dropsy in Goats.

Goats are very much subject unto the Dropsy, their excess in drinking of Water; the Sign whereof is a great Inflammation and Heat in the Skin.

The Cure. The Cure is, to seeth Wormwood Water and Salt, and give a Pint thereof to the Goat to drink divers Mornings; for slit and let out the Water under the Shoulders, is a certain and safe a Cure.

Of stopping the Teats.

There will ingender in the Teats of Goats a tough hard Phlegm, which will stop the Milk issuing; which to cure, you shall with your Fingers

mb pull it away, and then anoint the Place with
ey and Goat's Milk mixt together.

Of Goats that cannot Kid.

Goats, above other Cattle, are troubled with Hard-
in Kidding, by reason that, if they be chased or
ed, their Kids will turn in their Bellies; the Re-
y then to preserve them from that Danger, is to
them quiet and untroubled, until they have
ed.

Of the Tetters, or dry Scab in Goats.

o heal any Tetters, or dry Scab in Goats, take
k Soap, Tar, Hog's Grease, and Brimstone; mix
well together, and anoint the Sores therewith, and
ll heal them.

Of gelding Kids in the Summer Season.

ids being gelt in Summer Season, as those which
ate kidded must necessarily be, the Fly will be so
with the Sore, that with their Blowings they will
d such Store of Maggots in the Wound, that it will
oger their Lives: To defend them from such An-
nce of the Fly, you shall take Soot, Tar, and
Cream, and mix them well together; then anoint
Wound therewith, and it will both heal it, and
the Fly away.

Of the Itch in Goats.

your Goats be troubled with any Itch, so that
cannot feed for clawing and biting themselves, you
wash their Skins with old Chamberlye and green
peras, well boiled together, and it will kill the

Of the Tuel-stopping in Goats.

Goats, when they are sucking on their Dams, or
they are new kidded, will commonly have a great
or Squirt; so that the Ordure which cometh from
F 2 them,

them, if it be not well cleansed and taken from the
it will with their own natural Heat so bake and
that it will stop up their Tuels, so that they can
dung, which if it be not helped, the Kid will die.

The Cure. The Cure is, to cleanse the Place,
open the Tuel; then put into it an
or thereabouts of a small Candle's End, dipt in Honey
and then anoint all the Tuel over with Capon's Grease.

Of the Staggers, or Reeling-evil in Goats.

If your Goats be troubled with the Staggers or Reeling-evil, which is a Disease bred in them by the violent Heat of the Sun, you shall take Bay-salt and Verjuice and mix them together, and give the Goat Half a Pint thereof to drink; or else take Houseleek and Dragon's blood of each a like, some Grounds of Ale, with a little Milk; stamp the Herbs, and then mingle them together; then put thereto a few Geese grossly beaten, and then boil it again; then cool it, and give the sick Goat three or four Spoonfuls thereof to drink, and it will cure her.

Now, for any other Infirmities which shall happen unto Goats, you may cure them with the same Medicines which you cure Sheep, for their Natures do not much differ.



Of Swine.

CHAP. I.

Of all Manner of Swine; their Nature, Use, Shape, and Preservation.

ALTHOUGH Swine are accounted troublesome, some, noisome, unruly, and great Ravensome, as, indeed, their Natures are not much different from such Qualities, yet the Utility and Profit

will easily wipe off those Offences: For from the Bandman he taketh Pulse, Chaff, Barn-dust, Garbage, and the Weeds of his Yard; and from the House her Chaff, Swillings, Whey, washing of Tubs, such like, with which he will live and keep a good deal of Body very sufficiently: And, though he is accounted good in no Place but the Dish only, yet there is so lovely and so wholesome, that all other Faults may be borne with.

He is by Nature greedy; given much to root up bounds, and tear down Fences; he is very lecherous, in that Act tedious and brutish; he is subject to much Anger, and the Fight of the Boars is exceeding mortal: They can by no Means indure Storms, Winds, foul Weather; they are excellent Observers of their Homes, and exceeding great Lovers one of another; so that they will die upon any Beast that offend their Fellows.

Now, touching the Choice of Swine, you shall understand that no Country in *England* breedeth naturally better Swine one than another; but, if any have Preference, then I must prefer *Leicestershire*, and some parts of *Northamptonshire*, and Clay Countries bordering *Leicestershire*; and the Reason I take to be, their great Multiplicity of Grain, especially Beans and Pulse. In the Mass Countries, though they are good Feeders, they are no large Breeders; whence it comes that your Swine is ever your least Swine, but your sweetest on. But if the Race and Keeping be alike, the portion and Goodness will be alike: Therefore, in the Choice of your Swine, chiefly the Boars and Sows which you breed of, let them be long and large of body, deep sided, deep bellied, thick Thighs, and strong Legs; for, though the long legg'd Swine appear a goodly Beast, yet he but cozeneth the Eye, and is so profitable to the Butcher; high Claws, thick skin, a short and strong Groin, and a good thick neck, well set with strong Bristles. The Colour is that which is all of one Piece; as all White, or all Red; the Py'd are the worst, and most apt to take the disease; the Black is tolerable, but our Kingdom, being so high the Coldness, breedeth them seldom.

*The Use
and Profit
of Swine.*

The Use and Profit of Swine is (as the Husbandman saith) for the which is Bacon; for the Spit, which Pork, Sows and Puddings, and for which is their Pigs only. To have too many Sows Yard is not good, for their Increase and bringing is so great, that they will for want of Food eat one another. A Sow will bring forth Pigs three Times a Year, namely, at the End of every ten Weeks: And the Numbers are great which they will bring forth, for I know one Sow have twenty Pigs at one Litter, twelve, fourteen, and sixteen are very common, yet a Sow can bring up no more Pigs then she hath Teeth, therefore look how many she hath, and so many preserve of the best, the rest cast away, or put to other Sows which want, yet give suck. A Sow will bring Pigs from one Year, till she be seven Years old. Pigs which you rear, after you have chosen the best Boars or Sows to breed on, geld the rest, both Males and Females. The Males will make goodly Hams, which are excellent Bacon or Pork; and the Females which are called Spade-Gelts, will do the like, and bring a great deal more Grease in their Bodies; whence comes that the Husbandman esteems one Spade-Gelt before two Hogs. Young Shoots, which are Sows of three Quarters, or but one Year old, are the choicest Pork.

Now for the Preservation of Swine, it is contained in their Government and Food, and is all that belongs to the Office of the Swineherd. The orderliest Feeding of Swine (when you keep them but in good State of Body, and not seek to fat them) in the Morning when you unstye them, is to give them Draff, or other Garbage, with Swillings in the Troughs; when they have eaten it to drive them to the Field where they may graze and root for their Food. Good Grounds, the soft Marsh and moorish Grounds are best, where they may get the Roots of Sedge, Rushes, Knot-grass, and such like, which is whole Food for Swine; of the Fallow or Tythe-Field, where they may root at Pleasure, and by killing the Weed, bring Profit to the Earth: And, at the Fall of the Leaf,

and to drive them to Hedges, where they may get
Apples, Hips, Sloes, Crabs, or such Fruit, which is also
very wholesome: Then the poorer Sort will gather their
Acorns, and keep them safe to feed their Swine with all
the Winter. When Evening cometh, you shall drive
your Swine Home; and then filling their Troughs with
Hay and Swillings, let them fill their Bellies, and
then stye them up, so shall you keep them from doing
any Hurts or Injuries. If once in a Fortnight you mix
in your Swillings some Radle or red Oaker, it will
serve them wonderfully from Meazles, and all inward
affections; and thus much for the general Discourse of
the same: Now I will proceed to their particular Infirmi-
ties, and other Businesses.

C H A P. II.

Of the Fever, or any hidden Sicknefs in Swine.

THERE is no Beast maketh his Sicknefs so ap-
parent as the Swine; for when he findeth any
Grief, or Distemperature in his Body, he presently
sopeth, forsakes his Meat, and will not eat till he find
himself a perfect Recovery.

Therefore, when you shall so find him to
forsake his Meat, you shall first let him *The Cure.*
lie down under his Tail and under his Ears; and, if they
be not freshly enough, you shall beat them with a small
stick, and that will bring forth the Blood; then wrap
about the Wounds the Bark of a young Osier, and then
keep him warm, and give him to drink warm Swillings,
well mixt with Barly Meal and red Oaker.

Of the Murrain, Pestilence, or Cathar, in Swine.

These Diseases being all of one Nature, are very
much incident to Swine, and spring from many Grounds;
either from Corruption in Blood ingendered by the eating
of rotten Fruit, or too much Butcher's Garbage, and
many Times by eating too rank Grass, wherein is much

Hemlock: The particular Signs are, moist Eyes, their Heads borne on each Side; but their general Knowledge is, their Fastings and Mortality.

The Cure. The Cure is, to give them in Wash Hen's Dung, and boild Liver with a little red Oaker.

Of the Gall in Swine.

Swine will often have an Over-flowing of the Gall because Choler is much powerful in them, where you shall know by a Swelling that will rise under the Jaws.

The Cure. The Cure is, to stamp Gallwort, or Iron, and mix it with Honey and Water, then straining it, give it the Swine to drink by a Pint a Time.

Of the Measles in Swine.

This Disease of all others is most common in Swine and with most Ease helped.

The Cure. The Cure is, you shall take the old Urine that you can get, and mix it with red Oaker till it be thick, and about the Quantity of Ale Quart; then mix it with a Gallon of warm fresh Whey, and give it the Swine to drink, after he has been kept all Night fasting.

Of Imposthumes in any Part of a Swine.

Swine will have Imposthumes in any Parts of the Bodies, as under their Throats, their Ears, Bellies and often upon their Sides.

The Cure. The Cure is, if they be soft to lance them, and let out the Matter, and then heal them with Tar and Butter; but if they be not soft then let the Swine Blood under the Tongue, and rub his Mouth, Chaps and Groin, with Wheat, Meal and Salt, and the Imposthume will go away.

Of Vomiting in Swine.

If your Swine do vomit and cast up his Meat, you shall give him splited Beans to eat, and they will strengthen his Stomach.

Of Leanness, Mislike, Scurf, and Manginess in Swine.

These Diseases proceed from Corruption of Blood, rendered by lying wet in their Sties, having filthy, stinking Litter, or much Scarcity of Meat.

The Cure is, first to let the Swine Blood bleed under the Tail, then to take a Wool-card, *The Cure.* and to comb off all the Scurf and Filth from the Swine's back, even till his Skin bleed; then take Tar, Hog's bristles and Brimstone, and mixing them well together, anoint the Swine therewith; then let the Sty be mended, the Litter be sweet, and give him good warm Food, and the Swine will be fat and found very suddenly.

Of the Sleeping-evil in Swine.

Swine are much subject to this Disease in the Summer time, and you shall know it by their continual sleeping, and neglecting to eat their Meat.

The Cure is, to house them up, and keep them fasting twenty-four Hours; *The Cure.* then in the Morning, when Hunger pincheth them, to let them drink Water, in which is stamp'd good Wine of Stonecrop; which, as soon as they have drank, they will vomit and cast it up, and that is a present Remedy.

Of Pain in the Milt.

Swine are often troubled with Pain in their Milts or Spleens, which proceedeth from the eating of Mast, when they are first put thereunto, through their over-hasty eating thereof, and is known by a reeling and staggering on one Side.

The Cure is, to give them the Juice of Wormwood, in a little honey'd Water, to *The Cure.* drink, and it will assuage the Pain.

Of the Unnaturalness of Sows.

Many Sows do prove so unnatural, that they devour their Pigs when they have farrow'd them, which springeth from an unnatural Greediness in them; when to help, you must watch her when she farroweth, and take away the Pigs as they fall; then take the Wreling, or worst Pig, and anoint it all over with the Juice of Stonecrop, and so give it the Sow again; and, if she devour it, it will make her cast and vomit so extremely that the Pain of the Surfeit will make her loath to do so like again. But of all Cures, the best for such an unnatural Beast is to feed her well, and then kill her.

Of the Lax or Flux in Hogs.

For the Lax or Flux in Swine, you shall give them Verjuice and Milk mixt together to drink, and feed them with Food; as splitted Beans, Acorns, Acorn-husks. This is also excellent, and approved for young Pigs and Shoots when they have any scurving.

Of the lugging of Swine with Dogs.

If your Swine be extremely lugged and bitten by Dogs, to prevent the Rankling and Imposthumation of the Sore, you shall anoint it with Vinegar, Soap, and Tallow mixt together, and it will cure the same.

Of the Pox in Swine.

The Pox is a filthy and infectious Disease in Swine, proceeding from corrupt Blood, ingendered by Perverse wet Lying, Lowliness, and such like, and the Swine can never prosper which hath them.

The Cure.

The Cure is, to give him first to drink two Spoonfuls of London Treacle, in a Pint of honey'd Water, which will expel the Infection outwardly; then to anoint the Sores with Brimstone and Butter Grease mixt together, and so separate the Sick from the Sound.

Of killing Maggots in the Ears, or other Parts of Swine.

If Maggots shall breed in the Ears of your Swine, which have been lugged with Dogs, for want of good looking unto, as often it happeneth, you shall take either the sweetest Wort you can get, or else Honey, and anoint the Sores therewith, and the Maggots presently will fall off and die.

C H A P. III.

Of feeding Swine exceeding fat, either for Bacon or Lard.

DIVERS Men, according to the Nature of divers Countries, have divers Ways in feeding of their Swine; as those which live near unto Woods and Places where Store of Mast is, turn their Swine unto the Mast six or eight Weeks, and then having got Flesh and Fatness on their Backs do bring them Home, and put them up in Sties, and then feed them for ten Days or a fortnight after with old dry Pease, giving them oft in a Day a little at once, with Water, as much as they will drink; for this will harden the Flesh and Fat so, that it will not consume when it comes to boiling. This manner of Feeding is good, and not to be disliked.

The feeding of Swine in Champaign Countries.

Now, the feeding of Swine in Champaign Countries, which are far from Woods, is in this Manner: First, you shall stie up those Swine which you intend to feed, and let them not come out of the same until they be fat, but have their Food and Water brought unto them. Now the first two Days you shall give them nothing; on the third Day, you shall, early in the Morning, give them a pretty Quantity of dry Pease or Beans; at Noon you shall give them as much more; at Four o' Clock as much more; and when you go to Bed as much more, and all that Day no Water. The next Day you shall feed

feed them again at the same Hours, and set Water by them that they may drink at their own Pleasures; then two or thrice a Week, as your Provision will serve you, is good to fill their Bellies with sweet Whey, Butter-milk, or warm Wash, but by no Means scant the Proportion of their Pease; and, by thus doing, you shall feed Swine fat enough for the Slaughter, in four or five Weeks.

Of feeding at the Reek.

There be other Husbandmen in Champain Countries as in *Leicestershire*, and such like, that put their Swine Pease Reeks, or Stacks, set in the Fields near Water Furrows or Rundles, so that they may let Water into the Stack Yard; then Morning and Evening cut a Cutting of the Stack or Reek, and spread the Reek amongst the Swine. This Manner of Feeding is best for small Porkers, and will fat them very reasonable in three Weeks or a Month. If you feed Sheep amongst your Porkers, it is very good, and practised daily by many; for by that Means you shall not loose any of your Grass, and what your Sheep cannot gather up, your Porkers will.

Of feeding of Swine, in or about great Cities.

Now, for such as live in, or near about, great Cities or Towns; as *London*, *York*, or such like, and have neither great Store of Mast, nor great Store of Grass, yet they have a Manner of Feeding as good, and somewhat more speedy than any of the other, only the Butter is not so sweet or toothsome; and thus it is: They buy up their Fatlings, as is before-said, and then take Charler's Graves, which is the Dregs and Offall of rendering Tallow; as hard Skins, Kells, and fleshy Lumps, which will not melt; together with other course Stuff of the Tallow, Suet, or Kitchen-fee, and mixing it with warm Wash, give it the Swine to eat three or four Times in the Day, and it will suddenly puff him up with Fatness; then bestow on every Swine a Bushel of dry Pease to harden his Flesh, and you may then kill them at your Pleasure. The only Danger of this Feeding

it will at first sometimes make a Swine scour, especially young Pigs, if they eat it; but, as soon as you receive such a Fault, give unto your elder Swine Milk and Verjuice, and to your sucking Pigs Verjuice only.

Of feeding Hogs for Lard, or Boars for Brawn.

Now, lastly, the best feeding of a Swine for Lard, or Boar for Brawn, is to feed them the first Week with barley, sodden till it breaks, and put in such a Quantity that it may ever be given sweet: then after to feed them with raw Malt from the Floor, before it be dried, till they be fat enough; and then for a Week after to give them dry Pease or Beans, to harden their Flesh. Let their Drink be the washing of Hogheads or Ale Barrels, sweet Whey, and let them have Plenty thereof. This manner of Feeding breeds the whitest, fattest, and best flesh that may be, as hath been approved by the best husbanders.

Of Conies.

C H A P. I.

Of the tame rich Cony; his Nature, Choice, Profit, and Preservation.

ALL Sorts of Conies may as well be kept tame, as wild, and do above other Beasts delight in Imprisonment and Solitariness, which proceedeth from the Strength of Melancholy in their Nature; being Creatures of so much Participation of the Earth, that their Delight is to live in Holes, Rocks, and other dark Caverns. The Males are given to much Cruelty, and would kill the young Rabbets, if they could come to them; whence it proceedeth, that the Females, after they have kindled, hide their young Ones, and close up their

their Holes, so that the Buck-Cony may not find them. The Females, or Doe-Conies, are wonderful in their Increase, and bring forth young Ones every Month; therefore, when you keep them tame in Boxes, you must observe to watch them, as soon as they have kindled, to put them to the Buck, or otherwise they will mourn, and hardly bring up their young Ones.

Of Boxes for tame Conies.

The Boxes in which you shall keep your tame Conies should be made of thin Wainscot Boards, some two Feet square and one Foot high, and that Square must be divided into two Rooms; a greater Room, with open Windows of Wire, through which the Cony may feed, and a lesser Room without Light, in which the Cony may lodge and kindle, and before them both a Trough in which you may put Meat and other Necessaries for the Cony: And thus you may make Box upon Box in divers Stories, keeping your Bucks by themselves, and your Does by themselves, except it be such Does as have not bred, and then you may let a Buck lodge with them: Also when your Doe hath kindled one Nest, and then kindleth another, you shall take the first from her and put them together in a separate Box, amongst Rabbits of their own Age, provided that the Box be not pestered, but that they may have Ease and Liberty.

Of the Choice of rich Conies.

Now, for the Choice of these tame, rich Conies: You shall not, as in other Cattle, look to their Shape, but to their Richness; only elect your Bucks the largest and goodliest Conies you can get; and for the Richness of the Skin, that is accounted the richest which hath the equalest Mixture of black and white Hair together, yet the Black rather shadowing the White, than the White any Thing at all over-mastering the Black; for a black Skin with a few silver Hairs is much richer, than a white Skin with a few black Hairs: But, as I said before, to have them equally or indifferently mixt, is the best above all others. The Fur should be thick, deep smooth, and shining; and a black Coat without silver Hairs.

hairs, though it be not reckon'd a rich Coat, yet it is
be preferred before a White, a Py'd, a Yellow, a
an, or a Grey.

Of the Profit of rich Conies.

Now, for the Profit of these rich Conies, (for unless
they did far-away, and by many Degrees exceed the
profit of all other Conies, they were not worthy the
charge which must be bestowed upon them) it is this:
First, every one of the rich Conies which are killed in
season, as from *Michaelmas* until after *Candlemas*, is
worth any five other Conies; for they are of Body
much fatter and larger, and when another Skin is worth
two-pence or Three-pence at the most, they are worth
two Shillings, or Two Shillings and Six-pence: Again,
they increase oftner, and bring forth more Rabbits at
the kindling than any wild Cony doth; they are ever
ready at Hand for the Dish, Winter and Summer, with-
out Charge of Nets, Ferrets, or other Engines, and give
their Bodies *gratis*; for their Skins will ever pay their
Master's Charge, with a most large Interest.

Of the Feeding and Preservation of Conies.

Now for the Feeding and Preservation of these rich
Conies, it is nothing so costly or troublesome as many
have imagined, and as some, ignorant in the Skill of
keeping them, have made the World think; for the best
food you can feed a Cony with, is the sweetest, short-
est, softest and best Hay you can get, of which one
load will serve two Hundred Couples a Year; and out
of the Stock of two Hundred, you may spend in your
house two Hundred, and sell in the Market two Hun-
dred more, yet maintain the Stock good, and answer
every ordinary Casualty. This Hay put in little cloven
sticks, so that they may with Ease reach it, and pull it
out of the same; yet so, as they may not scatter nor
waste any. In the Troughs under their Boxes you shall
put sweet Oats, and their Water; and this should be
their ordinary and constant Food wherewith you shall
feed your Conies, for all other should be used but phy-
sically, for the Preservation of their Health: As thus;
you

you shall twice or thrice in a Fortnight, for the cooling of their Bodies, give them Greens; as Mallows, Clover-grass, Sower-docks, Blades of green Corn, Cabbage Colewort Leaves, and such like, all which cool and nourish exceedingly. Some use to give them sometimes sweet Grains, but that must be used very seldom for nothing sooner rotteth a Cony.

You must also have great Care that when you cut any Grass for them that are Weeds, that there grow young Hemlock amongst it; for though they will eat with all Greediness, yet it is a present Poison, and kills suddenly. You must also have an especial Care every Day to make their Boxes sweet and clean; for the stinking Savour of their Ordure and Piss is so violent, that it will both annoy themselves and those which shall be frequent amongst them.

Of the Rot in Conies.

Now for the Infirmities which are incident unto them they are but two: The first is Rottenness, which comes by giving them too much green Meat; or gathering their Greens, and giving it them with the Dew on it. Therefore let them have it but seldom, and then the Dryness of the Hay will ever drink up the Moisture and knit them, and keep them sound without Danger.

Of Madness in Conies.

The next is a certain Rage or Madness, ingendered by corrupt Blood, sprinkling from the Rankness of their Keeping. You shall know it by their wallowing and tumbling with their Heels upward, and leaping in their Boxes.

The Cure.

The Cure is, to give them Hare-thistles to eat, and it will heal them.

And thus much of the tame rich Cony, and his Properties.

Of Bees.

CHAP. I.

Of the Nature, Ordering, and Preservation of Bees.

OF all the Creatures which are behoveful for the Use of Man, there is none more necessary, wholesome, or more profitable than the Bee, or any less troublesome, or less chargeable.

To speak then first of the Nature of Bees, is a Creature gentle, loving, and familiar to the Man which hath the ordering of

The Nature of Bees.

em, so he come neat, sweet, and cleanly among them; otherwise, if he have strong and ill-smelling Savours about him, they are curst and malicious, and will sting cruelly. They are exceeding industrious, and much given to Labour; they have a Kind of Government amongst themselves, as it were a well-ordered Commonwealth, every one obeying and following their King or Commander, whose Voice (if you lay your Ear to the Hive) you shall distinguish from the rest, being louder and greater, and beating with a more solemn measure. They delight to live amongst the sweetest Herbs and Flowers that may be, especially Fennel and Wall-Gilliflowers, and therefore their best Dwellings are in Gardens: And in these Gardens, or near adjoining thereunto, should be divers Fruit-Trees growing, especially Plumb-Trees, or Peach-Trees; in which, when they cast, they may knit, without taking any farther flight, or wandering to find out their Rest. This Garden also should be well fenced, that no Swine nor other little may come therein, as well for overthrowing their Hives, as also for offending them with all other ill smells. They are also very tender, and may by no means endure any Cold: Wherefore you must have a great Respect to have their Houses exceeding warm, close and tight, both to keep out the Frost and Snow,

as also the Wet and Rain; which, if it once enter the Hive, it is a present Destruction.

*Of the
Bee-Hive.*

To speak then of the Bee-Hive; you shall know there be divers Opinions touching the same, according to the Customs and Natures of Countries; for, in the Champaign Countries, where there is very little Store of Wood, they make their Hives of long Rye-Straw, the Rye being sewed together with Briars; and these Hives are large and deep, and even proportioned like a Sugar-Loaf, and crossbarr'd within, with flat Splints of Wood both above and under the midst Part. In other Champaign Countries, where there wanteth Rye-Straw, they make them of Wheat-Straw, as in the *West* Countries; and these Hives are of a good Compass, but very low and flat; which is naught, for a Hive is better for Largeness, and keepeth out Rain best when it is shallowest. In the Wood Countries they make them of Clove-Hazels, wattell'd about broad Splints of Ash; and formed, as before-said, like a Sugar-Loaf.

And these Hives are of all others the best, so they are large and smooth within; for the Straw-Hive is subject to breed Mice, and nothing destroyeth Bees sooner than they; yet you must be governed by your Ability, and such Things as the Soil affords.

*Of the
trimming
of the
Hive.*

Now for the Wood-Hive, which is the best, you shall thus trim and prepare it for your Bees: You shall first make a Mortar of Lime and Cow-Dung, mix'd together; then having cross-barr'd the Hive within, daub the Outside of the Hive with this Mortar, at least three Inches thick, down close unto the Stone, so that the least Air may not come in; then taking a Rye-Sheaf or Wheat-Sheaf, or two that are balsted, and not thrashed, and chusing out the longest Straws, bind the Ears together in one Lump, put it over the Hive, so as it were thatch'd all over; fix it close to the Hive with an old Hoop or Garth, and this will keep the Hive inwardly as warm as may be: And before you lodge any Bee in your Hive, you shall perfume it with Juniper, and rub it all within with Fenugreek.

Yssop and Thyme-Flowers, and also the Stone upon which the Hive shall stand.

Now, for the placing of your Hives: *The placing of Hives.* You shall take three long thick Stakes, set smooth and plain upon the Heads, and drive them into the Earth triangular-ways, so that they may be about two Feet above the Ground; then lay over them a broad, smooth, paving Stone, which may extend every Way over the Stakes above Half a Foot, and upon the Stone set your Hive, being less in Com-
pass than the Stone by more than six Inches every Way, and see the Door of your Hive stand directly upon the rising of the Morning Sun, inclining a little unto the southward; then be sure to have your Hives well sheltered from the North Winds, and generally from all tempestuous Weather; for which Purpose, if you have need to draw over them in the Winter, it is so much the better. You shall place your Hives in orderly rows, one before another, keeping clean Allies between them every Way, so as you may walk and view each of itself severally.

Now for the Casting of your Bees, it is earlier or later in the Year, according to the Strength and Goodness of the Flock, or the Warmth of the Weather. The usual Time for Casting is, from the Beginning of May, till the Middle of July: And in all that Time you must have a vigilant Eye, or else some Servant to watch their flying, lest they fly away, and knit in some obscure place far from your Knowledge; yet, if you please, you may know which Hives are ready to cast a Night before they do cast, by laying your Ear, after the Sun is set, to the Hive, and if you hear the Master-Bee above all the rest, in a higher and more solemn Note; or if you see them lie forth upon the Stone, and cannot get into the Hive, then be sure that the Stock will cast within a few Hours after.

As soon as you can perceive the Swarm to rise, and be got up into the Air (which will commonly be in the Height and Heat of the Sun) you shall take a Brass Bason, or a Tin, or a Candlestick, and making a tinkling Noise thereupon, for they are so delighted with Musick, that by the Sound thereof, they will presently knit upon some Branch,

Branch, or Bough of a Tree: Then, when they are upon one Cluster, you shall take a new sweet Hive w^h dress'd, and rubb'd with Honey and Fennel, and sh^{al}l them all into the Hive; then having spread a fair She^e upon the Ground, set the Hive thereon, and cover^e all clean over, close with the Sheet, and so let it sta^e till after Sun-set, at which Time the Bees being gather^d up to the Top of the Hive (as their Nature is) you sh^{al}l set them upon the Stone, having rubb'd it well w^h Fennel, and then daub it close round about with Lin^e and Dung mixt together, and only leave them a Dest or two issue out and in at. There be some Stocks wh^{ic}h will cast twice or thrice, and four Times in a Year, b^ut it is not so good, for it will weaken the Stock too much therefore, to keep your Stocks in Strength and Good^{ness}, it is good not to suffer any to cast above twice the most.

Again, you shall with Pieces of Brick, or oth^{er} smooth Stones, raise the Stock in the Night three or fou^r Inches above the Stone; then daub it close again, aⁿd the Bees finding House-room will fall to Work withⁱⁿ and not cast at all, and then will their Stock be w^{or}th two others: And, in the same Manner, if you had th^{is} the Year before any small Swarms, which are likely to cast this Year, or if you have any early Swarms th^{is} Year, which are likely to cast at the latter End of th^{is} Year, both which are often found to be the Destruction of the Stocks; in either of these Cases, you shall enlarg^e your Hive, as it is before-said, by raising it up from the Stone, and it will not only keep them from Casting but make the Stock better, and of much more Profit for that Hive which is of the most Weight, is of th^e best Price.

*Of selling
of Hives.*

Now when you have mark'd out the^{se} old Stocks, which you intend to sell (fo^r the oldest is fittest for that Purpose) you sh^{al}l know that the best Time to take them is at *Michaelmas* before any Frosts hinder their Labour, and you sh^{al}l take them ever from the Stone in the Dark of Night when the Air is cold, and either drown them in Water or smother them with Fuzballs; for to chase them from their Hives, as some do, is naught, because all such

Bees

as are thus frightened from their Hives, do turn Robbers, and spoil other Stocks; for that Time of the Year will not suffer them to labour and get their own Hives.

Now if you have any weak Swarms, which coming in the Year, cannot gather sufficient of Winter provision; in this Case you shall feed such Stocks by smearing the Stone before the Place of their going in and out, with Honey and Rose-Water mixt together, and so you shall continue to do all the Strength of Winter, 'till the Warmth of the Spring, and the Sun bring forth Flowers, for them to labour upon. You shall continually look that no Mice, Dares, and such like Vermin, breed about Hives; for they are poisonous, and will make Bees forsake their Hives.

Now, lastly, if any of your Stocks happen to die in Winter (as amongst many, some must quail) you shall not by any Means stir the Stock, but let it remain till the Spring, that you see your Bees begin to grow; then take up the dead Stock, and trim it clean from all Filth, but by no Means stir or crush any of the Combs; then dash the Combs, and besprinkle them, besmear all the Inside of the Hive with Honey, Rose-water and the Juice of Fennel mixt together, and daub the Stone therewith. Also then set down the Hive again, and daub it as if it had never been stirred; then be well assured, that the first Swarm which shall rise, whether of your own, or of any Neighbour of yours, within the Compass of a Mile, it will knit in no Place, but within that Hive; and such a Stock will be worth more than others, because they find Half their Work finish'd at their first Entrance into the Hive, and this hath been many Times approved by those of the greatest Experience. And thus much touching the Bee, and his Nature.

Of Poultry.

CHAP. I.

Containing the ordering, fattening, craming and curing of all Infirmities in Poultry; as Cocks, Hens, Chickens, Capons, Geese, Turkeys, Pheasants, Partridges, Quails, House-Doves, and all Sorts of Fowl whatsoever.

Of the Dunghill-Cock, Hen, Chicken and Capon.

YOU shall understand, that the Dunghill-Cock (for the Fighting-Cock deserveth a much larger and particular Discourse) is a Fowl, of all other Birds, the most manly, stately and majestic; tame and familiar with the Man, and naturally inclined to live and prosper in habitable Houses. He delighteth in open and liberal Plains, where he may lead forth his Hens into green Pastures, and under Hedges, where they may warm and bathe themselves in the Sun; but to be pent up in walled Places, or in Paved Courts, is most unnatural unto them, neither will they prosper therein.

Of the Choice and Shape of the Cock. Now of the Choice and Shape of the Dunghill-Cock, he should be of a large and well-sized Body, long from the Head to the Rump, and thick in the Girth. His Neck should be long, loose, and considerably bending; and his Body being straight, and high erected, as the Faulcon and other Birds of Prey are. His Comb, Wattles, and Throat should be large, great Compass, ragged, and very scarlet red. His Eyes round and great, the Colour answering the Colour of his Plume or Mail; as Grey with Grey, Red with Red, or Yellow with Yellow. His Bill should be crooked, sharp, and strongly set on to his Head,

Col

colour being suitable with the Colour of the Feathers
his Head. His Main, or Neck Feathers, should be
very long, bright and shining, covering from his Head
his Shoulders. His Legs straight, and of a strong
am; with large long Spurs, sharp and a little bend-
ing, and the Colour Black, Yellow, or Blewish. His
toes short, strong, and well wrinkled. His Tail long,
and covering his Body very closely; and for the general
colour of the Dunghill-Cock it should be red, for that is
medicinal, and oft used in Restoratives. This Cock
should be valiant within his own Walk, and if he be
a little knavish he is so much the better. He should be
crowing, and busy in scratching the Earth, to find
Worms and other Food for his Hens.

Now for the Hen, if she be a good one,
should not differ much from the Nature
of the Cock; but be valiant, vigilant and
courageous, both for herself and her Chickens.
Shape, the biggest and largest are the

*Of the
Hen, her
Choice and
Shape.*

best, every Proportion answering these before described
in the Cock; only instead of her Comb, she should
have upon her Crown a high thick Tuft of Feathers.
A Hen that has many and strong Claws is good, but to want
under-claws is better; for they oft break the Eggs,
and such Hens sometimes prove unnatural. It is not
good to chuse a crowing Hen, for they are neither
good Breeders nor good Layers. If you chuse Hens
to lay, chuse the elder, for they be constant, and will
out their Times: And if you will chuse Hens to lay,
chuse the youngest, for they are lusty and prone to
the Act of Ingendering; but for neither Purpose chuse a
fat Hen, for if you set her, she will forsake her Nest;
if you keep her to lay, she will lay her Eggs with-
out Shells. Besides, a fat Hen will wax slothful, and
will not delight in the one, nor in the other Act of Na-
ture; such Hens then are ever fitter for the Dish than
for the Hen-house.

The best Time to set Hens, to have the
largest and most kindly Chickens, is
in February, for one Brood of March
Chickens is worth three Broods of any other. You
should set Hens from March till October, and have good
Chickens;

*Of setting
Hens.*

Chickens; but not after by any Means, for the Winter is a great Enemy to their Breeding. A Hen doth twenty-one Days just, and then hatcheth; but Peahen Turkeys, Geese, Ducks, and other Water-fowl, thirty: So that if you set your Hen, as you may do upon any of their Eggs, you must set her upon them nine Days before you set her upon her own. A Hen will cover nineteen Eggs well, and that is the most true Rule she should cover; but upon what Number soever you set her, let it be odd, for the Eggs will round, close, and in even Proportion together. It is good when you lay your Eggs first under your Hen to mark the upper Side of them, and then to watch the Hen, to see if she busie herself to turn them from one Side to the other; which if you find she doth not then when she riseth from her Eggs to feed or bathe herself, you must supply that Office, and turn every Egg yourself, and esteem your Hen of so much the more Value for the Use of Breeding. Be sure that the Eggs which you lay under her be new and sound, which you may know by their Heaviness, Fulness, and Clearness if you hold them up betwixt the Sun and your Eyesight. You must by no Means, at any Time, remove your Hen from her Nest, for that will make her utterly forsake it.

Choice of Eggs.

Now for helping a Hen to hatch her Eggs, or doing that which should be her Office, it is unnecessary, and shall be much better to be forborne than any Way used; or to make doubt of bringing forth, or to think the Hen sitteth too long, as many foolish, curious Housewives do, if you be sure you set her upon sound Eggs, is frivolous; but if you set her upon unsound Eggs, then blame yourself both of the Loss and Injury done to the Hen, in the Loss of Labour.

A Hen will be a good sitter, from the second Year till her laying to the fifth, but hardly any longer. You shall observe ever when your Hen riseth from her Nest to have Meat and Water ready for her, lest straying too far to seek her Food, she let her Eggs cool too much which is very hurtful. In her Absence you shall stir the Straw of her Nest, and make it soft and handso-

lay the Eggs in Order as she left them. Do not
Election of your Eggs chuse those which are monf-
great, for they many Times have two Yolks, and
gh some write that such Eggs will bring out two
kens, yet they are deceived; for if they bring forth
they are commonly most abortive and monstrous.
perfume the Nest with Brimstone is good, but with
mary is much better. To set Hens in the Winter
in Stoves or Ovens is of no Use with us in Eng-
and though they may by that Means bring forth,
will the Chickens be never good nor profitable; but,
the planting of Lemon and Pomegranate Trees, the
will come a great deal short of the Charges.
in your Hen, at any Time, is absent from her
you must have great Care to see that the Cock
not to sit upon the Eggs (as he will offer to do) for
will endanger to break them, and make her love her
worse.

*Of
Chickens.*

soon as your Chickens be hatcht, if
weaker than another, you shall lap
in Wool, and let them have the Air
Fire, and it will strengthen them. To perfume
with a little Rosemary is very wholesome also;
thus you may in a Sieve keep the first hatcht
kens till the rest be disclosed (for Chickens should
no Meat for two Days) and some Shells being
than another, they will take so much Distance
me in opening; yet, unless the Chickens be weak,
the Hen rude, it is not amiss to let them alone under
for she will nourish them most kindly. After two
are past, the first Meat you give them should be
small Oatmeal, some dry, and some steeped in
or else fine Wheat-bread Crumbs; and after they
got Strength, then Curds, Cheese-parings, Wheat-
Crufts soak'd in Milk or Drink, Barley-meal, or
t-bread scalded, or any such-like soft Meat that is
and will easily be divided. It is good to keep
one Fortnight in the House, and after to suffer
to go abroad with the Hen to worm, for that is
wholesome. To chop green Chives amongst your
kens Meat, will preserve them from the Rye, and

other Diseases in the Head; neither must you at Time let your Chickens want Water, for if they be forc'd to drink in Puddles, it will breed the Pip: to feed upon Tares, Darnell, or Cockell, is very dangerous for young Chickens.

Of feeding and cramming Chickens.

You may by these Foods before feed Chickens very fat under their D. But, if you will have fat cram'd Chickens you shall coop them up when the Darnell maketh them; and the best Crams for is Wheat-meal and Milk, made into Dough, and the Crams steeped in Milk and so thrust down their Throats; but in any Case let the Crams be small well wet for fear of choaking. Fourteen Days will a Chicken sufficiently. And thus much briefly for Breed.

Of preserving Eggs.

Now, because Eggs of themselves singular Profit, you shall understand the best Way to preserve or keep long, is, as some think, to lay them in good Straw, and cover them close; but that is cold, and besides will make them musty: Others lay them in Bran, but that is too hot, and will make them putrify: And others will lay them in Salt, but that makes them waste and diminish. The best Way to keep them most sweet, most sound, and most fresh only to keep them in a Heap of old Malt, close and covered all over, or in Wood-ashes; but be sure always put them on their Ends, and turn them once a Fortnight, and they will keep three or four Months in a dry Place, neither too hot nor too cold; and if the Egg lies on the Side it will rot soon.

Of gathering Eggs.

You shall gather your Eggs up once a Day, and leave in the Nest but the one Egg, and no more; and that should be in the Afternoon, when you have seen every Hen come from her Nest severally. Some Hens will by Cackling tell you when they have laid, but some will lay mute; therefore you must let your own Eye be your Instructor.

Now, touching the Capon, which is the Cock-Chicken, you shall understand that best Time to carve or geld him, is as soon as the Dam hath left them, if the Stones be down, or else as soon as they begin to grow: For the Art of Carving itself, it is a common and easy, and much sooner to be learned seeing one carved, than by any Demonstration in writing.

Of the Capon, when to carve him, &c.

These Capons are of two Uses: The first is to lead Chickens, Ducklings, young Pheasants, Peahens, Pheasants, and Partridges, which he will do altogether, both naturally and kindly; and, thro' Largeness of his Body, brood or cover easily thirty, or five and thirty. He will lead them forth safely, and defend them against Hawks, or Buzzards, better than the Hens; therefore, the best Way to make him to take unto them, is, with a small Briar, or else sharp Nettles, at Night to beat about all his Breast and Nether-parts, and then in the Dark to seat the Chickens under him, whose Warmth will drive away his Smart. He will fall much in love with them; and whensoever he proveth unkind, you must whip or beat him again, and this will make him he will never forsake them.

A Capon to lead Chickens.

The other Use of Capons, is, to feed the Dish; as either at the Barn-doors, or Craps of Corn and the Chavings of Corn; or else in Pens in the House, by feeding them, which is the most dainty. The best Way then to cram a Capon (setting all strange Inventions apart) is to take Barley-meal reasonably sifted, mixing it with new Milk, make it into a good stiff Dough; then make it into long Crams, biggest in the middle, and small at both Ends, and then wetting them with lukewarm Milk, give the Capon a full gorgeful thereof, three Times a Day, Morning, Noon and Evening; and he will in a Fortnight, or three Weeks, be as fat as any Man need to eat.

Of feeding or cramming Capons.

As for mixing their Crams with Sweet-wort, Hog's-lard, or Sallad-oil, they are by Experience found to be Loath in the Birds, and not to feed at all: Only

124 *The Gentleman's Companion.*

keep this Observation, not to give your Capon Meat until the first be put over; and, if you find Capon something hard of Digestion, then you sift your Meal finer; for the finer your Meal is, sooner it will pass through their Bodies: And thus for the Capon. Now for their Infirmities, they follow in Order.

C H A P. II.

Of the Pip in Poultry.

THE Pip is a white thin Scale, growing on the Tip of the Tongue, and will make Poultry they cannot feed. It is easy to be discerned, and proceedeth generally from drinking Puddewater, Want of Water, or from eating filthy Meat.

The Cure. The Cure is, to pull off the Scale with your Nail; and then rub the Tongue with Salt.

Of the Roop in Poultry.

The Roop is a filthy Bile or Swelling on the Root of Poultry, and will corrupt the whole Body. It is ordinarily known by the staring and turning backward of the Feathers.

The Cure. The Cure is, to pull away the Feathers, and opening the Sore, to thrust out the Core; and then wash the Place with Salt and Water, or with Brine, and it helpeth.

Of the Flux in Poultry.

The Flux in Poultry cometh with eating too moist Meat.

The Cure. The Cure is, to give them Pease-meal scalded, and it will stay them.

Of stopping in the Belly.

opping in the Bellies of Poultry, is contrary to the ; therefore you shall anoint their Vents, and then them either small Bits of Bread, or Corn steeped in s Urine.

Of Lice in Poultry.

your Poultry be much troubled with Lice, as it is a mon Infirmity, proceeding from corrupt Food, or t of bathing in Sand, Ashes, or such like, you shall Pepper small beaten, and mixing it with warm er, wash your Poultry therein, and it will kill all s of Vermin.

Of stinging with venomous Worms.

your Poultry be stung with any venomous Thing, you may perceive by their lowring and swelling, you then anoint them with Rue and Butter mixt toge- and it helpeth.

Of sore Eyes in Poultry.

your Poultry have sore Eyes, you shall take a Leaf ro of Ground-Ivy ; and, chewing it well in your th, suck out the Juice, and spit it into the fore Eye, it will most assuredly heal it, as it hath been often

Of Hens that crow.

your Hens crow, which is an ill Sign and unnatu- you shall pull their Wings ; and give them to eat r Barley scorched, or small Wheat, and keep them from other Poultry.

Of Hens that eat their Eggs.

your Hen will eat her Eggs, you shall only lay er Nest Egg a Piece of Chalk cut like an Egg ; at e, oft pecking and losing her Labour, she will re- the Evil.

Of keeping a Hen from sitting.

If you would not have your Hen sit, you shall bathe her often in cold Water, and thrust a small Feather through her Nostrils.

Of making Hens lay soon and often.

If you feed your Hens often with Toasts taken in Ale, with Barley boil'd, or spelted Fitches, they will lay soon, often, and all the Winter.

Of making Hens lean.

Because fat Hens commonly either lay their Eggs without Shells, or at the best lay very small Eggs, to keep them lean and in good Plight for laying, you shall mix both their Meat and Water with the Powder of Tilesheards, Chalk, or else Tares, twice or thrice a Week.

Of the Crow-trodden.

If your Hen be trodden with a Carrion-Crow, or Raven, as often they are, it is mortal and incurable, and you shall know it by the staring up of her Feathers and swelling of her Wings; there is no Way with her then, but presently to kill her.

Of the Hen-House, and its Situation.

Now, for as much as no Poultry can be kept either in Health or Safety abroad, but must of Force be kept in, you shall understand that your Hen-House should be large and spacious, with somewhat a high Roof; the Wall strong, both to keep out Thieves and Vermin; the Windows upon the Sun-rising strongly lathed, and close inward; round about the Inside of the Walls, and the Ground should be built large Pens of three Feet high for Geese, Ducks, and great Fowls to sit in. Near the Eavings of the House should be long Perches, reaching from one Side of the House to the other; on which should sit your Cocks, Hens, Capons, and Turkeys, each on several Perches, as they are disposed. At

Side of the House, in that Part which is darkeſt over Ground-Pens, ſhould be fixed Hampers, full of Straw Neſts, in which your Hens ſhall lay their Eggs: But, when they ſit to bring forth Chickens, then let them ſit on the Ground, for otherwiſe it is dangerous. Let there be Pins ſtricken into the Walls, ſo that your Poultry may climb to their Perches with Eaſe. Let the Floor have no Means be paved, but of Earth ſmooth and eaſy. Let the ſmaller Fowl have a Hole at one End of the Houſe made to come in and out at, when they pleaſe; or they will ſeek Rooſt in other Places; and, for the Water Fowl, the Door may be opened Evening and Morning. This Houſe ſhould be placed either near the Kitchen, Brewhouſe, or elſe ſome Kiln, where it may have Air of the Fire, and be perfumed with Smoke, which to Pullen is delightful and wholeſome. And thus ſhall we ſee of the Cock, Hen, Capon, and Chicken.

C H A P. III.

Geefe; their Nature, Choice, and how to breed them.

GEESSE are Fowls of great Profit many Ways; as firſt for Food, next for their Feathers, and laſtly for their Greafe. They are held of Huſbandmen to be Fowls of two Lives, becauſe they live both on Land and Water; and therefore all Men muſt underſtand, that except he have either Pond or Stream, he can never keep Geefe well. They are ſo watchful and careful over themſelves, that they will prevent moſt Dangers. Graſs they muſt neceſſarily have; and the worſt, and that which is the moſt uſeleſs, is the beſt; as that which is ſcoriſh, rotten, and unſavoury for Cattle. To good Graſs they are a great Enemy; for their Dung and ſteading will putrify it, and make it then barren.

Now, for the Choice of Geefe: The beſt is the beſt, and their Colour ſhould be white or grey, all of one Pair; for py'd are not ſo profitable, and black are worſe. Your Gander ſhould be knaviſh and hardy, for he will defend his ſollings the better.

The Choice of Geefe.

*Of laying
Eggs, and
fitting.*

Now, for the laying of Eggs: A Goose beginneth to lay in the Spring, and she layeth earliest is ever the best Goose, for she may have a second Hatch. Geese will lay twelve, and some sixteen Eggs; some will lay more, but it is seldom, and they cannot be all well covered. You shall know when your Goose will lay, by her carrying of Straw up and down in her Mouth, and scattering it abroad; and you shall know when she will sit, by her continuing on the Nest still after she hath layed. You must set a Goose upon her own Eggs, for she will hatch or unkindly sit on another Goose's Eggs, as some imagine, but it is not ever certain. You shall in her Straw when you set her, mix Nettle-roots, for it is good for the Goslings. Thirty Days is the full Time that a Goose sitteth; but, if the Weather be fair and warm, she will hatch three or four Days sooner. Ever when the Gosling riseth from the Nest, you shall give her Meat; as Skeggs Oats and Bran scalded, and give her Leave to bathe in the Water.

*The ordering
of Goslings.*

After she hath hatched her Goslings, you shall keep them in the House ten or twelve Days, and feed them with Curds, scalded Chippings, or Barley-meal in Milk knoddled and broken; also ground Malt is exceeding good, or Bran that is scalded in Water, Milk, or Tappings to Drink. When they have got a little Strength, you must let them go abroad, with a Keeper, five or six Hours a Day, and let the Dam, at her Pleasure, intice them into the Water; then bring them in, and put them in and thus order them till they be able to defend themselves from Vermin.

*Of Green
Geese, and
their fat-
ting.*

After a Gosling is a Month or six Weeks old, you may put it up to feed for a Green Goose, and it will be perfectly fed in another Month following; and to feed them, there is no Meat better than Skegg Oats boiled and give Plenty thereof thrice a Day, Morning, Noon, and Night, with good Store of Milk, or Milk and Water mixt together to drink.

Now you shall understand one Gander
will serve well five Geese, and to have not
above forty Geese in a Flock is best; for to
have more is both hurtful and troublesome.

*Of Gan-
ders.*

Now, for the fattening of elder Geese,
which are those that are five or six Months
old; you shall understand, that after they

*Fattening of
elder Geese.*

have been in the stubble Fields, and during the Time of
harvest got into good Flesh, you shall then chuse out such
Geese as you will feed, and put them in several Pens
which are close and dark, and there feed them thrice a
day, with good Store of Oats, or spelted Beans; then
give them to drink Water and Barley-meal mixt toge-
ther, which must evermore stand before them. This
will in three Weeks feed a Goose so fat as is needful.

Now, lastly, for the gathering of a
Goose's Feathers; you shall understand,
that howsoever some Writers advise you for
needless Profit to pull your Geese twice a

*Of gather-
ing Geese
Feathers.*

year, *March* and *August*, yet certainly it is very nought
and ill; for first, by disabling the Flight of the Goose,
you make her subject to the Cruelty of the Fox, and
other ravenous Beasts; and, by uncloathing her in
Winter, you strike that Cold into her Body, which kills
her very suddenly: Therefore, it is best to stay till
moulting Time, or till you kill her, and then you may
employ all her Feathers, at your Pleasure, either for
beds, Fletchers, or Scriveners.

Of the Gargill in Geese.

For the Diseases and Infirmities in Geese, the most
and worst they are subject unto, is the Gargill, which is
mortal or deadly Stopping of the Head.

The ordinary and certain Cure is, to take
three or four Cloves of Garlick, and beating

The Cure.

them in a Mortar with sweet Butter, make little long
balls thereof; then give two or three of them to the
Goose fasting, and then shut her up for two Hours after.

C H A P. IV.

Of Turkies; their Nature, Use, Increase, and Breeding.

TURKIES, howsoever by some Writers they are held Devourers of Corn, Strayers abroad, pulling for Meat, and many such like fained Troubles as if they were utterly unprofitable; yet, it's certain they are most delicate, either in Paste, or from the Spig and, being fat, far exceeding any other House Fowl whatsoever: Nay, they are kept with more Ease and less Cost, for they will take more Pains for their Food than any other Bird; only they are Enemies to a Garden, and from thence must ever be kept. They, when they are young, are very tender to bring up, both because they have a straying Nature in themselves, and the Dame so negligent, that whilst she hath one following her, she never respecteth the rest; therefore, they must have a vigilant Keeper to attend them, till they can shift for themselves, and then they will flock together, and seldom be parted. Till you fat them, you need not take care for Food for them. They love to roost in Trees, or other high Places.

*Of the
Choice of
the Turkey
Cock.*

Now, for your Choice of such as you would breed on: Your Turkey Cock should not be above two Years old at most; be sure that he be loving to the Chickens; and for your Hen, she will lay till she be five Years old, and upwards. Your Turkey Cock should be a Bird large, stout, proud, and majestic; for when he walks dejected, he is never a good Treader.

Of the Turkey Hen's sitting.

The Turkey Hen, if she be not prevented, will lay her Eggs in secret Places; therefore you must watch her, and bring her to your Hen-House, and there compel her to lay. They begin to lay in *March*, and will sit in *April* and eleven Eggs, or thirteen, is the most they should cover. They hatch ever between twenty-five and thirty Days. When they have hatcht their Broods, be sure to keep the Chicks warm, for the least Cold kills them; and feed them either with Curds, or green fresh Cheese.

small Pieces. Let their Drink be new Milk, or Milk Water. You must be careful to feed them often; the Turkey Hen will not, like the House-Hen, call Chickens to feed them. When your Chicks have Strength, you shall feed them abroad in some close lled Grass-plat, where they cannot stray, or else ever at Charge of a Keeper. The Dew is most hurtful to them; therefore you must house them at Night, and let them abroad after Sun-rising in the Morning.

feeding
Turkies. Now, for the fatting of Turkies; foddens Barley is excellent, or foddens Oats for the first Fortnight; and then for another Fortnight, cram them in all Sorts as you cram your Capon, and they will be fat beyond Measure. Now, for their infirmities; when they are at Liberty, they are such good physicians for themselves, that they will never trouble their owners, but being coopt up. You must cure them, as is before described for Pullen. Their Eggs are exceeding wholesome to eat, and restore Nature decay'd wonderfully.

C H A P. V.

Of the Duck, and such Water-Fowls:

THE tame Duck is an exceeding necessary Fowl for the Husbandman's Yard; for she asketh no charge in Keeping, but liveth on Corn lost, or other things of less Profit. She is once in a Year a very great Layer of Eggs, and when she sitteth she craves much Attendance and Feeding; for, being restrained from seeking her Food, she must be helped with a little Barley, rather over Chaving of Corn, such as else you would give unto Swine. As for her sitting, hatching, and brooding of her Ducklings, it is in all Points to be observed in such Manner as you did before with the Goose, only after they are abroad they will shift better for their food than Goslings will. For the fatting of Ducks, or Ducklings, you may do it in three Weeks, by giving them any Kind of Pulse or Grain, and good Store of Water.

If

Of Wild-Ducks, and their ordering.

If you will preserve Wild-Ducks, must wall in a little Piece of Ground, which is some little Pond or Spring, and cover the Top of it all over with a strong Net. The Pond must be set with many Tufts of Oziers, and have many secret Holes and Crannies; for that will make them delight and feed, though imprisoned. The Wild Duck, when she layeth, will steal from the Drake, and hide her Nest, for else he will suck the Eggs. When she hath hatcht she is most careful to nourish them, and needeth no Attendance more than Meat, which should be given fresh twice a Day; scalded Bran, Oats or Fitches. The House-Hen will hatch Wild Ducks Eggs, and the Meat will be much better; yet every Time they go into the Water they are in Danger of the Kite, because the Hen cannot guard them. In the same Manner as you nourish Wild Ducks so you may nourish Teils, Widgeons, Sheldrakes, Green Plovers.

C H A P. VI.

Of Swans, and their Feeding.

TO speak of the Breeding of Swans is needless, because they can better order themselves in the Business than any Man can direct them; only where they build their Nests you shall suffer them to remain undisturbed, and it will be sufficient: But for the feeding them fat for the Dish, you shall feed your Cygnets with all Sorts as you feed your Geese, and they will be thorough fat in seven or eight Weeks, either coopt in the House or else walking abroad in some private Court. If you would have them fat in shorter Space, then you shall feed them in some Pond, hedg'd or pail'd for the Purpose, having a little dry Ground left where they may sit and prune themselves; and you may place two Troughs, one full of Barley and Water, the other full of old dried Malt, on which they may feed at their Pleasure: And thus doing they will be fat in less than four Weeks;

this Means a Swan keepeth himself neat and clean, no being a much defiled Bird, liveth in dry Places so cleanly that they cannot prosper, unless his Attender diligent to drefs and trim his Walk every Hour.

C H A P. VII.

f Peacocks, and Peabens; their Increase and Ordering.

PEACOCKS, howsoever our old Writers are pleased to deceive themselves in their Praises, are Birds more to delight the Eye by looking on them, than for any particular Profit. The best Commodity arising from them, being the cleansing and keeping of the Yard free from venomous Things; as Toads, Newts, and such like, which is their daily Food; whence it comes, that their flesh is very unwholesome, and used in great Banquets, more for the Rareness than the Nourishment: For it is most certain, roast a Peacock or Peahen, ever so dry, when set it up, and look on it the next Day; and it will be Blood-raw, as if it had not been roasted at all.

The Peahen loves to lay her Eggs abroad in Bushes and Hedges, where the Cock may not find them, for if he does he will break them; therefore, as soon as she begins to lay, separate her from the Cock, and house her till she have brought forth her Young, and that the Crown of Feathers begin to rise at their Foreheads; when turn them abroad, and the Cock will love them, but not before. A Peahen sits just thirty Days; and, in her sitting, any Grain, with Water, is Food good enough. Before your Chickens go abroad, you shall feed them with fresh Green Cheese, and Barley-Meal, with Water; If you set them out after they go abroad, the Dam will provide for them. The best Time to set a Peahen is at the Beginning of the Moon; and if you set Hen Eggs amongst her Eggs, she will nourish both equally. These Pea Chickens are very tender, and the least Cold doth kill them; therefore you must have care to keep them warm, and not to let them go abroad but when the Sun shineth. Now for the Ordering of them, it is a Labour you may well save; for
if

if they go in a Place where there is any Corn stirring they will have Part; and being Meat which is seldom never eaten, it mattereth not so much for their fattening.

C H A P. VIII.

Of the tame Pidgeon, or rough-footed.

THE tame rough-footed Pidgeon differs not much from the wild Pidgeon, only they are somewhat bigger and more familiar, and apt to be tame. They commonly bring not forth above one Pair of Pidgeons at a Time, and those which are the least of Body are ever the best Breeders; they must have their Rooms and Boxes made clean once a Week, for they delight much in Neatness; and if the Walls be outwardly whited and painted, they love it the better, for they delight much in fair Buildings. They will bring forth their young ones once a Month, if they be well fed; and after they be well pair'd, they will never be divided. The Cock is a very loving and natural Bird, both to his Hen and the young ones, and will sit on the Eggs while the Hen feedeth, as the Hen sits whilst he feedeth. He will also feed the Young with as much Painfulness as the Dam doth, and is best pleased when he is brooding them. These Kind of Pidgeons you shall feed with White Pease, Tares, and good Store of clean Water. In the Room where they lodge you shall ever have a Salt-Cat for them to peck on, and that which is gathered from Salt-peet is the best: Also they should have good Store of clean Sand, Gravel and Pebble, to bathe and cleanse themselves withal: And above all Things great Care take that no Vermin or other Birds come into their Boxes especially Sterlings, and such like, which are great Egg suckers. And thus much of the tame Pidgeon.

C H A P. IX.

nourishing and fattening Hearn, Puets, Gulls, and Bitters.

HEARNs are nourished for two Causes, either for Princes Sports, to make Trains for the entering of Hawks, or else to furnish on the Table at great feasts. The Manner of bringing them up with the best Charge is, to take them out of their Nests before they can fly, and put them into a large high Barn, where there are many high and cross Beams for them to perch on. Then to have on the Floor divers square Boards with Rings in them, and between every Board, which should be two Yards square, to place round shallow Tubs full of Water; then to the Boards you shall tie great Rabbits of Dog's Flesh cut from the Bones, according to the Number you feed; and be sure to keep the House wet, and shift the Water often, only the House must be made so that it may rain in now and then, in which the Hearn will take much Delight. But if you feed the Dish, then you shall feed them with Livers, and Entrails of Beasts, and such like, cut in great Goblets: And this Manner of Feeding will also feed either the Hearn, Puets, or Bitter; but the Bitter is ever best to be fed by the Hand, because, when you have fed him, you must tie his Beak together, or he will cast up his Meat again.

C H A P. X.

Of feeding the Partridge, Pheasant, and Quail.

THESE three are the most dainty of all other Birds; and for the Pheasant or Partridge you may feed them both in one Room, where you may have little boxes, where they may run and hide themselves in divers corners of the Room; then in the Midst you shall have some Wheat-sheaves, two with their Ears upward, and one

one with its Ear downward ; and near unto them shall Tubs with Water, that the Fowls may peck the Wheat out of the Ears, and drink at their Pleasures ; and in this Manner of Feeding you shall have them as fat as possible. As for your Quails, the best feeding them is in long flat shallow Boxes, each Box able to hold two or three Dozen, the foremost Side being set with round Boards so thick that the Quail do no more but put out her Head then before that open Side shall stand one Trough full of small Chilter-Wheat, another with Water ; and thus in one Fortnight or three Weeks, you shall have them exceeding fat.

C H A P. XI.

Of Godwits, Knots, Gray-Plover, or Curlews.

FOR to feed any of these Fowls, which are esteemed of all others the daintiest and dearest, fine Chilter-Wheat and Water, given them thrice a Day, Morning, Noon and Night, will do it very effectually ; but, if you intend to have them extraordinary and crammed Fowls, then you shall take the finest drest Wheat-Meal, and mixing it with Milk, make it into a Paste ; and even as you knead it, sprinkle into it the Grains of small Chilter-Wheat, till the Paste be fully mixt therewith ; then mix a little small Crams thereof, and, dipping them in Water, give to every Fowl according to his Bigness, and that their Gorge be well filled. Do thus as often as you shall find their Gorges empty, and in one Fortnight they will be fed beyond Measure ; and with these Crams you may feed any Fowl, of what Kind or Nature soever.

C H A P. XII.

Of feeding Blackbirds, Thrushes, Felfares, or any other Birds whatsoever.

TO feed these Birds, being taken old and wild, is good to have some of their Kinds tame, to mix among them ; and then putting them into great Cages of three or four Yards square, to have divers Troughs

ced therein, some filled with Haws, some with Hemp-
ed, and some with Water; that the tame teaching the
d to eat, and the wild finding such Change and Alte-
ion of Food, they will in twelve or fourteen Days
ow exceeding fat, and fit for the Use of the Kitchen.

Of the Fighting-Cock.

CHAP. I.

*the Choice, Ordering, Breeding, and Dieting of the
Fighting-Cock for Battle.*

SINCE there is no Pleasure more noble, delight-
some, or void of Couzenage and Deceit than this
Pleasure of Cockfighting; and since many of the
Wisdoms of our Nation have been pleased to parti-
cipate with the Delights therein, I think it not amiss, as
well for the Instruction of those which are unexperienced,
as for fortifying of them which have some Knowledge there-
of, to declare in a few Lines the Election, Breeding,
and Secrets of dieting the Fighting-Cock, which have
been hitherto concealed and unwritten of, is (for
Pleasure sake) as worthy of a general Knowledge as
any Delight whatsoever.

To speak then first of the Choice of the
Fighting-Cock; you shall understand that
the best Characters you can observe in him
are, the Shape, Colour, Courage, and
sharp Heel. For his Shape, the middle

*The Choice
of the
Cock for
Battle.*

and indifferent Size is always accounted the best, be-
cause they are most matchable, strong, nimble, and
ready for your Pleasure; whereas the huge Cock (which
we call the Turn-Cock) is ever hard to find his Equal;
besides he is lubberly, and affordeth small Pleasure in
Battle; and so the exceeding little Cock is as hard
to match, and is commonly weak and tedious in his
manner of fighting. He should be of a proud and up-
right Shape, with a small Head, like a Sparrow-Hawk,
a quick

a quick large Eye, and a strong Beak, crook'd and bent at the Setting-on, and in Colour suitable to the Plumage of his Feathers, as black, yellow, or redish; the Beak of his Leg should be very strong, and according to his Plume, blue, grey, or yellow; his Spurs long, rough and sharp, a little bending and looking inward.

For his Colour, the grey Pile, the yellow Pile, or the red with the black Breast, are esteemed the best; the pied is not so good, and the white and dun are the worst. If he be red about the Head, like Scarlet, it is a Sign of Lust, Strength, and Courage; but if he be pale, it is a Sign of Sicknes and Faintnes.

For his Courage, you shall observe it in his Walk, in his treading and the Pride of his going; and in his Pride by his oft crowing. For the Sharpness of his Heel, as Cock-masters call it, the narrow Heel, it is only seen in his fighting; for that Cock is said to be sharp heel'd, or narrow heel'd, which every Time he riseth him up and draweth Blood of his Adversary, gilding (as the term it) his Spurs in Blood, and threatening at every Blow an End of that Battle.

And these Cocks are surely of great Estimation, and the best Cock-masters are of Opinion, that a sharp heel'd Cock, tho' he be a little false, is much better than the truest Cock which hath a dull Heel, and hitteth without Dom; for tho' the one fight long, yet he seldom wounds and the other, tho' he will not endure the utmost beating, yet he makes a very sudden and quick Dispatch of his Business, for every Blow puts his Adversary in Danger.

But that Cock which is both assuredly hard, and very sharp heel'd, is to be esteemed, and is of the most Account above all other; and therefore in your general Election chuse him which is of a strong Shape, good Colour, true Valour, and of a most sharp and ready Heel.

The breeding of the Battle-Cock.

Now for the breeding of these Cocks in Battle, it is much different from those of the Dunghill; for they are like Birds of Prey, in which the Female is ever to be preferred and esteemed before the Male. And so in the Breed of these Birds, you must be

Let your Hen be right, that is to say, she must be of right Plume, as, grey, grissel, speck'd, or yellowish; black or brown is not amiss. She must be kind unto Young, of large Body, well poaked behind for large Eggs, and well tufted on the Crown, which shows Courage: If she have Weapons she is better, but her Valour it must be excellent; for if there be any sort of Cowardice in her, the Chickens cannot be true. And it is a Note among the best Breeders, that the perfect Hen from a Dunghill Cock will bring a good Chick, but the best Cock from a Dunghill Hen can never get a good Bird: And I have known in mine own experience, that the two famousst Cocks that ever fought in these Days, the one call'd *Noble*, the other *Grissel*, begat on many ill Hens very bad Cocks; but the most famous Hen, *Inks*, never brought forth an ill Bird, how bad soever her Cock were.

Having then unto perfect Cocks got perfect Hens, (for that is the best Breeding) you shall know that the best Season of the Year to breed in, is from the Increase of the Moon in *February* to the Increase of the Moon in *March*, for one *March* Bird is ever better worth than three at any other Season. You shall place her Pen in which she sitteth, to stand warm, and to make her Bed soft and sweet Straw, for they be much tenderer than the Dunghills are; neither shall you suffer any other Fowl to come in her View where she sits, for it will move her to Displeasure, and make her to endanger her Eggs.

You shall also observe in her sitting, whether she be apt to turn her Eggs, (which is a good Sign in a Hen) and if she be slack, you shall help her at such Times as she riseth from her Nest; and ever be sure when she cometh from her Nest to have Meat and Water ready for her, lest, being forced to seek her Food, she suffer her Eggs to cool too much: Also, you shall have Sand, Gravel, and fine sifted Ashes in the Room where she sitteth, in which she may bathe and trim herself at her pleasure.

After twenty-one Days is the Time of their hatching, and if, when they are new hatched, she do neglect to cover and keep the first warm till the rest be disclosed, you

you shall observe her, and take those that are first opened, and, wrapping them in warm Wool, lay them within the Air of the Fire till the rest are hatch'd; and then put them all under her, and keep both the Hen and them exceeding warm, for they are so tender that the least Cold will kill them, and suffer neither them nor the Hen to go abroad into the Air till they be a Month old: Then let them have Store of Food, as Oat-meal, Cheese Parings, Chilter-wheat, and such like, and a large Room to walk in, the Floor being Board, for the Earth-floor is too moist, and the Plaister-floor too cold.

After they are a Month old, you shall let them walk in some Grass Court or green Place, where they may have Store of Worms; but by all Means be sure there be no stinking Puddles of Water in it, no Sinks, nor filthy Channels, for it is the greatest Poison that can be to Birds of this Nature, and breedeth those Diseases which are most mortal. If every Morning before they go forth you perfume them and their Room with Rosemary, or Penny-royal, burnt, it is a good Preservative against all those Infirmities, or to chop Leek Black amongst their Meat is very good also.

In this Sort you shall nourish them till you may distinguish the Cock Chicken from the Hen; and then seeing their Combs but appear, you shall cut them away, and so anoint the Sore with fresh Butter till they be whole. This will make them have fine, small, tender and smooth Heads; whereas, to suffer the Combs to grow to its Bigness, and then cut it away, will make them have gouty, thick Heads, with great Lumps; neither is the Flux of Blood wholesome, for the least Loss of Blood in a feathered Fowl is exceeding mortal and very dangerous.

You shall suffer your Cock Chickens to go together with their Hens till they begin to fight and peck at one another, but then you shall separate them, and disperse them into several Walks, and that Walk is the best for a Fighting-Cock which is farthest from Resort, as, Wind-mills, Water-mills, Grange-houses, and such like, where he may live with his Hens without the Offence or Company of other Cocks: Lodges in Parks are also good, and so are Coney-warrens, only they are

le too much haunted with Vermin, and that is dangerous. Let the Feeding-place for your Cocks be upon dry Ground, or upon Boards; for to feed on paved Earth, or on Plaister-floors, will make their Legs weak, blunt, and not apt to hold fast. Any white Corn is good Food for a Cock in his Walk, and are Toasts of Crusts, of Bread soaked in Drink, or man's Urine, for it will both scour and cool them inwardly.

If your Chickens begin to crow (not being six Months old) clear and loud, or at unseasonable Times, do not esteem them, for it is an apparent Sign of Cowardice or Falshood; for the true Cock is very long before he utters his Voice, and when he hath it, he observes his Affairs with the best Judgment. Unto your Fighting-cock three Hens are sufficient, or five at most, for they are so hot of Nature, and will tread so much, that they will consume their natural Strength.

A Cock should not be put to the Battle before he be two Years old, at which Time he is perfect and complete in every Member; for to suffer him to fight when his Spurs are but Warts, you may well know his Courage, but never his Goodness.

You must also have an especial Care to the Perch upon your Cock sitteth when he roosteth, for if it be small in the Gripe, or crooked, or so ill placed that he cannot sit but he must straddle with his Legs, any of these Faults will make him uneven heel'd; and whatsoever he was naturally, yet by this Accident he will never be a good Striker, for the making of the Perch either weakeneth or marreth the Cock; therefore, to prevent this Fault, the best Way is to have in your Roost a Row of Perches, not above seven or eight Inches in Length, not a Foot from the Ground, so that your Cock may easily go up to them, and being set, must of Course have his Legs stand near together. It is a Rule, that he who is a close Sitter, is ever a narrow Striker.

Let the Foot-stool of the Perch be round and smooth, about the Bigness of a Man's Arm: Yet, for your own Knowledge, because Words cannot so well express the Quantities, it shall not be amiss for you to go to the famous Cock-master's House, and view the Perches which

which are within his Feeding-Pens, and, according to those Proportions, frame your own, for the Perch is making or spoiling of any Cock whatsoever.

Again, you must be careful that when your Cock doth leap from his Perch, that the Ground be whereon he lighteth, for if it be hard or rough, it will make your Cock grow gouty, and put forth Knots upon his Feet.

The dieting of Cocks for Battle.

Now, lastly, for the dieting and ordering of a Cock for a Battle, which is a secret yet never divulged, but kept close by the Breasts of some few, forasmuch as it only consisteth all the Ground and Substance of the future, the best Cock undieted not being able to encounter with the worst Cock that is dieted.

Of taking up Cocks.

You shall understand, that the Time to take up your Cocks is at the latter End of *August*, (for from that Time to the latter End of *May* Cocking is in Repute) and having viewed them well, and seen that they are found, hard feathered and full plumed, you shall put them into several Pens, or Models whereof you may behold in every Cock-master or Inn-keeper's House, having a moving Perch in it set at which Corner of the Pen you please.

Of the Cock-Pen.

This Pen should be made of very good Boards, well joined together, all but the Front, which should be made open like a Grate, one Bar two Inches distant from another; before the Grate two large Troughs of soft Wood, one for his Meat, the other for his Water. The Door of the Grate should be made to lift up and down, of great Largeness that you may with Ease put your Cock in and out; and daily cleanse your Pen, to keep it clean and wholesome.

The Pen should be at least three Feet in Height, and two Feet square every Way; and many of them should be joined in one Front, according to the Bigness of the Room in which they are built, and also one above another, only with over-shadowing Boards, so that no Cock may not see another.

When your Cock, as aforesaid, is put into his Pen, you shall for three or four days feed him only with old Manchet, the crust pared away, and cut into little square Bits, and you shall give him the Quantity of a good Handful at a time, and you shall feed him three Times in the day, i. e. at Sun-rise, at high Noon, and at Sun-set. You shall always let him have before him the finest, clearest and sweetest Spring-Water that you can get.

Of his Diet.

After he hath been thus fed four Days, take his Corn, Worms, Gravel, and other coarse Feeding gone from him, in the Morning take him out of the Pen, and another Cock also, and putting a Pair of Hots upon each of their Heels, which Hots are soft bombasted Rolls of Leather, covering their Heels, so that they cannot hurt or bruise one another; and so, setting them down on the green Grass, let them fight and buffet one another a good Space, as long as in their teaching they do not wound or draw Blood of one another, and this is called the Sparring of Cocks. It maketh and chafeth their Bodies, and it breaketh the Crud and Glut which is within them, and maketh it apt to be cleansed and come away.

Of sparring of Cocks.

After your Cocks have sparred sufficiently, and you see them pant and grow weary, you shall take them up, and taking off their Hots, you must have deep Straw-baskets, made for the Purpose, with soft sweet Straw in the Middle; then put in your Cock, cover him with Straw up to the Top, and then lay on the Lid close, and there let your Cock stow and sweat till the evening.

But yet before you put him into the Stow, you shall beat Butter and Rosemary finely chopt, and white Sugar-candy, all mixt together, and give him a Lump thereof as much as your Thumb, and then let him sweat; the Nature of this Scouring is to bring away his Crud, and to breed Breath and Strength. You may, in Time of Necessity, for want of these Straw-baskets, stow your Cock in a Cock-bag, by laying Straw both under and above him; but it is not so good, because the Air hath more Power to pass through it.

After

*Of the best
Diet-
Bread.*

After Four o' Clock in the Evening you may take your Cock out of the Store, and licking his Head and Eyes all over with your Tongue, put him into his Pen, and then taking a good Handful of Bread, cut fine, put it into his Trough; and then pissing into the Trough, also give it him to eat, so as he may take his Bread of the warm Urine; for this will make his Scouring work, and cleanse both his Head and Body wonderfully.

Now you shall understand, that the Bread which you shall give him at this Time, and at all other Times (during his Dieting) shall not be Manchet, but a special Bread, made for the Purpose, in this Manner: You shall take of Wheat-meal, Half a Peck, and the Quantity of fine Oatmeal-flour, mixing them together, knead them into a stiff Paste, with Ale, the White of a dozen Eggs, and Half a Pound of Butter; and, having wrought the Dough exceeding well, make it into broad thin Cakes: Being three or four Days old, and the Bitterings of the Outside cut away, cut it into little square Bits, and give it the Cock.

There be some others, that, in this Bread, will mix Liquorice, Aniseeds, and other hot Spices, and wash also in the Cock-water steep Slices of Liquorice, but is not commendable; for it is both unnatural and unwholesome, and maketh a Cock so hot at the Heart, that when he comes to the latter End of a Battle, he is suffocated and overcome with his own Heat; therefore I advise Men, of Judgment, to take that for the best Diet, which is most natural and least contrary unto the Fowl's ordinary Feeding.

But to return to my former Discourse: After you have fed your Cock thus, for all Night, you shall the next Day let him rest, and only give him his ordinary Feedings of Bread and Water; then the next Day (which is the second Day after his sparring) you shall take him into a fair even green Close, and there setting him down, having some Dunghill-Cock in your Arms, you shall shew it him, and so run from him, and entice him to follow you; and so chase up and down Half an Hour, the least, suffering him now and then to have a Stride

the Dunghill-Cock. When you see that he is well
fed and panteth, you shall take him up and bear
into your Cock-house, and there first give him this
ring: Take Half a Pound of Butter, which hath
salt, and beat it in a Mortar, with the Leaves of
of Grace, Hyssop and Rosemary, 'till the Herbs
not be perceived, and that the Butter is brought to a
Salve; and of this give the Cock a Roll or two,
as your Thumb, and then stow him in the Basket,
before-said, till Evening, and then feed as was for-
declared.

the next Day you shall let him rest and feed, and the
Day after you shall spar him again; and thus,
other Day, for the first Fortnight, you shall either
or chase your Cock, which are the most natural
kindest Heats that you can give him; and after
Heat you shall give him a Scouring, for this will
and cleanse from him all Grease, Glut, and Fil-
s, which lying in his Body, makes him purisy, faint,
not able to stand out the latter End of a Battle.
giving fed your Cock thus the first Fortnight, the
d Fortnight you shall also feed him in the same
er, and with the same Food; but you shall not
him, or give him Heats above twice in a Week,
the most, insomuch that thrice or four Times in the
ight will be sufficient, and each Time you shall
and scour him, according to the Nature of his
; that is to say, if you heat him much, you shall
him long, and give him of your Scouring the greater
ity. If you find that he is in good Breath, and
th but slight Heats, then you shall stow him for a
Time, and give him the less of the Scouring.

to the third Fortnight, which maketh up the six
compleat (being a Time sufficient to prepare a
for his Battle) you shall feed him as aforesaid, but
shall not spar him at all, for fear of making his
tender or sore, neither give him any violent Exer-
out only twice or thrice in the Fortnight, mode-
let him run and chase up and down, to maintain
ind, and now and then cuff a Cock, which you
old to him in your Hands; which done, you shall
his Scouring, well rolled in the Powder of Su-
garcandy,

garcandy, white or brown, but brown is the best for the Cock then being come to perfect Breath, having no Filth in his Body for the Scouring to work it will work and cause Operation upon the vital Parts and make the Cock sick, which the Sugarcandy will vent, and strengthen Nature against the Medicine.

After the End of six Weeks feeding, finding your Cock in Lust and Breath, you may fight him at your Pleasure observing that he have, at least, three Days Rest before he fight, and well emptied of his Meat before you bring him into the Pit.

The matching of Cocks.

Now when you bring him into the fight, you must have an especial Care in the matching of him, for in that Art consisteth the greatest Glory of the Cock-fighter; yet what availeth it, to feed ever so well, if in matching you give that Advantage, which overthroweth your former Labour? Therefore in your matching are two Things to be considered, that is, the Length of Cocks, and the Strength of Cocks; for if your adversary's Cock be too long, yours shall hardly catch his, and then he can never endanger Eye or Life; and if he be the stronger, he will overbear your Cock, and suffer him to rise and strike with any Advantage; therefore, for the Knowledge of these two Rules, the Experience be the best Tutor, yet the first, which is Length, you shall judge by your Eye, when you hold the Cock about the Waste and make him put on his Legs, in which Posture you shall see the utmost Height, and so compare them in your Judgment. As for his Strength, which is known by the Thickness of his Body, for that Cock is ever held the strongest which is largest in the Garth, you shall know it by the firmness of your Hands, griping the Cock about the Points of your great Fingers, to the Joints of the Thumbs, and either of these Advantages by no means give to your Adversary; but if you doubt Loss of one, yet be sure to gain it in the other, for the long Cock will rise at more Ease, and the short Cock will give the surer Blow, so that because all Cocks are not cast into a Mould, there may be a Reason

of the Advantages, yet, by all Means, give as little
you can.

When your Cock is equilly matcht, you
thus prepare him to the Fight: First,
a Pair of fine Cock Shears, you shall
all his Main off close unto his Neck, even
his Head unto the setting on of his Shoulders; then
shall clip off all the Feathers from his Tail close un-
to his Rump, where, the more Scarlet you see his
up, in the better State of Body the Cock is; then
shall take his Wings, and spreading them forth by
length of the first Feather of his Wing, clip the
slope-ways with sharp Points, that in his rising he
therewith endanger the Eyes of his Adversary;
with a sharp Knife you shall scrape, smooth and
then his Beak, then shall you smooth and sharpen his

*Of prepar-
ing Cocks to
the Fight.*

Ordering of Cocks after Battle, and the curing them.

Firstly, you shall see that there be no Feathers about
Crown of his Head for his Foe to take hold on; and
with your Spittle, moistening his Head all over,
him into the Pit to prove his Fortune. When the
is ended, the first Thing you do, you shall search
Wounds, and as many as you can find, you shall,
your Mouth, suck the Blood out of them; then
them very well with warm Urine, to keep them
Rankling; and then presently give him a Roll of
of your best Scouring, and so stow him up as hot as
can, both with sweet Straw and Blanketing in a
Basket, for all that Night; then in the Morning
him forth, and if his Head be much swell'd, you
suck his Wounds again, and bathe them with warm
; then having, in a fine Bag, the Powder of the
Robert, well dried and finely seift, pounce all
ore Places therewith, and then give the Cock a
Handful of Bread to eat out of warm Urine, and
him into the Stow again, in the same Manner as
mentioned; and by no Means let him feel the
until all the Swelling be gone, but twice a Day

suck his Wounds, dress him, and feed him as is said.

But if he have received any Hurt or Blemish in Eye, then you shall take a Leaf or two of right Ground Ivy, (not that which runneth along the Ground, and by the Ignorant so called, but that which grows in the Tufts in the Bottom of Hedges, and has a little, round Leaf) and having chewed it very well in your Mouth and suck'd out the Juice, spit it into the Eye of the Cock, and it will not only cure it of any Wound or any Blow in the Eye, where the Sight is not pierc'd but also defend it from the breeding of Films, Hairs, Warts, or any such other Infirmities which destroy Sight; observing that you do not cease to dress the Eye therewith, so long as you shall perceive any Blemish therein.

Now if your Cock have in his Fight veined him either by narrow Striking, or other cross Blow, you shall find out the Wound, and presently bind thereon the fine, soft Down of a Hare, and it will both stay and cure it.

After you have put forth your wounded Cocks to the Walks, and come to visit them a Month or two after if you find about their Heads any swell'd Bunches, and blackish at one End, you may know that in these Bunches are unsound Cores: Therefore presently with your Knife you shall open the same, and squeeze out the Cores with your Thumbs; then with your Mouth suck out all the Corruption, and fill the Holes with fresh Butter, which will cure them. And thus manage the Nature of the Cock, and how to keep him for the best Use.

Of Hawking, &c.

CHAP. I.

Hawking with all Sorts of Hawks, and the whole Art thereof.

your *English* Husbandman shall for his Recreation chuse the Pleasure of Hawking, which is a most princely and serious Delight, he shall understand all Hawks are divided into two Kinds; the long-winged Hawk, and the short.

The long winged Hawks, which are fit for your Husbandman's Recreation, are the Goshawk, the Tercel, the Ger-falcon, the Genkin; the Saker, the Lanner, the *Barbary* Falcon, the Merlin and the Hobby: And the short winged Hawks are the Goshawk, the Tercel of the Field, the Sparrow-hawk, and the Musket.

Kinds of Hawks.

The Falcon-gentle, which is the principal Hawk, may be made either for the Field or the River, and will fly either at the Partridge or the Mallard; the Ger-falcon will fly at the Heron; the Saker at the Crane or Bittern; the Lanner will fly at the Partridge, Pheasant, or Choff; the *Barbary* Falcon at the Partridge only; the Merlin and the Hobby at the Partridge, Lark, or any small Bird whatsoever; the Goshawk, or Tercel of Goshawk, at the Partridge, Pheasant, or Hare; the Sparrow-Hawk at the Partridge or Jackbird; and the Musket at the Bush only; and all Hawks are hardy, meek, and loving to the Man.

The Flight of Hawks.

All Hawks generally are manned after one manner; that is to say, by watching and waking them from Sleep, by a continual looking of them upon your Fist, and by a familiar stroaking and playing with them with the wing of a dead Fowl, or such like, and by often gazing and looking of them in the Face with a loving and gentle

The manning of Hawks.

Countenance, and so making them acquainted with Man.

*Of luring
Hawks.*

After your Hawks are manned, you bring them to the Lure by easy Degrees; first make them jump upon the Fift, and fall upon the Lure, then come to the Voice, and last to know the Voice and Lure so perfectly, that either upon the Sound of the one or Sight of the other, will presently come in and be most obedient; which may easily be performed, by giving her Reward when she doth your Pleasure, and making her fast when she disobeyeth. Short wing'd Hawks shall be call'd to the Lure only, and not to the Lure; neither shall you use with them the Loudness and Variety of Voice which you use with the long winged Hawks, but only bring them to the Fift by chirping your Lips together, or else by Whistle. And in this Manner of luring and calling Hawks, (for short winged Hawks are said to be called and not lured) you shall especially acquaint your Hawk with three Things; first, Boldness and Acquaintance with Men, Dogs, and Horses; then that she be bold and sharp set before the Lure be shewed her, knowing both the Morning and Evening Hours of her luring; and lastly, to delight her the more with the Lure, have it always garnished on both Sides with warm bloody Meat.

*The bathing
of
Hawks.*

When your Hawks are thoroughly manned and lured, and are come to the Height of Flesh and good Lust, you shall then spy out a fair Day, when the Weather and Air is most temperate, and carry your Hawk to some fair, little, shallow, sandy, running Brook or Rundle, where the Water is quiet and still, and where your Hawk may stand up to the Mid-thigh thereof, and having prick'd her down and made her fast by the Verge thereof, you shall take off her Hood and give her a little Way from her, and see whether she will bathe therein; but if you find her fearful of the Water, you shall with a little Stick paddle in the Water awhile before her, and then depart from her again, and let her bathe therein as long as she pleaseth: This done, you shall take her upon your Fift and give her a Bit of

Meat, then hold her in the Sun, and let her pick, me, and dry herself again. If you cannot come to River, Brook, or Rundle conveniently, then you will provide either a large Bason, or a broad shallow tub, and in it let your Hawk bathe as oft as Occasion will serve; for this Bathing giveth a Hawk Courage, Sharpness, and a great Appetite, and should commonly be used the Day or Morning before any princely Flight. It be in the Winter that your Hawk batheth, when the Sun shineth, you may then dry her as well by the gentle Air of the Fire as otherwise.

To enseam your Hawk (which is to cleanse her from Grease, Fat and Glut, which lieth inwardly in her Body, and which you shall know by her round thighs, high Flesh, and full Mutings) when you feed her in the Morning, give her a Bit or two of hot Meat, and

*Of En-
seaming,
Giving,
Casting,
and Scour-
ing.*

Night following little or nothing; then Morning and Evening after feed her upon the Flesh of a Rook wash'd in two Waters, till you feel the Pinions of her wings more tender than they were before; then give her casting according to her Nature, as was before shewed, and once in two or three Days give her a Hen's Neck well jointed and wash'd in Water, which will, by the Sharpness thereof, break the Kells of Fat which are in her Body; then every Morning you shall give her a Black train Pigeon, and keep her so long upon her wing, that, by her own moderate Exercise, she may sweat and dissolve the Grease that molesteth her; which, when it is broken, you may take away, by giving her three or four Pellets of the Root of Cellandine, as big as Garden Pease, well washed and scoured; and if you steep those Pellets in the Syrup of Roses, the Scouring is much stronger.

When your Hawk is manned, lured, and steamed, you shall bring her to her Flight; which, if it be at the Pheasant or Partridge in woody and close Grounds, then you shall, when you lure the Hawk, cast your net into some low Tree or Bush, that thereby you may bring her to take the Stand, which,

*Of flying
at the
Pheasant
or Par-
tridge.*

when she doth, you shall then draw out your Lure, giving her Notice thereof, make her seize thereon; ever feed her on the Ground and under a Bush, Practice whereof will bring her to delight in the Stand and to mark all the Advantages which she shall get from thence; then bringing her to either Pheasant or Partridge, make her fly at a young one first, that being more foolish and easily slain, she may take Delight in her Conquest. But if you fly any long winged Hawk in the Champaign, then you shall by all Means possible keep her from the Stand, and only maintain her under her Wing till you spring the Partridge underneath, and then stooping upon the Advantage, the Prey hardly escape her; yet, for the more sure killing of the Game and entering of young Hawks, you shall spring the Partridge and mark it; then being come to the Mark, cast off your Hawk, and when she is got to the Height of her Gate lay in your Spaniels, then retrieving the Partridge underneath her, after first Flight it is impossible she should escape. And in this Sort you may fly all Manner of long winged Hawks for it is not so proper to fly them from the Fift, as most of our late Falconers now use it; but for your short winged Hawks, you shall fly them from the first only: And therefore to make them hardy and valiant you shall first enter them at an old Field-Partridge, in a Hole, and covered either with a Sod, Board, or Hat, at which you shall fasten a small Creance, and then uncoupling your Spaniels, as they are ranging about suddenly, when your Hawk's Head is towards the Partridge, pluck off the Sod or Hat, and let the Train follow and the Hawk after it; which, as soon as she hath the reward her very well, and thus doing twice or thrice, you may after venture to fly her at your Pleasure.

*Of flying
at Fowls.*

To make your Hawk fly at Fowl, which is called the Flight at the River, you shall first whistle off an approved well qualified Hawk that is a sure Killer, and let her enew the Fowl so long till she bring it to the Plunge; then take her down, reward her, and set her by, yet so as you may have her ready to use at your Pleasure: Then whistle off your young Hawk, and when she is at the Head

er Gate, and that you have shewed her Water di-
Times to make her the more inward, and by a Gib-
called her in when at any Time she hath looked out,
being just over the Fowl, make in with all your
pany on every Side the River, and so lay forth the
l, which if your Hawk stoop, strike and trufs, you
presently make in to her and help her; and then
ing the Fowl's Wings, or breaking them, let your
k take her Pleasure thereon; but if she does not
the Fowl at the first stooping, then you shall give
Hawk Leisure to recover her Gate again, and then
forth the Fowl as before, not ceasing thus to do till
have landed it, and the Hawk hath slain it, and
reward her as before said: But if such a Mischief
fall out that the Fowl do escape and break away,
you shall be sure to have a little Mallard ready in
Bag, which you may cast forth, and so reward
Hawk thereon.

*for Faults in long winged Hawks; and first, of the
Stand.*

your long winged Hawk flying at the River or in
ampaign Fields use to take Stand, which is a great
t, you shall first, by all Means, shun flying near
s or Covert; but if that do not suffice, then you
have divers Trains in divers Mens Hands, and
the Hawk offers to go to the Stand, let him who
at her cast out his Train, and if she kill it, reward
This doing once or twice will reclaim, or no-

your Hawk, through Pride of Grease
therwise, be froward and coy, you
not when she kills reward her as you
wont, but conveying some other cold
cunningly under her, let her take her Pleasure
on; and ever with the Meat give her some Fea-
which may scour her and make her cast; for this
recover her Stomach, and make her more careful
illigent.

*Against
Froward-
ness.*

*To make a
Hawk in-
ward.*

If your Hawk be of a wild and stin Nature, and will not look inward toward the Man with her Head, but take and after every Check, neither respect Whooping or Gibbeting, in this Case you must follow her and lure her back; and as soon as she turneth her Head, shew her the Lure, to which if she then presently reward her; and thus do so oft and rangeth, till she be brought unto that Love for Voice and Affection to the Lure, that she will follow her other extravagant Thoughts.

*To keep a
Hawk in
high flying.*

When your Hawk is brought to fly an extraordinary high Pitch, to maintain and keep her in the same Manner of flight still, you shall not fly her above one Pitch in the Day at most; for nothing bringeth her down more than over Weariness: Also you shall then not too extreame a straight Hand upon her, for the too Greediness of the Quarry makes her slack her flight. Also you shall not fly her upon Rundles or small Bushes but upon Plashes and broad Rivers; you shall not suffer her to fly too long; but, after two or three Sessions and a Crossing, altho' she miss it, take her down with the Lure or Train and reward her, for this encouragement will maintain her in her Goodness.

*To bring
Hawks
upward.*

If your Hawk be high flying, yet unwilling to go to her Gate, or else now and then stooping before there be Cause, and losing her Way, which many Times happeneth when either the Hawk is kept too sharp, or out of her due Time; any of which Faults you perceive, you shall then upon the doing thereof give her a dead Quarry, and then hood her up with Reward, and an Hour or two after call her to the hood and feed her, and thus do as oft as she offendeth: for the more sure Prevention thereof, I would advise every Falconer to try the natural Disposition of the Hawk, and find whether she flieth better on a straight Hand or an open, and whether early or late, and forth, and according to her own Nature ever to follow her.

Faults in short winged Hawks; first, of turning Tail.

Short winged Hawks; as Gof-hawks and Sparrow-wks, will many Times neither kill their Game nor their Game to mark, but will give it over after a lit-flying, and (as Falconers term it) turn Tail unto it; which, when you see, you shall encourage your Dogs hunt, and cast before your Hawk a train Partridge, if it were the wild one, and make her seize it, and feed all upon it, to encourage her the better; and thus do so three or thrice, which if you see it prevail not, then deem her not, but make her away, for she will hardly be reclaimed.

Hawks, that have never been acquainted with Prey, will many Times not fly at all, taking a Tree, will sit and look after Game; which Fault to amend, you

If a Hawk will not fly at all.

will ever feed her upon quick Birds, and make her foot in; and then going into the Field which is champaign plain, after you have rode up and down a pretty Space with the Hawk unhooded, you shall cause one of your company to cast out a Field Partridge before your Hawk; then let her fly at it, and so soon as she hath seized it, let her feed thereon at her Pleasure, and do so three or four Times till she be well in Blood, and you shall find her valiant quickly.

If your Hawk be so fond of the Man that will not fly from him, but, after a while or two, return to him again, you must then but seldom be familiar with her,

Too much Fondness of the Man.

but let her rather feed herself than be fed by you; and so oft as she cometh so improperly unto you, you shall give her no Reward; but when she forsaketh you and seeth the Game, then you shall well reward her; and you shall make her both familiar with Men, Dogs, and Horses; for, to take Toy or Dislike to any of them, is Mischief a great deal worse than the former.

To

*Mewing
of long
winged
Hawks.*

To speak of the mewing of long winged Hawks, you shall understand that they must be set down; that is, put into the Mew about the Middle of *April*, at which Time if you find they have any Lice, you must pepper them, and put them into the Mew.

*Mewing at
the Stone.*

If it be a low Place upon the Ground, free from Noise, Vermin, or any evil Air, that it is called mewing at the Stone or Stone; but if you mew in any high Room, with open Windows towards the North, or North-East, then it is called mewing at large. If you mew to the Stock, you must have a broad Table in the Midst of the Room, upon which you must place Sand, Gravel, Stones, Sods, and Tubs for Water; and in the Midst of these a Round Stone or Block of two Feet high, to which you must fasten your Hawk with a Turuel of Iron, so that at any Time her Lease may be entangled. This Manner of mewing may be in the Falconer's own Bed-Chamber, or in any other safe Room, at his Pleasure: The Meat in the Mew is any quick Birds or Fowl, Ducks, and such like.

*Mewing
at large.*

If you mew your Hawk at large, you shall put her loose into the Mew, having sundry Perches therein, some high, some low, for her Use to sit on; and in this Mew also you must have Sand, Stones, Gravel, green Sods, and Water, all which you shall renew as oft as Need do require, and in the Midst of them a Block or two whereon to tie the Meat; which Meat shall be the same formerly spoken of, and given at certain and due Times, without Fail or Interruption.

*Mewing of
short
winged
Hawks.*

If you intend to mew a short winged Hawk, as the Goshawk, or such like, you shall in *March*; (after you have scoured her, made her clean from Lice, and cut off her Lease) throw her into the Mew loose, either in a high Room or a low Room at your Pleasure: let her Perches be lin'd with Canvas, or with wood Lifts, for the Safety of her Feet; let her have Store of Water for bathing, and oft renewed, and Store of Meat

live Pigeons, warm Mutton, warm Goat's or Dog's
flesh, any of which will make her mew quickly.

Hawks for the Field should be drawn
from the Mew in *June*, and made ready to
fly in *August*, at which Time Corn is cut;
and the Game is strong: And Hawks for the
River should be drawn in *August*, that they may be ready
to fly in *September*.

*When to
draw
Hawks.*

C H A P. II.

*Of the general Cures for all Diseases and Infirmities in
Hawks, whether they be short winged Hawks, or long
winged ones.*

And first of Castings.

HAWKS are divided into two Kinds; that is to
say, short winged Hawks, Gos-Hawks and her
Tercell, the Sparrow-Hawk and her Musket, and such
like, whose Wings are shorter then their Trains, and do
belong to the Ostringer: And long winged Hawks; as
the Faulcongentle and her Tercell, the Gerfalcon and
her Merkin, the Lanner, Merlin, Hobby, and divers others.
Now, forasmuch as their Infirmities, for the most Part,
proceed from the Indiscretion of their Governors, if
they fly them out of Season, before they be enfeamed,
and have the Fat, Glut, and Filthiness of their Bodies
purged and cleansed out, I think it not amiss first to
speak of Hawks Castings, which are the naturallest and
gentlest Purges or Scourings a Hawk can take, and
which doth the least offend the vital Parts: Therefore, you
shall know, that all Ostringers do esteem Plumage, and
the soft Feathers of small Birds, with some Part of the
same, to be the best Casting a short winged Hawk can
take; and, for the Purging of her Head, to make her
depend much upon Sheeps Rumps, the Fat cut away, and
the Bones well covered with Parsley: But for long
winged Hawks, the best Casting is fine Flannel, cut in
square Pieces of an Inch and a Half square, and also
soaked, and so given with a little bit of Meat. By
these

these Castings, you shall know the Soundness and Unsoundness of your Hawk; for when she hath cast, you shall take up the Casting, which will be like a hard round Pellet, somewhat long, and press it between your Fingers; and if you find nothing but clear Water come from it, then it is a Sign your Hawk is sound and lusty. If there come from it a yellowish or filthy Matter, or if it stink, it is a Sign of Rottenness and Disease; but, if it be greasy or slimy on the one Side, then it is a Sign the Hawk is full of Grease inwardly, which is not broken nor dissolved; then you shall give her Scouring, which is a much stronger Purgation: And the gentlest Scourings the gentlest, next casting, is to take four or five Pellets of the yellow Root of Celandine, washed clean from Filth, being as big as great Pease, and give them out of Water early in a Morning when the Hawk is fasting, and it will cleanse her mightily.

If you take these Pellets of Celandine, and give them out of the Oil of Roses, or out of the Syrup of Roses, is a most excellent Scouring also; only it will for an Hour or two make the Hawk somewhat sickish. If you give your Hawk a little Aloes Succotrine, as much as a Bean, wrapt up in her Meat, it is a most sovereign Scouring, and doth not only cause her to void Grease but also killeth all Sorts of Worms whatsoever.

If your Hawk, by over-flying, or too soon flying, be heated and inflamed in her Body, as they are much subject thereunto, you shall then to cool their Bodies give them Stones. These Stones are very fine white Pebbles lying in the Sands of gravelly Rivers, the Bigness whereof you may chuse according to the Bigness of your Hawk; as some no bigger than a Bean, and those are for Merlins or Hobbies; some as big as two Beans, and they are for Falcons-gentle, Lanners, and such like; and some much bigger than they, which are for Great Falcons, or such like: And these Stones, if they be of Crests and Welts, they are the better, for the roughest Stone is the best, so it be smooth and not gritty. You shall understand, that Stones are most proper for winged Hawks, and the Number which you shall give at the most, must never exceed fifteen; for seven is a good Number, so is nine or eleven, according as

and the Hawk's Heat, more or less; and these Stones must ever be given out of fair Water, having before been well pickt and trim'd from all Dirt or Filthiness. And thus much of Hawks Castings, Scourings, and Stones.

Of Imposbumes in Hawks.

If your Hawk have any Imposbume rising upon her, which is apparent to be seen, you shall take sweet Raisins, boil them in Wine, and then crushing them, lay them warm to the Sore, and it will both ripen and heal; only it shall be good to scour your Hawk very well inwardly, for that will abate the Flux of all evil Humours.

Of all Sorts of sore Eyes.

For any sore Eye, there is nothing better than to take the Juice of Ground-Ivy, and drop it into the Eye; but any Web be grown before you use this Medicine, when you shall take Ginger finely searst, and blow it into the Eye, and it will break the Web; then use the Juice of Ivy, and it will wear it away.

Of the Pantas in Hawks.

The Pantas is a Stopping or Shortness of Wind in Hawks.

The Cure is, to give her the Scowering of Cellandine, and the Oil of Roses; then wash her Meat in the Decoction of Colt's-Foot, and it will help her. *The Cure.*

Of Casting the Gorge.

This is when a Hawk, either through Meat which she cannot digest, or through Surfeit in feeding, casteth up the Meat which she hath eaten, which is most dangerous.

The only Way to cure her, is, to keep her fasting, and to feed her with a very little at once of warm bloody Meat, as not above Half a Sparrow *The Cure.*

Sparrow at a Time; and be sure never to feed her again till she have indued the first.

Of all Sorts of Worms, or Filanders in Hawks.

Worms or Filanders, which are a Kind of Worms in Hawks, are either inward or outward: Inward, as in the Guts or Entrails; outward, as in any Joint or Member. If they be inward, the Scowring of Aloes is excellent to kill them; but if they be outward, then you shall bathe the Place with the Juice of the Herb *Amor* mixt with Honey.

Of all Swelling in Hawk's Feet; and of the Pin in the Foot.

For the Pin in the Sole of the Hawk's Foot, or for any Swelling upon the Foot, whether it be soft or hard, there is not any Thing more sovereign, than to bathe it in Patch-Grease moulten, and applied to it exceeding hot, and then to fold a fine Cambrick Rag dipt in the same Grease about the Sore.

Of the breaking of a Pounce.

This is a very dangerous Hurt in Hawks, especially in Gerfaulcons; for if you shall break or rive her Pounce or but coap it so short that she bleed, though it be very little, yet it will endanger her Life.

The Cure. The Cure, therefore, is presently upon the Hurt, with a hot Wire to sear it, to stop the Blood stanch, and then to drop about it Pitch of *Burgundy* and Wax mixt together; or for Want thereof a little hard Merchant's Wax, and that will both heal it and make the Pounce grow.

Of Bones broke, or out of Joint.

If your Hawk have any Bone broke, or misplaced you shall, after you have set it, bathe it with the Oil of Mandrake and Swallows, mixt together; then splint it; and in nine Days it will be knit and have gotten Strength.

Of inward Bruisings in Hawks.

If your Hawk, either by stooping amongst Trees, or the Encounter of some Fowl, get any inward Bruise, which you shall know by the Blackness or Bloodiness of her Mutes; you shall then anoint her Meat, every time you feed her, with Sperma-Ceti, till her Mutes be clear again, and let her Meat be warm and bloody.

Of killing of Lice.

If your Hawk be troubled with Lice, which is a general Infirmity, and apparent; for you shall see them creep all over on the Outside of her Feathers, if she stand but in the Air of the Fire. You shall bathe her all over in warm Water, and Pepper small beaten; but be sure that the Water be not too hot, for that is dangerous, neither let it touch her Eyes.

Of the Rye in Hawks.

This Disease of the Rye in Hawks proceedeth from two causes; the one is Cold and Puffe in the Head; the other is foul and most uncleanly Feeding, the Faulconer being negligent to seek and cleanse his Hawk's Beak and Nares, suffering the Blood and Filthiness of Meat to stick and cleave thereunto. For, indeed the Infirmity is nothing else but a stopping up of the Nares; by Means whereof, the Hawk not being able to cast and avoid the corruption of her Head, it turns to Putrefaction, and in short Space kills the Hawk: And this Disease is a great deal more incident to short winged Hawks, than to long winged. The Signs whereof are apparent, by the stopping of the Nares.

The Cure is, to let your Hawk feed much on finewy and boney Meat; as the Rumps of Mutton (the Fat being taken away) or the Pinions of Wings of Fowl (either being well lapt in a good handful of Parsley) forcing her to strain hard in the spring of the same; and, with much Diligence, to cleanse and wash her Beak clean with Water, after her feeding, especially if her Meat be warm and bloody.

The Cure.

Of

Of the Frounce.

The Frounce is a cankerous Ulcer in a Hawk's Mouth got by over-flying, or other Inflammation, proceeding from the inward Parts; foul and unclean Food is also a great Ingenderer of this Disease. The Signs are a Soreness in the Hawk's Mouth; which Sore will be furr'd and cover'd over with white Scurf, or such like Filthiness. Also if the Ulcer be deep and ill, the Hawk will wind and turn her Head awry, making her Beak stand upright.

The Cure. The Cure is, to take Allum, and having beaten it to a fine Powder, mix it with strong Wine-Vinegar till it be somewhat thick; then wash and rub the Sore therewith till it be raw, and that the Scurf be clean taken away: Then take the Juice of Lolium, and the Juice of Raddish; and, mixing it with Salt, anoint the Sore therewith, and in a few Days it will cure it.

Of the Rheum.

The Rheum is a continual running or dropping at the Hawk's Nares, proceeding from a general Cold, or coming from over-flying; and then a sudden Cold taken thereupon, it stoppeth the Head, and breeds much Corruption therein. The Signs are, the Dropping before-said, and a general Heaviness, and sometimes a Swelling of the Head.

The Cure. The Cure is, to take the Juice of Bees and squirt it often into the Hawk's Nares; and then when you feed her, wash her Meat in the Juice of Broom-wort, and it will quickly purge and set her sound.

Of the Fornicas in Hawks.

The Fornicas in Hawks is a hard Horn, growing up at the Beak of a Hawk, ingendered by a poisonous and cankerous Worm; which fretting the Skin and tender yells a Welt between the Head and the Beak, occasioneth the hard Horn or Excression to grow and offend the Hawk. The Sign is the apparent Sight of the Horn.

The Cure. The Cure is, to take a little of a Bees Gall; and, beating it with Aloes, anoint the Hawk.

Hawk's Beak therewith, Morning and Evening, and it will in a very few Days take the Horn away.

Of the Fistula in Hawks.

The Fistula in Hawks is a cankerous hollow Ulcer, in any Part of a Hawk's Body, as it is in Mens, Beasts, or any other Creature's. The Signs are a continual mattering, or running of the Sore. and a thin sharp Water like Urine; which, as it falls from the same, will fret the sound parts as it goeth.

The Cure is, with a fine small Wire, little longer than a Virginal Wire, wrapt close *The Cure.* about with a soft fleaved Silk, and the Point blunt and fit, to search the Hollowness and Crookedness of the Ulcer, which the Pliantness of the Wire will easily do; then, having found out the Bottom thereof, draw forth the Wire, and according to the Bigness of the Orifice, make a Tent of fine Lint, being wet, which may likewise bend as the Wire did, and be within a very little as long as the Ulcer is deep: For to tent it to the full Length will, and will rather increase than diminish the Fistula; therefore, ever as the Fistula heals, you must make the Tent shorter and shorter. But, to the Purpose; when you have made your Tent fit, you shall first take strong Allum-Water, and with a small Syringe squirt the Sore three or four Times therewith; for that will cleanse, dry, and scower every Hollowness in the Vicer; then take the Tent and anoint it with the Juice of the Herb Robert, Vinegar, and Allum mixt together, and it will dry up the Sore.

Of the privy Evil in Hawks.

The privy Evil in Hawks is a secret Heart-Sickness, procured either by over-flying, corrupt Food, Cold, or other disorderly keeping; but most especially for want of Exercise, or casting in due Season. The Signs are, Heatness of Head and Countenance, evil enduring of her Meat, and foul black Mutings.

The Cure is, to take Morning and Evening a good Piece of a warm Sheep's Heart, *The Cure.* and steeping it either in new As's Milk, or new Goat's Milk;

Milk; or, for Want of both, the new Milk of a Cow, with the same to feed your Hawk, till you see Strength and Lust recovered.

Of Wounds in Hawks.

Hawks, by the cross Encounters of Fowls, especially the Heron, by stooping amongst Bushes, Thorns, Trees, and by divers such Accidents, do many Times catch for and most grievous Wounds. The Signs whereof are the outward Appearance of the same.

The Cure. The Cure is, if they be long and deep, and in a Place that you may conveniently first to stitch them up; then to tent them up with a little ordinary Balsam, and it is a present Remedy. But, if it be in such a Place as you cannot come to stitch it up, you shall then only take a little Lint and dip it in the Juice of the Herb, call'd, Mouse-ear, then apply it to the Sore, and it will, in a short Space, heal it. Now, if it be in such a Place, where you can by no Means bind any Thing thereunto, you shall then only anoint or bathe the Place with the aforesaid Juice, and it will heal and dry up the same in a very short Time. The Juice of the Green Herb, call'd woad, us, *English Tobacco*, will likewise do the same; for it hath a very speedy Course in Healing and Cleansing, and hath been approved by divers of the best Falconers in this Kingdom, and other Nations.

Of the Apoplexy, or falling Evil, in Hawks.

The Apoplexy, or falling Evil, of Hawks, is a certain Vertigo or Dizziness in the Brain, proceeding from the Oppression of cold Humours, which do for a certain Space numb, and, as it were, mortify the Senses. The Signs are, a sudden turning up the Hawk's Head, and falling from her Perch without baiting, but only with a general Trembling all over the Body; and lying so, as if it were in a Trance, a little Space, she presently recovereth, and riseth up again; but is sick and heavy many Hours after.

The Cure. The Cure, therefore, is to gather the Herb Asters, when the Moon is in the sign of Water.

Wa
Haw

ane, and in the Sign *Virgo*; then taking the Juice thereof to wash your Hawk's Meat therein, and so feed it, and it hath been found a most sovereign Medicine.

Of the purging of Hawks.

There is nothing more needful to Hawks, than Purging and Cleanings; for they are much subject to Heat and Foulness of Body inwardly, and their Exercise being much and violent, if there be neglect, and that their Glut be not taken away, it will breed Sicknes and Death; therefore it is the Part of every skilful Falconer to understand how, and when to purge his Hawk, which is generally ever before she be brought to flying: And the most usual Season for the same is before the Beginning of Autumn, for commonly knowing Gentlemen will not fly at the Partridge till Corn be from the Ground; and if he prepare for the River early, he will likewise begin with that Season.

The best Purgation then that you can give your Hawk, is Aloes Socotorine, wrapt up in warm Meat, the Quantity of a *French Pea*; and so given the Hawk to eat ever the next Morning, after she hath flown at any Train, or taken other Exercise, whereby she might break or dissolve the Grease within her.

For a Hawk that cannot Mute.

If your Hawk cannot Mute, as it is a common Infirmary which happeneth unto them, you shall take the Lean of Pork, being newly kill'd, whilst it is warm, to the Quantity of two Walnuts; and, lapping a little Aloes therein, give it the Hawk to eat, and it will presently stop her. There be divers good Falconers in this Case, who will take the Roots of Celandine; then having washed it, and cut it into little square Pieces, as big as a Pease, steep it in the Oil of Roses, and so make the Hawk swallow down three or four of them, which is very good and wholesome, only it will make the Hawk exceedingly sick for two or three Hours after; neither must the Hawk be in any weak State of Body, when this latter Medicine is given her. Also, you must observe to keep your Hawk at those Times exceeding warm, and much

on your Fist; and to feed her most with warm Bird
lest otherwise you cling and dry up her Intraills to
much, which is both dangerous and mortal.

The surest Sign to know when a Hawk is sick.

Hawks are generally of such a stout, strong, and yielding Nature, that they will many Times cover and conceal their Sickneses so long, 'till they be grown to that Extremity, that no Help of Physick, or other Knowledge, can avail for their Safeties; for when the Countenance, or Decay of Stomach, which are the ordinary outward Faces of Infirmities appear, then commonly is the Disease past Remedy: Therefore to prevent that Evil, and to know Sicknes whilst it may be cured, you shall take your Hawk, and, turning up her Tail, if you see that her Tuel or Fundament, either swells or looketh red, or if her Eyes or Nares likewise be of fiery Complexion, it is a most infallible Sign that the Hawk is sick, and much out of Temper.

Of the Fever in Hawks.

Hawks are as much subject to Fevers, as any Creature whatsoever; and, for the most Part, they proceed from over-flying or other extraordinary Heats, mixt with sudden Colds, given them by the Negligence of unskillful Keepers.

The Cure. The Cure is, to set her in a cool Place upon a Perch, wrapt about with her Cloath, and feed her often, with a little at a Time, of Chicken Flesh steeped in Water, wherein hath been soaked Camber Seeds: But if you find by the stopping of the Nares or Head, that she is offended more with Cold than Heat, then you shall set her in a warm Place, and feed her with the bloody Flesh of Pigeons, wash'd either with White Wine, or in Water, wherein hath been boiled either Sage, Marjoram, or Camomile.

To help a Hawk that cannot digest her Meat.

If your Hawk be hard of Digestion, and neither turn it over, nor empty her Panel, which is very of

en; you shall then take the Heart of a Frog, and thrust down into her Throat, then pull it back again by a Thread fasten'd thereunto, once or twice suddenly, and will make her cast her Gorge presently.

Of the Gout in Hawks.

Hawks, especially those which are free and strong strikers, are infinitely subject to the Gout, which is a swelling, knotting, and contracting of a Hawk's Feet.

The Cure thereof is, to take two or three Drops of Blood from her Thigh Vein, a *The Cure.* little above her Knee, and then anoint her Feet with the Juice of the Herb Hollyhock; then let all her Perch beointed also with Tallow, and the Juice of that Herb mixt together. Now, if this Disease (as oft it happens) be in a Hawk's Wing, then you shall take two or three Drops of Blood from the Vein under her Wing, and then anoint the Pinions and Inside thereof with *Un-entum de Althæa* made very warm, which you may buy of every Apothecary.

Of the staunching of Blood.

It is a known Experience amongst the best Falconers, that if the Gerfaulcon shall but lose two or three Drops of Blood, it is mortal, and the Hawk will die suddenly after; which to prevent, if the Blood proceed from any Pounce, which is most ordinary, then upon the Instant hurt, you shall take a little hard Merchant's Wax and drop it upon the Sore, and it will presently stop it: If it be upon any other Part of the Hawk's body, you shall clap thereunto a little of the soft Down of a Hare, and it will immediately staunch it; and, without these two Things, a good Falconer should never go, for they are to be used in a Moment. And as much of the Hawk, and her Diseases.

Of Greyhounds.

C H A P. I

Of coursing with Greyhounds, and the Excellencies of the Sport.

NOW if the Mind of our Husbandman be so generally taken with the Delight and Pleasure of this Recreation of Hawking, but that preferreth before it the Delight of Coursing with Greyhounds, which is a very noble and worthy Pastime, shall in it observe these four Things, the Breed of Greyhounds, their Shape, their Diet, and the Laws belonging to the same.

Breeding of Greyhounds.

Touching the Breed of Greyhounds you are principally to respect the Countries in which they are bred and nourished, as whether it be in a champaign Plain, or without Covert, where a Hare may stand forth and endure a Course of two Miles or more, as it shall happen (for the coursing of the Hare is that which I purpose most to treat of) because in a close Country, full of Covert, where a Hare cannot run above a Quarter of a Mile, or less, both the Pleasure of the Recreation is taken away, and the Greyhound, by an insufficient Exercise, is made unapt and unfit for that for which he was created.

Best Places for Breed.

Now of champaign Countries they are of three Kinds, as the low Vales; as the Vale of *Belvoir*, the Vale of *Worcester*, the Vale of *Easbam*, and such like the high Downs and Heaths, as about *Salisbury*, *Cirencester*, *Lincoln*, and many such like Places; and Middle between both, as the Counties of *Northampton*, *Leicester*, and others like them, all which are very excellent Places for the breeding and training up of the best Greyhounds; yet, of the three, your Vallies or middle So which for the most Part are arable Grounds, are much better to breed and train on than your Downs and Heaths.

aths, because they are much more laborious, rough, wy, and, in the Winter Season, full of much Trou- and false Foot-hold; insomuch that a Dog which is e to run strongly, swiftly, and surely there, must ecessarily do it ten Times better when he comes to the oth, plain, and carpet-like Down, where, on the rary, the Dog which is trained upon those even wns, though he be right famous and excellent, when comes to run in the deep well-plowed Field, is to where to bestow his Feet, and can neither shew ed, Cunning, or Indurance.

Now the Gentlemen which dwell on the Nimbleness in Greyhounds. wns and plain Grounds, to maintain the utation of their Dogs, affirm them to be ch more nimble and cunning in turning the Vale Dogs be, because the Fairness of the th giving them so much Advantage over the Hare, having her even (as it were) in a manner under Feet, she is put more to her Shifts, and strives greater Arts of Slight to deceive and get Advan- of the Greyhound: And it is true; for by Reason he Advantage of their Hills, which are great and p, tho' smooth and plain, I have seen a Vale Dog so h deceived, that upon a Turn he hath lost more und than hath been recoverable in the whole Course. But this is not Want of Goodness, but a little , which a Month's Courfing will bring a Dog so ciently to, that he will not need any other Reforma- than the Knowledge of his Error by his Loss of Lr- ; so that I conclude the good Dog upon the Deeps ever beat the good Dog on the Plain.

is an old received Opinion amongst Difference between Dogs and Bitches. y Men of the Leash, that the Grey- and Bitch will ever beat the Greyhound by Reason of her more Nimbleness, xness, and Agility; and it is some- s seen, that a perfect good Bitch indeed hath much Advantage of an ordinary Dog; but if the good meet with the good Bitch, there is then no Com- on, but the Dog will be her Master, in as much as exceedeth her both in Length and Strength, the again Helps in Courfing; for her Nimbleness is

then no Help, since a good Dog in the Turn will as little Ground as any Bitch whatsoever.

Dogs and Bitches for Breed. Yet thus much I would persuade all Gentlemen of the Leash to be very careful their Breeding, to breed upon the Bitches they can provide; for it is found

Experience, that the best Dogs upon an indifferent Bitch will not get so good a Whelp as an indifferent Dog on the best Bitch. And amongst these Observations breeding Greyhounds, you shall observe to have Dogs and Bitches of equal and indifferent Ages about three or four Years old at the most; but, in case of Need, your Bitch will endure a great deal longer than your Dog; and to breed with a young Dog or old Bitch, may bring forth an excellent Whelp.

The Shapes of Greyhounds. Touching the Shapes of Greyhounds (from whence you shall take the best selections for their Goodness) they are certain and most infallible; therefore, touching Greyhounds, when they are Puppies or Whelps, those which are most raw-bon'd, lean, made, sickle or crooked hough'd and generally weak in every Member, are ever likely to make the Dogs and most shapely; but such as in the first three or four Months are found and close truss'd, fat, strong and, as it were, full sum'd and knit in every Member, never prove good, swift, or comely.

Now after your Dog come to full Growth, as Year and a Half or two Years old, he should then have a fine, long, lean Head, with a sharp Nose, growing from the Eye downward; a full clear Eye, long Eye lids; a sharp Ear, short and close falling; long Neck a little bending, with a loose hanging Zand; a broad Breast; straight fore Legs; hollow hind Legs; a straight, square, and flat Back; short and strong fore Legs; a broad Space between the Hips; a strong short Tail; and a round Foot, and good large Claws. Now for the better Help of your Memory, I will give you an old Rhime left by our Fore-fathers, from which you shall understand the true Shapes of a perfect Greyhound, and this it is:

If you will have a good Tike,
Of which there are few like,
He must be headed like a Snake,
Neck'd like a Drake,
Back'd like a Beam,
Sided like a Bream,
Tail'd like a Rat,
And footed like a Cat.

These being the principal Members of a good Greyhound, if they resemble the Proportions of the Things here named, the Dog cannot chuse but be most per-

When you have thus a perfect and well-bred Greyhound, your next Rule is to subject yourself to the Dieting and Ordering him for the Pleasure to which you keep him; that bringing him to the uttermost Height or Strength of Wind, you may know the uttermost Goodness that is within him, which disorderly and Keeping will conceal, and you lose a Jewel for want of Knowledge of the Value.

Dieting of Greyhounds to course.

Dieting then of Greyhounds consisteth in several Things, viz. Food, Exercise, Exercise, and Kenneling; the first nourisheth the Body, the second the Limbs, the third the Wind, and the last the Spirits.

Of what Dieting consisteth.

To speak then first of Food, it is Two-fold, either general or particular; general, as the continual upholding and maintaining of a Dog in a good State of Body, being in good Plight and Liking; or particular, when a Dog is either poor, sick, or prepared for a Wager, standing in Need of particular Foods of Advantage.

Of Food.

The best general Foods for the ordinary keeping of a Dog in a good State of Body, is Chippings, Crusts of Bread, soft Bones or Gristles of Veal, Lamb, or such like, scalded in Beef-broth, not very salt, or other Broth, which hath been boiled Mutton, Veal, Venison, or any Kind of Pullen; or, for Want thereof, other clean Water: After your Chippings or Bread is scald-

Of general Food.

ed, you shall let it stand and cool; then, when feeding Hour cometh, you shall take as much good or Butter-milk (but the best is most wholesome) as fully, or more than whiten the same; for it is to be intended that your Water must be all drank up in Bread, and your Milk must only make it swim; with this feed your Dog Morning and Evening you come from walking him; and give him a good sufficient Meal thereof, for this will only maintain uphold him in good State of Body, being strong lusty in Flesh before.

Of particular Food.

For particular Foods, which is when Dog is poor, sick, or to be prepared Wager, they be these: First, if he be in Flesh, sickly, or weak, the best Food you can give him up withal is Sheeps Heads, Wool and all, wash'd, and break them to Pieces; then put them in Kettle, and, after the Water hath risen and is skum'd, put unto it good Store of Oat-meal, and Pot-herbs, small chop'd together, and so boil it till the Flesh be tender; then with this Meat and the Pot-feed your Greyhound Morning and Evening, and soon put him into great Lust and Strength.

Food for a Match.

If you will prepare him for Match Wager, then you shall make him this bread; take a Peck of the finest and best Oat-meal, and two Pecks of good Wheat, and grind them together, boul't the Meal through Boulting-cloth, and then scatter in amongst it a Quantity of Anniseeds and Liquorice well beaten together, knead it up with the Whites of Eggs, new and Balm mix'd together, and so bake it in pretty Loaves, reasonably hard.

Hours of Feeding.

With this Bread either scalded, or before shewed in your Chippings, into the Pottage with the Sheeps warm, feed your Dog Morning and Evening Half an Hour after Sun-rise, and Half an Hour Sun-set, when you come from walking or airing, and it will bring him to exceeding great Strength of Body and Pureness of Wind.

or the Exercise of your Greyhound, it
 fifteth likewise in two Things, Courſing
 Airing; and they be every Way as ne-
 ry as his Food, becauſe it bringeth
 ty to his Limbs and Perfection to his Wind. To
 then of Courſing, you ſhall not fail to courſe him
 eaſt twice a Week, if your Courſes be ſtrong and
 ; but thrice a Week if they be but reaſonable, as a
 or a Mile and a Half at moſt; and ſometimes if
 Courſes be ſhort, and under a Mile. In Courſing
 ſhall obſerve two Things, Blood and Labour;
 il, which is a heightening and animating of your
 to delight in the Pleaſure, when he finds the Re-
 of his Pains-taking; for if a Dog courſe conti-
 y and never kill, the Sport will grow irkſome unto
 and therefore now and then give him ſuch Advan-
 that he may kill the Hare. Then Labour, which
 ntrary to killing; for in it you muſt give the Hare
 different Advantage, both by Law and otherwiſe,
 by ſhe may ſtand long before the Dog, and make
 ew his utmoſt Strength before he be able to reach

*Of Exer-
 ciſe by
 Courſing.*

*Ordering
 Dogs after
 Courſing.*

Of Airing.

er your Dog hath courſed, if he kill,
 ſhall by no Means ſuffer him to break
 hare, but, having taken her from him,
 cleanſe his Mouth and Chaps from the
 of the Hare, and then give him to eat the Liver,
 s and Heart, and ſo take him up in your Leaſe,
 him home, and then firſt waſh his Feet in a little
 and Beer, and ſo put him up in the Kennel, and
 an Hour after feed him; for upon his Courſing
 you muſt by no Means give him any Meat,
 than a white Bread Toaſt and Butter, or a Toaſt
 il, which muſt be given before his Morning Air-
 and ſo kennell'd till he go to his Courſe.
 ching airing or walking of Grey-
 s, which is a great Nouriſher and In-
 of Wind, it muſt duly be done every Morning
 Sun-riſe, and every Evening before or after Sun-
 this Manner; as ſoon as you have open'd your
 , and rubb'd your Dog over with a clean Hair-
 you ſhall let him play a little about you before

the Kennel Door, then take him up into your Leash walk him forth into the Fields, where for the most are no Sheep or other small Cattle, which they may of Wantonness endanger, and there let him loose, give him leave to play and scope about you, so that he may piss and empty his Body; which, when he has done sufficiently, you shall then take him up in the Leash again, and so walk him home and kennel him. This you shall do after the same Manner in the Evening and also if your Dog be strong and lusty, at Night after Supper, and then bring him Home to the Fire, there let him stretch and bask himself, and with your Hand grope and cleanse him from Ticks and other vermin which done, lead him to the Kennel, and shut him in for all Night.

Of Kennelling the Greyhound.

Now for the Kennelling of Greyhounds it is a right necessary Action, and must be performed with all Diligence; for it being in the Dog Lust, Spirit, and Nimbleness prevents divers Mischances, and keeps his Powers from spending till Time of Necessity; therefore you shall by no Means suffer your Dog to go out of the Kennel, but in the Hours of Feeding, Exercising, Coursing, or when you have other necessities to do about him.

CHAP. II.

The Laws of the Leash or Coursing, as they were commanded, allowed, and subscribed by Thomas Duke of Norfolk, in the Reign of Queen Elizabeth.

NOW, lastly, touching the Laws of the Leash or Coursing, though they be uncertainly received, and alter with Mens various Opinions, yet these which were written were held for authentical once, and intirely received, and subscribed unto by many noble and worthy Personages, suiting fully with the Reason and Grounds of the Pastime.

First, therefore, it was ordered, that he which should be chosen Fewterer, or Letter-loose of the Greyhound,

ould receive the Greyhounds match'd to run together
his Leash, as soon as he came into the Field, and to
ow next to the Hare-finder till he came unto the
m; and no Horseman or Footman, on Pain of Dis-
ce, to go before them, or on either Side, but directly
ind, the Space of forty Yards, or thereabouts.

Item. That not above one Brace of Greyhounds to
urse a Hare at one Instant.

Item. That the Hare-finder shall give the Hare three
nows before he put her from her Leat, to make the
yghounds gaze, and attend her Rising.

Item. That the Fewterer shall give the Hare twelve-
e Law ere he loose the Greyhounds, except it be in
nger of losing Sight.

Item. That Dog which giveth the first Turn, if after
Turn be given, there be neither Slip nor Wrench
ordinary, then he which gave the first Turn shall
held to win the Wager.

Item. If one Dog give the first Turn, and the other
the Hare, then he which bore the Hare shall win.

Item. If one Dog give both the first Turn and last
m, and no other Advantage between them, that odd
m shall win the Wager.

Item. That a Coat shall be more than two Turns and
o-by, or the Bearing of the Hare equal with two
ms.

Item. If neither Dog turn the Hare, then he which
eth last at the Covert shall be held to win the Wa-

Item. If one Dog turn the Hare, serve himself, and
her again, those two Turns shall be as much as 2
at.

Item. If all the Course be equal, then he only which
rs the Hare shall win; and if she be not borne, then
Course must be adjudged dead.

Item. If he which comes first in to the Death of the
e takes her up and saves her from Breaking, cherish-
the Dogs, and cleanseth their Mouths from the
ol or other Filth of the Hare, for such Courtesy done,
all in courtesy challenge the Hare, but not doing it,
all have no Right, Privilege, or Title therein.

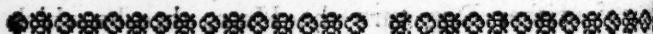
Item. If any Dog shall take a Fall in the Course, yet perform his Part, he shall challenge the Advantage of a Turn more than he giveth.

Item. If one Dog turn the Hare, serve himself, give divers Coats, yet in the End stand still in the Field the other Dog without Turn giving, running Home to the Covert, that Dog which stood still in the Field shall be then adjudged to lose the Wager.

Item. If any Man shall ride over a Dog, and overthrow him in his Course (tho' the Dog were the worst Dog in Opinion) yet the Party for the Offence shall either receive the Disgrace of the Field, or pay the Wager; for between the Parties it shall be adjudged in his Course.

Item. Those which are chosen Judges of the Leash shall give their Judgments presently, before they depart from the Field; or else, he in whose Default it is shall pay the Wager, by a general Voice and Sentence.

And thus much for the Laws of Coursing, and the Particularities which do depend thereupon; all which I submit unto the Correction and Amendment of the worthy and well-knowing Gentlemen, who, having the Office of the Leash conferr'd upon them, have both Authority and Power to make Laws therein, according to the Customs of Countries, and the Rules of Reason.



Of Hunting.

C H A P. I.

Of Hunting, and of all the particular Knowledges belonging thereunto.

AS the Chases are many which we daily hunt, so that of the Stag, the Buck, the Roe, the Hare, the Fox, the Badger, the Otter, the Boar, Goat, and such like; so the Pursuers or Conquerors of these Chases (speaking of Hunting only) are but one Kind of Creatures; namely, Hounds.

The Diversity of Hounds.

Now of these Hounds there are divers
 nds, as the Slow-Hound, which is a
 e great Dog, tall and heavy, and are
 d for the most Part in the *West Countries*
 his Kingdom, as also in *Cheshire* and *Lancashire*, and
 ft of the woodland and mountainous Countries; then
 middle-siz'd Dog, which is more fit for the Chase,
 ng of a more nimble Composure, and are bred in
 rcestershire and *Bedfordshire*, and many other well-
 t Soils, where the Champaign and Covert are of
 al Largeness; then the light, nimble, swift, slender
 g, which is bred in the *North Parts* of this Kingdom,
Yorkshire, *Cumberland*, *Northumberland*, and many
 er plain Champaign Countries: And lastly, the little
 gle, which may be carried in a Man's Glove, and
 red in many Countries for Delight only, being of
 ous Scent, and passing cunning in his Hunting;
 the most Part tiring (but seldom killing) the Prey, ex-
 at some strange Advantage.

These Hounds are of divers Colours, and, accor-
 to their Colours, so we elect them for the
 se: As thus, for Example, the white Hound, or
 white with black Spots, or the white with some
 liver Spots, are the principal and best to com-
 e your Kennel of, and will indeed hunt any Chase
 eeding well; especially the Hare, Stag, Buck, Roe,
 Otter, for they will well endure both Woods and
 eters; yet if you demand which is the best, and most
 atiful of all Colours for the general Kennel, then I
 ver the white with the black Ears, and a black Spot
 he setting on of the Tail, and are ever found both of
 d Scent and good Condition. The black Hound,
 black tann'd, or he that is all Liver-hue'd, or the
 k-white, which is the true Talbot, are best for the
 ng or Lyam, for they do delight most in Blood, and
 e a natural Inclination to hunt dry-Foot; and of
 e the largest is ever best, and most comely. The
 el'd, which are ever most commonly shaghair'd, or
 other Colour, whether it be mixt or unmixt, so it be
 g-hair'd are the best Verminers, and therefore are
 en to hunt the Fox, Badger, or any other hot Scent.
 ey are also exceeding good and cunning Finders; and

therefore of Huntsmen not thought amiss to have one, a Couple, in every Kennel.

*The Shape
and Pro-
portion of
Hounds.*

For the Shape of your Hound, it must according to the Climate where he is bred, and according to the natural Composition of his Body; as thus: If you would choose a large, heavy, slow, true Talbot-Hound, you must chuse him which hath a round, thick Head, with a short Nose, uprising, and large Nostrils, which shews that he is of a good and quick Scent; his Ears exceeding large, thin, and down hanging, much lower than his Chaps, and the Flews of his Upper-lips almost two Inches lower than his Neithers; his Chaps, which shews a merry deep Mouth and a good Ringer; his Back strong and strait, yet rather rising inwardly yielding, which shews much Toughness and Indurance; his Fillets should be thick and great, which approve a quick gathering up of his Legs without Parting; his Huckle-bones round and hidden, which shews they will not tire; his Thighs round, and his Hams strong, which shews Swiftnes; his Tail long and Rush-grained, that is big at the setting on and small downward, which shews a perfect strong Chine and a good Wind; his Hair under his Belly hard and stiff, which shews Vigor and Ability to endure Labour in all Weather and in all Places; his Legs large and lean, which shews Nimbleness in leaping or climbing; his Foot round, high knuckled and well clawed, with a dry hard Sole, which shews he will never furbate, and the general Composition of his Body so just and even, that no Leveler can distinguish whether his Hinder or Fore-Part be higher; all which shew him of much Ability, and in his Labour he will seldom find any Annoyance: if you will chuse a swift, light Hound, then must his Head be more slender and his Nose more long, his Ears and Flews more shallow, his Back broad, his Body gaunt, his Tail small, his Joints long, his Foot round, and his general Composition much more slender and Greyhound-like; and thus in the generality for the Choice of Part: And all your *Yorkshire* Hounds, whose Virtue can praise no further than for Scent and Swiftnes, to speak of their Mouths, they have only a little Sweet

weetness like a Jigg, but no Depth or Ground like
ore solemn Musick.

Now to speak of the Composition of Kennels; though there is a most certain known
terhood, yet it is to Men like Beauty,
ch allowing best of that which agrees with

*The Com-
position of
Kennels.*

s own Affection; therefore when you intend to set up
Kennel of Hounds, examine your Fancy what be the
st Pleasures you take in Hounds, whether it be cun-
ing in Hunting, Sweetness, Loudness, or Deepness of
y; whether it be for the training of your Horse, or
le but meerly for the Exercise of your own Body, be-
g otherwise subject to Grossness and Infirmary.

If it be for cunning Hunting, you shall
reed your Dogs from the slowest and largest
f the *Northern* Hounds, and the swiftest
nd slenderest of the *West Country* Hounds,
eing both Male and Female, approved to

*The mid-
dle-sized
Dog for
Cunning.*

e staunch, fair and even running, of perfect fine Scent,
nd not given to lye off, or look for Advantages. These
Hounds will neither be so exceeding slow, that you will
waste many Days without some Fruit of your Labour;
or so unnimble, that you shall need Men to help them;
ver every Hedge, as I have many Times seen to my
much Wonder; but having both Strength and Nimble-
ness will hold you in continual Delight and Exercise; for
these middle-siz'd Dogs are neither so swift that they will
far out-run the Scent, and so fetch many tedious Rings to
recover it; nor so slow, that for want of Speed they will
lose the Scent and let it grow cold, by their own Lazi-
ness; but being ever and anon upon it, bring the Chase
to such a narrow Exigent, that the poor Beast shall be
forced to try all the Skill Nature or Strength hath lent it:
to preserve Life: And the Hounds on the other Side all
their Pains, and the Huntsman's Cunning to undo the
intricate Doubles, Skips, Squats and Windings, with
which they shall be perplexed; and in this Mediocrity of
Hunting, shall your Eye (if the Covert be not too ex-
tream thick) take a perfect View of all the Art and Cun-
ning in every Passage; so that I conclude the middle-siz'd
Hound, of good Strength, sound Mouth, and reasonable
Speed,

Speed, which will make a Horse gallop fast, and not run is the best for the true Art and Use of Hunting.

*For Sweet-
ness of Cry.*

If you would have your Kennel for Sweetness of Cry, then you must compound it with some large Dogs, that have deep solemn Mouths, and are swift in spending, which must as well bear the Bass in the Concert; then a double Number of roaring and loud ringing Mouths, which must bear the Counter Tenor; then some hollow plain sweet Mouths, which must bear the Mean or Middle Part; and so with these three Parts of Musick you shall make your Cry perfect: And herein you shall observe that the Hounds, thus mixt, do run just and even together, and not hang off loose one from another, which is the visible Sight that may be; and you shall understand, that this Composition is best to be made of the swiftest and largest deep mouth'd Dog, the slowest middle-siz'd Dog, and the shortest legg'd slender Dog; amongst these you cast in a Couple or two of small singing Beagles, which, as small Trebles, may warble amongst them, and the Cry will be a great deal the sweeter.

*For Loud-
ness of Cry.*

If you would have your Kennel for Loudness of Mouth, you shall not then chuse the hollow deep Mouth, but the loud clanging Mouth, which spendeth freely and sharply, and as well were redoubleth in the Utterance; and if you mix with them the Mouth that roareth, and the Mouth that whineth, the Cry will be both the louder and smarter; and these Hounds are for the most Part of the middle Size, neither extream tall, nor extream deep flewed, such as for the most Part your *Shropshire*, and *Worcestershire* Dogs are; and the more equally you compound these Mouths, having as many Roarers as Spencers, and as many Whiners as of either of the other, the louder and pleasanter your Cry will be, especially if you be in sounding tall Woods, or under the Eccho of Rocks.

*For Deep-
ness of Cry.*

If you would have your Kennel for Deepness of Mouth, then you shall compound it with the largest Dogs, which have the greatest Mouths and deepest Flews, such as your *West Country*, *Cheshire* and *Lancashire* Dogs are; and to five or six Couple of Bass Mouths, you shall not add above two

Couple

ouple of Counter Tenors, as many Means, and not above one Couple of Roarers, which being heard but now and then, as at the opening or hitting of a Scent, will give much Sweetness to the Solemnness and Gravities of the Cry, and the Musick thereof will be much more delightful to the Ears of every Listener.

If you would have your Kennel for the training of your Horse only, labouring hereby to bring him to the full Perfection of Speed, Truth and Toughness, then you

For training of Horses.

shall compound your Kennel of the lightest, nimblest and swiftest Dogs, such as for the most Part all your Northern Hounds are, which running swiftly away with the chase, will draw your Horse up to that extraordinary speed, that he will forget all Ease or Loitering, and acquaint himself daily with the Violence of such Exercise; being so familiar therewith, that in the End it will be less troublesome to him than a slow Gallop, and hence it was and is that the North Parts are so famous for the Truth and Swiftness of their Horses above all other countries in this Kingdom: For it is most certain that their Horses are not better bred there, than in other places, but their Exercise is much stronger and violent, through the natural Swiftness of their Hounds; insomuch, that unless a Horse, either out of Nature or Education, be brought to a more than ordinary Speed, it is impossible that his Master should either see Sport, or keep up with his Companions.

Therefore I would have all young Gentlemen, which are addicted to the Delight of hunting or Running Horses, by all Means train them up after the swiftest Hounds;

A good Caveat for Gentlemen.

or it is the greatest Deceit and Couzenage a Man can bestow upon himself to do the contrary, as I have seen many Times in mine own Experience, when a Gentleman who hath supposed his Hounds to be swift, which indeed were but of a middle Speed, and hath seen his Horse follow them all Day lustily and strongly, in every place able to command the foremost Hound at his Pleasure, he hath immediately in his own Judgment concluded his Horse swift and matchable with the best, and from that Opinion engaged him against a known swift Horse,

Horse, for great Sums of Money; then when the Day of Trial hath been come, the Horse which had been trained after slow Dogs, coming to follow those that were indeed swift, hath been drawn so far beyond the usual Manner of former Exercise, that he hath given over the Chace before the Day hath been half spent.

This Caveat I give for all Mens Instruction, because I have seen the Loss which hath grown thereby. And now to return to my Purpose: Your Kennel thus composed of the swiftest Hounds, you shall, as nigh as you can, sort their Mouths into three equal Parts of Musick; that is to say, Bass, Counter Tenor, and Mean. The Bass are those Mouths which are most deep and solemn, and are spent out plain and freely, without redoubling; the Counter Tenor are those which are most low and ringing, whose sharp Sounds pass so swift, that they seem to double and make Division; and the Mean are those which are soft and sweet Mouthed, that though plain and a little hollow, yet are spent smooth and freely, yet distinctly that a Man may count the Notes as they open. Of these three Sorts of Mouths, if your Kennel be (as near as you can) equally compounded, you shall find it most perfect and delectable; for though they have not the Thunder and Loudness of the great Dogs, which may be compared to the high Wind-Instruments, yet they will have the tunable Sweetness of the best compounded Concerts; and sure a Man may find as much Art and Delight in a Lute, as in an Organ.

*Objections
against
swift
Hounds.*

But here, methinks, a too tender Lover of a Horse stands at my Elbow, and points me by the Ear, with this Objection, that to train Horses after Dogs of this exceeding Swiftness, will be a Labour of that Violence which a young Horse will hardly endure; for first, it will draw him so suddenly from his Wind, that it will breed stopping in his Body, and choking up the Passages of his Breath, hazard the Breaking of his Lungs, the Rim of his Belly, as hath been many Times seen in Horses of great Metal: Next the Horse being young and unacquainted with Exercise, it will breed in him Weariness and Loathing of his Labour, and nothing well done, that is not done with Delight: Lastly, the

Ho

Horse being foul of Body and unpurged, it may melt his Grease too soon, strain his Sinews and tender Grissels too much, and breed many Diseases foul and incurable, of which only too violent Labour is the Ground-work.

To this Objection, I thus answer; that albeit the Labour be for the Time most violent, yet it is not of so long Continuance as that which is more slow, and to run twelve Score swiftly, is not so painful as to walk twenty Miles; for you must understand that these swift Hounds, out of their Mettle and Swiftnesse, do soon over-shoot and run beyond the Scent, and then retiring back upon it again, give the Horse Time to ease himself and catch new Breath; whereas the slower Dogs carrying the Scent ever before them, keep your Horse to a continual Labour, which is more painful, and makes him a tough enduring Lackey, but not a most swift-running Gentleman; besides, the many Faults, Castings about of the swift Dogs, add such a Comfort unto the Horse, who perceiveth the Strength of his Labour to have no Ease till he come up to those Faults, that he will, out of the Willingness of his own Nature, double his Courage to pursue them most swiftly; seeing his Ease is ever the greater, by how much he keepeth ever nearer to the Hounds. For the Danger of bursting, melting his Grease, and other Infirmities, the Discretion of the Rider and Skill of the Keeper must prevent; and be assured, those Dangers may happen as well after the slowest Dogs, as the swiftest.

But to my Purpose; since Hounds are the Subject of my Discourse, you shall understand that these swift Hounds are, as is before-said, out of their Haste, Nimbleness and Mettle, more subject to make Defaults than other Hounds, yet full as curious and good of Scent as any other, as you shall perceive by the quick Knowledge and Apprehension of their own Errors, casting about of themselves and recovering the Scent, and so going away with the same, before any Huntsman can come in to help them; yet I would wish every Gentleman-like Husbandman, in the Composition of this Kennel, to have some staunch old Dogs amongst them, which running more soberly, yet close with them, may

The Answer.

Correction of the Haste of swift Hounds.

may sit upon the Scent when they overshoot it, and so call them back, and give them their Loss without more Trouble. Also I would have both in this Kennel, and every other, a Couple at least of good Finders, being Dogs staunch of Mouth, and not able to open, except they lye upon a certain Trail; for these will be great Furtherance of your Sport, and make your younger Dogs a great deal more mute and painful.

*Of the
Highway
Hounds.*

You shall also in this, and all other Kennels, have at least a Couple of good Highway Dogs; that is to say, Hounds of such Cunning and perfect Scent, that they will hunt as well upon a dry, hard Highway (where you cannot prick forth the Passage of your Chace) as upon the freshest Mould; or will hunt as truly through Flocks of Sheep, or Herds of Cattle, as upon the Grounds where few or no Beasts come. These are called Hounds for the Highway, or Guides of the Kennel, and are exceedingly necessary and fit for all Mens Pleasure, for they take from the Huntsman both Sense of Pain and Anger.

*The Kennel
for Ex-
ercise of
Body.*

Lastly, if you would compose a Kennel only for the Exercise of your own Body, or Maintenance of Health, you shall first draw into your Consideration your own Ability, as whether you will take your Exercise on Foot or Horseback. If your Delight and Ability draw you to hunt on Foot, then I would wish you to compose your Kennel of the biggest and slowest Dogs you can get, respecting only cunning Hunting and Depth of Mouth, and this Kennel you shall make so staunch and obedient to your Command, that when they are upon the hottest Scent, or in the Earnestness of the Chace, to step before them, and cast your hunting Pole but before their Eyes, they shall suddenly stop and hunt after you in full Cry, with no more Speed than it shall please you to lead them; and then, when you please to let them go before you again, to pass away with the Scent roundly, and without Stay.

This Manner of Hunting will carry with it a two-fold Delight; the one of enjoying the Musick of their Voices, the other the Cunning of their Noses: Each striving to

before, yet none presuming, without Leave, to go before. By this Rule, you shall bring the hottest and the oldest Scent to one Manner of Swiftness, and so neither send your Body with too much, nor too little Exercise. But if you will take your Exercise on Horseback, because firmity will not let you run a Foot, then you shall compose your Kennel of the slowest of the middle-sized Hounds, who shall have both good Mouths and loud, and Noses of most ready Scent and perfect Hunting; and you bring these Hounds also to the former Obedience of stopping and hunting after you, it will be exceeding good and delightful, both to your Eyes and Ears, and bring your Hounds to Temperance and Coolness in hunting; that, taking the Frenzy and Greediness of haste from their Minds, they will make your Sport much longer and less weary, than else it would be.

But some will answer me, that albeit they have Infirmities, which detain them from running a Foot, or labouring like Lackies or Drudges, yet they can endure ordinary and orderly walking, such as shall be fit for any moderate Exercise, and therefore they would hunt on Foot; yet the great Hound they like not, for two Causes: first, his chargeable and troublesome Keeping; and next, his Noisomness and pestering Company in a House that is but freight, and of no more than of necessary use. To these I answer, that it is good for them to keep the little small Mitten-Beagle, which may be a Companion for a Lady's Kirtle, and in the Field will hunt as willingly as any Hound whatsoever, only their Musick very small, like Reeds, and their Pace, like their Body, only for Exercise, and not for Slaughter.

Having thus composed your Kennel of Hounds, according to the Humour of your own Fancy and Delight, it shall be meet that you frame a Kennel or House to keep them in, wherein they may lye dry, and have their food and other Necessaries about them, without troubling your Dwelling-House, or giving Offence by their greediness or Ravening.

*Of the
Hounds
Kennel.*

This

The Situation of the Kennel.

This Kennel for Hounds should be placed a pretty Distance from your Dwelling-House near some River, Pond, Spring, or other fresh Water: It should also stand against the Side of some Bank or Hill, which, looking directly against the *East*, the Morning Sun might rise upon the same, and not lose the Sight of it, 'till at least two or three Hours after Noon; this will be a great refreshing and Comfort unto the Hounds, which love naturally to stretch, trim, and pick themselves in the Sun. Against the Side of this Hill, should be cut or digged divers large and broad Seats, one above another, containing at least five Feet in Breadth, and two Feet and a Half in Height, which Seats should be either boarded, or wattled with Stakes, and small Wands on the Sides to hold up the Earth from falling, and also close boarded aloft, where you shall lay fresh and sweet Straw for your Dogs to lie upon. The Number of these Seats should be according to the Number of your Hounds, and the Quality of the Earth in Largeness. Over these Seats should be made a close and well tiled Shed, open no Way but upon the *East*, and in such Manner that it may defend either all or most Part of these Seats from Rain, Wind, or any Tempest. From the lowest Part of these Seats forward, you shall make a large green Court, being either walled or pales, or otherwise very strong fenced about, in which your Hounds may play, sport, scummer, and do other Offices of Nature fit for their Health. Also in this Court, in the most convenient Corner of the same, you shall build a little House or Lodge, with a spacious and large Chimney in the same; wherein, in the Winter Time, you shall allow Fire, before which your Dogs (returned from Hunting) may stretch, pick, dry, and trim themselves; which is an exceeding Comfort unto them, and will make them more strong and able to endure their Labour, and also keep them wonderfully well, both from the mangy and other filthy Diseases which proceed from Colds taken after violent Heating. In this Chimney your Huntsman shall have a large Caldron, and other Necessaries; as Ladles, Skimmers, and such like, for preparing and making ready of all sorts of warm Meat, as you shall allow to them; which, if

the sweet, is called Mang; if otherwise, Carrion or Garbith. Above this lower Room shall be your Huntsman's Lodging, wherein he shall also keep his Couples, Liams, Collars, Trashes, Boxes and Pots, with Salves and Ointments, for the Cure of such Infirmities as shall happen amongst them, and all other Necessaries any Way belonging unto his Office. In another Part of the Court, and nearest unto the House, you shall place Troughs and Tubs, some for their Meat, and some for sweet Water, all which must be kept very neat and clean; and Water must by no Means at any Time be wanting, yet oft renewed, and the Vessels scoured for Sweetness sake; for the Huntsman ought to hold it for a Rule, that nothing bringeth more Health than Cleanness. Into this Kennel you shall by no Means bring at any Time Carrion, because it will make the Place unfavoury and unfit for any Man of Worth to look into, and sure it ought to be a Place fit for every worthy Eye.

Now your Kennel being thus orderly and well prepared, it is meet that I shew what Meat is best for Hounds, how it shall be prepared, and how they shall be fed: First then, observe that I only speak of Hunting Hounds; that is to say, Hounds which are in continual Use and Action; you shall understand that in their Days of Rest, the strongest and lustiest Meat you can give them, both for raising them up when they are low hunted, or for keeping them in Strength when they have Lust within them, is either Horse-flesh newly slain and warm at the Feeding, the Entrails and Garbith of Beasts (Lungs only excepted) or the Heads, Plucks, and Bowels of Sheep, or generally any Carrion which is not old, nor cold after the Death. To feed them for Perfectness of Hunting, and to keep their Scents fine, pure and clean, and to purge the Stench of the Carrion out of their Noses, that thereby they may undergo their Work with more Cunning, the best Food is to give them Mang, made either of ground Oats, Barley-meal, Bran, or Mill-dust well scalded and boiled together, or any of these two mixt together and scalded with Beef Broth, or any other Broth in which Flesh hath been sodden, so as it be not extreme

*Of feeding
of Hounds.*

Now

Now for the Use and Manner of Feeding with these Meats (as I said before) Horse-flesh, Garbish, and other Carrion, is only to breed Strength and Lust in a Hound, and is to be given only when a Hound resteth; because the Strength and Smell of the same will so cloy and stop the Hound's Nostrils that he can hardly distinguish or undertake any finer Scent, and so breed much Hindrance to his Hunting: Therefore you ought ever to feed your Hounds at least the Day before you hunt, if not more, with sweet Meat.

Now for the Manner of Feeding with Horse-flesh, or any other Carrion, you should be sure to have it a good Distance from your Kennel, and so as it may be no Annoyance either to your own Neighbours, or Travellers in the Highways; then first, before your Hounds touch it, with your Knife take off the Skin, then open the Body, take out the Bowels and rip them; then if the Body be more than either your Hounds can, or must eat, take off a Leg or a Shoulder, or such Part as you think fittest to preserve, and lay it by, then let your Hounds feed on the rest, till their Bodies be well filled; which done, draw your Hounds home, and upon some Stang for the Purpose carry with you that which you saved; which, as soon as you have shut up your Hounds, you shall bear to the River or fresh Water, and lay in the same until you have Occasion to use it; for it will keep sweet a Week or more, at least, if need require.

Now for feeding with Mang, or sweet Meat, it should ever be done the Day before you hunt; and as it is to be prepared in the Kennel, so you shall let them eat it in Troughs, within the Kennel, for that will make them take delight in the Place; and this Mang must ever be given warm and made somewhat thick; and if you white it over with Milk, or Butter-milk, and if you cast into it Chippings, Crusts of Bread, Bones, broken Meat, or Scrapings of Trenchers, it will be better, and they will eat it with more Greediness.

*Meat for
sick and
weak
Hounds.*

If you have Hounds that are poor, weak or sickly, which you would suddenly recover and bring unto Hunting, then if you take Sheep's Heads, Wool and all, and hack, hew and bruise them in many Pieces, then boil them

them with Oatmeal and Penny-royal, and make strong Pottage of the same, and give all together warm to your sick Hounds, it will suddenly recover them: If once in a Week also you give them a full Meal of warm Horse-flesh, it is very sovereign.

Now for the best Times of Feeding, it is held amongst all our best experienced Huntsmen to be in the Days of Rest, early in the Morning before Sun-rise, and in the Evening at Sun-set: But in the Days of Hunting, you shall let them go fasting out of the Kennel, and feed them as soon as you come home to the Kennel, or before in your Way homeward, if you have any Horse-flesh or other Carrion ready provided, otherwise with such Meat as you have, so it will fill their Bellies; for a Hound by no Means should be pinched of his Belly after his Labour, and therefore be sure if your Meat be coarse to fill his Guts well; if it be sweet, strong and comfortable, then less will serve him.

Best Hours of Feeding.

And here I think it meet to speak of a convenient Proportion of Food, for the Maintenance of a Kennel of good Hounds; wherein you shall understand, that three Bushels of Oats, or Barley-meal, with Half so much Bran or Mill-dust, is a fit weekly Proportion to keep nine or ten Couple of Hounds, with a little Help of Horse-flesh, if the Huntsman be a good Husband, and painful, as he ought to be, in finding out Horses, Scraps, Crusts and Bones, which almost abound in every Man's House of Worth or Reckoning; and by employing that which is saved in the Days of Labour, to increase the proportion when Need shall require. Many much larger Quantities I have known, and do know, allowed at this Day in divers Places; but I have held it Abuse to the Master, and either a Covetousness or Negligence in the Huntsman, by whose unskilful Greediness I have seen many tired out of their Pleasures: Therefore, be assured, this Quantity already named will fully suffice; nay, even to please a most wanton Curiosity, and surely much less if the painful Huntsman have the Government; for I shall never see fairer or better kept Hounds, than I have seen maintained with Half this Proportion: But as I would not be too lavish in my Directions, so I would much less be

A Proportion of Meat.

be too strait handed, hoping that every Man of Honesty and Trust will order his Affairs with Discretion,

*Ordering
of Hounds
after Hunt-
ing.*

Now for the ordering of your Hounds after they have done Hunting; you shall if you feed them abroad, or otherwise, as soon as you bring them into the Kennel wash all their Feet, either with a little warm Butter and Beer, Beef-broth, or Water wherein Mallowes and Nettles have been boiled soft and tender; you shall pick every Clay, and search the Foot for Thorns, Stubs or any other Prickings; you shall look that the Straw whereon they lye be sweet and fresh; and, if it be in the Strength of Winter, after they are fed, you shall suffer them, for an Hour or two, to bask and stretch themselves before the Fire, ere they go to lye down for all Night and by no Means trouble them as long as they lick, pick or trim themselves; but that once finished, you shall force them from the Fire, and make them find out their Lodgings.

CHAP. II.

The Curing of all Manner of Infirmities in Hounds.

Of killing Fleas and Lice.

I Will begin with the killing of Fleas and Lice, and such like Vermin in Hounds, which proceeds from filthy Keeping, rotten and moist Lodging, and want of shifting of Straw, when it grows short by much lying on. If then your Hound be troubled with Fleas or Lice, you shall take Rue, or Herb of Grace, four or five Handfuls, and boil it in a Gallon of running Water, till a Pottle be full consumed; then strain it through a coarse Cloth, and put to it two Ounces of strong Starke beaten to Powder; and, being warm, bathe your Hound therewith, and it will destroy them.

To kill Worms.

If your Hound be troubled with Worms, which is very general amongst them, especially the young Hounds, then you shall take a Pint of new Milk, and mix it with

good Quantity of Brimstone, and so give it luke-warm into the Hound, and it will not only scower away all manner of Worms, but all other Filthiness bred in the body of a Hound, either by Labour or Surfeit.

Bite of venomous Beasts.

If your Dog have been bitten by either Snake, Adder, any other venomous Thing, take the Herb Calamint, and beat it in a Mortar with Turpentine and yellow Wax till it comes to a Salve, and then apply it to the Sore and it will heal it: Also if you boil the Herb in Milk, and give the Dog it to drink, it will expel all inward Poison.

Bite of a Mad Dog.

If your Hound have been bitten by a Mad Dog, which is a Disease exceeding dangerous and mortal, you shall presently wash the Place so bitten with Sea Water, or a very strong Brine, and it will save and cure him; else take the Herb called Yarrow, and beat a Handful thereof in a Mortar with a Handful of Wheat till it comes to a Salve, and then lay it to the Sore and it will heal it; and if you pour into his Stomach as much Mithridate as a Hazle-Nut, dissolved in sweet Wine, it will wonderfully scour and preserve him from the Infection of the inward Poison.

Of a Mad Dog, and the Signs.

The Infirmary of Madnes itself in Dogs is common and oft to be seen, and though it be altogether incurable, if a Man be experienced in the first Signs or Characters of Madnes, he may prevent divers Mischiefs and most mortal Evils which ensue for want of such knowledge; and albeit he lose one Dog, yet he may save all the rest. The first Signs thereof, to know when a Dog is entering into this Disease, is a melancholy setting himself from other Dogs, and walking up and down alone, oft casting up his Head into the Wind and looking upward; his Tail, at the setting on, rising upward, and the rest hanging down; his Mouth will foam and be full of Slaver or white Froth; as he runneth up and down he will hastily snatch at every Thing that he meeteth

meeteth with, yet but only giving one Snatch away; his Eyes will be red and more fiery than other Dogs, and his Breath will be strong and of a filthy Smell. Any of these Signs when you shall perceive, you shall presently separate him from other Dogs and kill him for unto the Disease is no Cure.

Of Gallings.

If your Hound be gall'd, or his Skin torn in any Place, you shall only take *May Butter*, yellow *Wax*, and a little unslack'd *Lime*, beaten together like a *Salve*, and therewith anoint the sore Place, and it is a present Cure.

Of a Tetter.

If your Hound (as they are much incident thereunto) have upon him any Tetter or dry Scab, you shall take of black *Ink*, the Juice of *Mint* and *Vinegar*, of each like Quantity, and mix them together with the Powder of *Brimstone* till it be like a *Salve*; then anoint the Tetter therewith till it bleed, and it will soon kill and cure it.

For the Itch.

If your Hounds be troubled with the Itch, you shall take *Nerve-oil*, and beat it with *Quicksilver* till the *Quicksilver* be kill'd, and the *Salve* turned to a pale yellow Colour; then with the same anoint the Dog before a good Fire, and chafe it well in against the Hair, and it will cure him.

Of the Mange or Scab.

But if your Hound be troubled with the *Scab* or *Mange*, then you shall take a Penny worth or two of the best *Gunpowder* you can buy, and mixing it with strong *Wine Vinegar*, make it thick like *Puddle*; and with the same anoint all the Places where he scratches till they bleed, and it will kill the *Mange*. There are others which use to cast their Dogs into the *Lime* of *Tanners* or *Glovers*, and force them to swim up and down the same, and it will kill the *Mange*; yet there must be a great Care taken in putting the Dogs in, and doing it rashly, the *Lime-water* get into their Ears.

is very dangerous, and will hazard their burning

Of Wounds.

your Hound shall receive any Wound, whether it be sharp or blunt Weapons, or any Accident whatsoever, although his own Tongue be a sovereign Remedy, if it be in any Part where either he can or cannot reach, the best Cure is to wash it with warm Butter and Turpentine mix'd together, and then anoint it with a little Turpentine; but if it be a hollow Wound, and of force be rent, then you shall either tent it with Butter and Oatmeal wrought together to a Salve, with yellow Wax and Deer Suet. There be some will use for a Tent a small Candle's End, and that is very good, if the Tallow be sweet; but if it be putrid, then it will poison and corrupt the Wound.

Of a Canker in the Ear.

your Hounds be troubled with a Canker in their Ear, which is a Grief much incident unto them, you shall first tent the Hole, if you find any, with dry Cotton; then afterwards wash the Sore with Vinegar and Turpentine mixt together, 'till the Flesh looks raw, and dry it with burnt Allum only.

Of Scurfing.

your Hound be scurfed, you shall wash his Feet with Butter and Beer boiled together, and then bind to the Sides of his Feet young red Nettles chopt very small, beaten in a Mortar 'till they come to a Salve.

Of Bruises.

in any Manner of Bruise which shall happen to your Hound, either by Rush, Spurn, Stroke, or otherwise, if it appear swell'd outwardly, you shall bathe the Place with Chickweed and Groundsel, boil'd in strong Ale, 'till they be soft, and that will allay the Swelling; if the Bruise be inward, then you shall with a Horn beat the Dog a Pint of new Milk, and a Quarter of an Ounce of Spermaceti well mixt together, or for want of

K

Spermaceti.

Spermaceti, double the Quantity of Stone-pitch be to fine Powder.

For the Stone.

If your Hound be troubled with the Stone or filthy Matter, which maketh him that he cannot you shall take the Seeds of the Herb *Granum Solis* Gromel, and bruising them, give them to the Hound Half a Pint of White Wine.

For Costiveness.

If your Hound (as it is very natural to Dogs) costive that he can by no Means skummer, you shall take a Piece of a Tallow-Candle, about three Fingers Length, thrust it a good Way into the Tuel of Hound, and then hold down his Tail hard a Quarter an Hour, or more, and then give it Liberty; when he hath emptied his Belly, you shall give him drink five or six Spoonfuls of Sallet-oil, and it cleanse him sufficiently.

For any Disease in the Ears.

If your Hound be troubled with any Disease in Ears, whether it be a continual Running, or any Imposthumation, you shall take Verjuice and Chalk Water, and mix them together; then each Morning and Evening drop a Spoonful or two thereof into the Ears, and you shall find it a present Remedy.

For sore Eyes.

If your Dog at any Time be troubled with sore of what Nature or Quality soever the Grief be, you shall take a Leaf or two of Ground-Ivy, then chewing it in your Mouth and sucking out the Juice, spit the Juice into the Dog's Eyes, Morning and Evening, and it will cure them. This Ground-Ivy is a little round, jagged Leaf, and grows in the Bottom of Hedges.

For broken Bones.

If your Hound shall happen to break a Leg, or other Bone, you shall first with your Hand place it in true Place, and see that it stand straight and even

it in the warm Oil of Swallows, or the Oil of Mar-
 je Apples, and wrap it about two or three Times in
 arcloth, made of yellow Wax and Deer Suet; which
 e, splint it with flat Splints of Wood, then roll it
 a strong Roller, and let it so rest nine Days at least,
 re you unsplint it; but remove not the Searcloth for
 en Days, and you shall see the Bone will knit strongly
 firmly.

C H A P. III.

Of the Breeding of all Manner of Hounds.

HAVING thus passed over the Election of Hounds,
 Composition of Kennels, Dieting and Curing of
 orts of Diseases, I hold it meet now to follow
 some short Precepts, for the Breeding of Hounds,
 use it is exceeding hard for any Man to have a Ken-
 of Hounds, from Gift or Purchase, without much
 refection.

no' one Friend give you a good
 d, another sell you a good Hound,
 ow their Goodness will agree when
 run together, is very disputable; and
 unless your Hounds have one Speed,
 uneableness of Voice, and one Manner of Hunt-
 your Pastime will be very disorderly, which there
 Way so easily and truly to avoid, as by the Breeding
 ur Hounds; for one and the same Birth produceth
 d the same Qualities; therefore, having a Hound
 Bratch of that Size, Voice, Speed, Scent, Pro-
 n, and general Goodness, which agreeth best with
 own Nature and Condition;

h shall put them together to engender
 eed, either in *January, February,* or
 s, according as they shall grow proud,
 e are the three most principal Months
 Year for Hound Bitches, or Bratches, to be limed
 t but that they may conceive and bring forth as
 Whelps in other Months, but because there will be
 Loss of Time in the entering of them; for if a

*Hounds
 must suit
 one ano-
 ther.*

*The
 Months to
 Breed in*

Bratch be limed in *January*, she will whelp her Litter *March*, and so they will be ready to enter in the first beginning of Hunting-Time; if she be limed in *February*, will whelp in *April*; and if she be limed in *March*, she will whelp in the *May* following; and in all these three Months there is not a Day's Loss for the entering of the Whelp, which is an especial Care to be observed by Huntsmen.

Under

which

Signs to

breed.

Also if you shall let your Hounds enter in the three Months aforesaid, you must not forget to observe, as near as you can, that when you put the Dog and Bitch together, the Moon be either in the Sign of *Aquarius*, or *Gemini*; for it is held amongst the Huntsmen of this Land, that the Whelps which are gender'd under those two Signs, will never run, and for the most Part the Litter will have, at least double so many Dog Whelps, as Bitch Whelps.

*Ordering
of Bratches
after
whelping.*

When your Bratch is near whelping, hath whelped, you shall separate her from other Hounds, and have a private Kennel for her, where she may be alone, without the Company of other Hounds, and you shall duly every Night see her kennel'd in the same, that she may take Acquaintance and Delight therein; and when you feed her, particularly, you shall feed her in the same Kennel, that taking a Love thereto, she may not run out upon unfit and unwholesome Places to whelp, for where a Bratch first whelpeth her Litter, if that Kennel be removed, she will not leave carrying her Whelps down till she have found the same Place again, or some other, perhaps, more unfit than the former, and the Carriage of Whelps by the Dam is very ill and dangerous. This Kennel, where your Whelps shall be kept, shall not be kept close, but open, that the Bratches may have Liberty to go up and down, after twenty or thirty Hours Space, which Time she shall be kept very close and warm, that she may perform the Office of a Dam to her Whelps.

*When to
wean
Whelps.*

You shall not suffer your Whelps to be above two Months at the most, but you shall wean them; and, if they will, you keep be of great Resort and man

you shall let your Cook bring up your best Whelps, and your Dairy-Maid your second Best, and Rest you shall put forth amongst your Friends or Servants, according unto the Love you possess in the Country.

Now when your Whelps are brought up, they shall not enter them into Hunting, but they be at least a Year and a Half old, thus: If your Whelps were whelped in March, then you shall not enter them until September twelve Months after; and, if they were whelped in May, then you shall enter them in October come twelve Months after, and so forth for the rest of the Months.

When to enter Whelps.

Now for the Manner of your entering Whelps, you shall draw them Abroad in the pleasantest of the Day, with the most

How to enter Whelps.

rich and best Hunting-Hounds you have, leaving at home all babbling and flying Curs; and, if you can, you shall have your Hare ready set before you come, so that the Hare is the principal Chase you can enter upon (and then putting her from her Form, and making her perfectly which Way she taketh, after the Scent is a little cooled, lay on your Hounds, and give them the Advantages you can for the hunting of her, as by Wind, View, Hollow, or pricking her Passage; and if by any chance you shall chance to kill her, you shall immediately bring her from the Hounds, and not suffer them to break her for it is an evil Custom; but yourself, stripping away the Skin, shall cut her all to Pieces, and give every one of her to your young Whelps, which will breed in them great Courage and Delight in Hunting.

Observations in the entering of Whelps.

You shall observe in the entering of your Whelps, that they hunt fair and without Advantage, or seeking any way to gain their own Ease, as by lying down from the Scent, thwarting or crossing when they are behind, to get even with the fore-Hounds; any of which when you perceive, you shall immediately beat them in with your Hunting-Hounds, and compel them to take the Scent before them. If any of them be giddy-headed and out of Mettle,

will

will run before the other Hounds, clean from the Scent in this Case also you shall beat them soundly back, bring them back to the Scent, and force them to tal with the Rest of the Kennel. Likewise if any young Hound will not strike upon a Default, but run babb away without the Scent, drawing away the Rest of the Kennel to follow him, in this Case also you shall scold him back, and compel him to stand and labour upon the Default 'till some of the elder Hounds undertake it; you shall cherish all, both with Horn and Voice, the Chase.

Lastly, if you find that any of your young Whelps trust more to his own Scent, than to the Rest of his Pack, lows, and so by that Means hunteth at least two or three Score sometimes behind the Rest, making his Default by his own Nose, and not their own leading, yet is he very just and true: In this Case you shall by the same Means over-go or over-ride the Whelp, but give him all the Comfort and Encouragement you can, and let him take his own Time and Leisure, for Use and Experience will quickly make him skilful, and the Skill will soon carry him up amongst his Fellows, where he will soon become a principal Leader. And thus much of Hounds, and the Composition of Kennels.

C H A P. IV.

Of all the several Chases which Hounds are to be used in.

THERE hath already (by many well experienced Men) been so much written on this Subject, that I know not well what to write, except I should in some Sort repeat another Man's Tale; from which I am very different, (having vowed to myself by no Means to meddle with any thing formerly written) that the strict Examiner whatsoever, shall not find me guilty of the least Blemish therein; yet since I must necessarily in this Case write something, I will as briefly as I can set down some material and special Notes, and for the meantime, if they desire a long continued Circumstance (though this is sufficient for any understanding Whelp)

unto old *Tristram's* Book, translated by Mr. Tur-
 tile, and such other Books, where they may find
 pleat Satisfaction.

To speak then first of the Stag, which is
 most princely and royal Chace of all
 ces, and for whom, indeed, this Art of
 hunting was first found out and invented;

*Of the Stag
 and his
 Profits.*

is of all Beasts the goodliest, stateliest, and most
 ly, and for the Use of Man the fullest, both
 outward and inward Profit: As in his Flesh for
 Nourishment of Man's Body, and in his other
 mbers for Helps in Physick, as the Bone in
 Heart, which is sovereign for all inward faint
 nesses, for Poison, the Plague, and hard Travail
 Women; his Blood excellent for all Kinds of
 es, and to make the Skin white and smooth; his
 le good for the Cholick and Bloody-Flux; his
 in a most sovereign Cordial against Venom; his Suet
 for Swellings, Gouts and Humours; and his Skin,
 h is an ever-during and gentlemanly Cloathing: And
 Stags, the oldest and greatest is the best.

the perfect Signs to know an old Stag by
 these: If when you take his View upon
 Ground, you see he hath a large Foot,
 thick Heel, and a deep Printing, an open

*How to
 know an
 old Stag.*

, and a long Space, then be assured he is old; also
 his Leg be long and his Bone thick, it shews Age;
 es your old Stag doth not over-reach when your
 younger Deer doth; and you shall know his Age by his
 are, as thus: If it be printed (as it will be from *July*
August) or writhen round, or flat, or broad, as it
 be in *June*, and therewithal be gross and fatty, then
 an old Stag; but if contrarily small and dry, then
 but a young Deer. Again, you shall know his
 by the Tines of the Horns; for if he have ten,
 e, or fourteen Tines, he is a Deer of reasonable
 but if the Beam be thick and great, then he is an
 deer; so if he carry but some six or eight Tines and
 all Beam, then he is a young Deer, and not above
 or four Years old; for the red Deer is said the first
 to have no Head, the second but only Daggers,
 the third Tines.

*The cast of
Hends.*

Stags yearly cast their Heads in *March, April, May, or June*, and in no other Month according to the Goodness of the Soil where in they feed; for the richest Ground beareth ever earliest Deer, and a Deer is never said to be in Season nor may he by good Rule be hunted, till he have his Head.

*How to
find a Deer.*

The principallest Quality in a Huntsman is, to know how and where to find a Deer; for if he be ignorant in their Haunts, he may wander long, and lose much Labour: Therefore he shall know that a red Deer naturally haunteth in *November* amongst Furs, Vines, or thick Shrubs; in *December* amongst thick and strong Woods; in *January*, in Corn Fields of Wheat and Rye; in *February* and *March* amongst young and thick Bushes; in *April* and *May* Coppices and Springs; in *June* and *July*, in Out-woods and Purlieus, which are nearest unto green Corn; in *September* and *October*, after the first Shower of Rain they go to rut.

Now when the Huntsman will at any Time seek any of these Places to find his Game, he must be careful by no Means to go down, but up the Wind; for a Deer is of most dainty Scent, and upon the least Wind will fly and leave his Feed: Therefore he must come softly and charily and closely, with a quick Ear and a ready Eye.

Now for the best Time to find out your Game, it is early before Sun-rise, at which Time the Deer goeth to his Food; from whence you shall watch unto his Lodging and having lodged him, you may return Home, and prepare all Things for the Day's Hunting; for be assured except violently compell'd, he will not stir until Evening.

*The Hunting
of the
Stag.*

Now for the Manner of his Hunting, the Huntsman shall first cast off your Finders, near his Place of Lodging, and after they have hunted about a Ring or two, you shall cast in the Rest of your Hounds, and being in full Cry and Chase, you shall give him Comfort, both with Hounds and Voice; then as soon as you can possibly, you shall get Sight of the Deer, and take what especial Note of his Marks you can from him, so that as much as is possible you may know him from any other Deer; then at Evening

Def

fault, as soon as the Hounds are in Cry again, you shall make unto the hunted Deer and view him, and if you find it to be a fresh Deer, you shall rate the Dogs and bring them back to the Default, and there make them cast about again, until they have undertaken the hunted Deer; then give them Comfort by hollowing and Gibelets, and so continue the Chace till you have set up the Deer or slain him, ever and anon having watchful Eye unto Change; for it is the Nature of a Stag, when he is once imboist, or weary, to seek where he may find another Deer, and to beat him up and lay himself down in his Place.

To know when a Stag is weary, you shall know him imboist; that is, foaming and slaver- about the Mouth, with a thick white sweat; his Hair will look black, shining and with Sweat, and he will tappish oft;

To know when a Stag is weary.

And thus is, he will ever and anon be lying down and lurking in dark Holes and Corners: For his last Refuge, he will take himself to the Soil; which is, he will leap (if he can) into Rivers, Ponds, or other Water, out of which he shall force him either by Art or Strength. And thus shall be the Chace or Hunting of the Stag.

Now for the Hunting of the Buck; for as they are most usually kept in Parks, that every Keeper, which is worthy to

Of the Buck.

be a Keeper, may sooner from his own Experience, than from any Reading, get the Experience of the Ground he tendeth; and since he is bound both by the Laws of Justice and good Manners, to give every Man Contentment that is privileged to hunt in his Ground, and that whosoever can hunt a Stag well, cannot hunt a Buck ill, the red Deer being ever far more curious to hunt than the Stag, I will not spend any more Time to write of it, but refer you to those Rules which are already rehearsed.

Touching the Hunting of the Hare, which is every honest and good Man's Chace; and which, indeed, is the freest, readiest, and most enduring Pastime, and likewise in its

Of the Hare, and her Profits.

Kind full of good Profit for Man's Preservation: though the Beast be but little, yet are the Members thereof of great Enjoyment; as the Flesh, which is good for all

Manner of Fluxes; the Brains, good to make Child
breed their Teeth with Ease; the Wool, excellent
strench Blood; the Gall, sovereign for sore Eyes;
Blood, will kill Rheum and Worms; the Stiff
bone, which being worn, taketh away the Pain of
Cramp; with many other good Things besides.

*The Hunt-
ing of the
Hare.*

In the hunting of the Hare, you are
to regard the Place of Hunting, as whe
it be in Woods or Champaign; if in Woo
you shall not cast off your Dogs in
thickest of the Covert, but rather beat the Bush close,
shrubby Ground nearly adjoining to the Covert; for
in the Woods you may soonest find a Hare, yet co
monly you shall find such Change therewithal, that
shall hardly bring any forth to afford you Sport; wh
on the contrary Part, if you find any in those neighb
ing Grounds, she will presently fly forth into the Ch
paign.

*Where to
find Hares.*

Naturally a Hare will refuse the Co
till she begin to be weary; and a H
being once heated, is not so easily lost u
a fresh Change as when the Scents are of equal C
ness. If you hunt in the Champaign, you shall
beat those Places which are most likely, as where
or Whins grow, or in Grounds that are full of Tus
Rushes, Bramble-bushes, or such like: Or if the Ch
paign be more plain and void of such Places, then
shall, at the Beginning of the Year, repair to the Shr
about *Christmas* to the Fallows, and in *March* to
green Corn; for those are the most usual Haunts fo
best Hares.

*The Know-
ledge of the
Hare's
Form.*

In all these Places you shall regard
Form, or Hare's Seat, well, and
whether it be old or new; as if the Form
plain and smooth within the Pad be
it flat and worn, and the Pricks so new
easy to be seen that the Earth appears black, and
lately broken, then is the Form new; and if the Ho
call upon it, then may you hunt from thence, and
the Trail recover that Hare. But if the Form look
and rough within, and the Pad itself be not smooth,
any Pricks to be discerned therein, then it is old; a

the Hounds call upon it you shall rate them, for the Scent is old, and all the Labour will be lost you spend upon it.

The next Thing you observe must be the Shifts and Sights of the Hare when she is wearily hunted, as her Doublings and Windings; and, at every Default, give the Hounds Leisure enough and Compass enough in the casting about of your Rings for the unwinding of the same: Then you shall observe her Leaps and skips before she squat, and beat all those Places very seriously which are likely to give her any Harbour; and tho' the Loss seem ever so dangerous, yet be not discouraged, but continue your Search; because when she cometh to those hard Shifts, she is at the last cast, and cannot stand long before the Hounds. Many other Circumstances there are, but they are so generally known to almost every Man that any way affecteth this pleasure, that it is needless to make further Relation thereof; and therefore I hold this sufficient for the hunting of the Hare.

*The Hare's
Shifts and
Sights.*

Now for the hunting of the Fox or Badger, they are Chases of a great deal less Use or Cunning than any of the former, because they are of much hotter Scent, as being entitled stinking Scents, and not sweet scents, and indeed very few Dogs but will hunt them with Eagerness; therefore I will not stand much upon them, but advise you to respect well their Haunts and Coverts, which commonly are in Woods and bushy places, and to take Knowledge of their Earths and kennels; and as near as you can, when you go about to hunt them, to stop up their Kennels, and keep them that sling forth, that they may be the sooner brought to their Destruction. The Chase is profitable and pleasant for the Time, insomuch, as there are not so many Defaults, but a continuing Sport; yet not so much desired as the rest, because there is not so much Cunning. And thus much for Chases, and the general Use of all Kinds of Hunting.

*The hunt-
ing of the
Fox or
Badger.*

of

Of Fishing.

CHAP. I.

Of Fishing in general; and first, of the making of a Fish-pond.

FORASMUCH as great Rivers do generally belong either to the King, or the particular Lords of several Manors, and that it is only the Fish-pond which belongeth to private Persons; I will treat as a Thing most belonging to the general Profit, hereof. First, touching the making of them; you shall understand that the Grounds most fit to be cast into Fish-Ponds, are those which are either moorish, boggy, or full of Springs; and, indeed, most unfit either for Grazing, or any other Use of better Profit: And, of these Grounds, that which is full of clear Springs, will yield the best Water; that which is moorish, will feed Fish best; and that which is boggy will defend the Fish from being stole.

Having then such a Piece of waste Ground, as being determined to cast it into a Fish-Pond; you shall first, by small Trenches, draw all the Springs or moorish Veins into one Place, and so drain the Rest of the Ground; then, having mark'd out that Part which you mean to make the Head of your Pond, (which, although it be the lowest Part, in the true Level of the Ground, yet you must make it the highest in the Eye) you shall first cut the Trench of your Flood-Gate, so as the Water may have a swift Fall, when you mean at any Time to let it out; and then on each Side of the Trench drive in great Stakes, of six Feet in length and six Inches square, of Oak, Ash or Elm, but Elm is the best. These you must drive in Rows, within four Feet of one another, at the least four Feet into the Earth, as broad and as far off each Side the Flood-Gate, as you intend the Head of your Pond shall be; go; then begin to dig your Pond of such Compass

our Ground will conveniently give leave, and all the Earth you dig out of the Pond, you shall carry and throw amongst the Stakes, and, with strong Rammers, ram the Earth hard between them, 'till you have covered all the Stakes; then drive in as many more new Stakes, besides the Heads of the first, and then run more Earth over and above them also: And thus, with Stakes above Stakes, 'till you have brought the Head-Sides to such a convenient Height as is fitting. And in all this Work have an especial Care, that you make the Inside of your Banks so smooth, even, and strong, that no Current of the Water may wear the Earth from the Stakes.

You shall dig your Fish-Pond not above eight Feet deep, and so as it may carry not above six Feet Water.

You shall pave all the Bottom and Banks of the Pond with large Sods of Flat-Grass, which naturally grows under Water, for it is a great Feeder of Fish; and you shall lay them very close together, and pin them down with small Stakes and Windings. You shall upon the Side of the Pond, in the Bottom, stake fast divers Ravens or Faggots of Brush-Wood, wherein your Fish shall cast their Spawns, for that will defend them from destruction: At another Place you shall lay Sods upon the Sides, with the Grass-Sides together in the Bottom of the Pond, for that will nourish and breed Eels; and you shall stick sharp Stakes likewise by every Side of the Pond, that will keep Thieves from robbing them. When you have thus made your Ponds, and have let in the Water, you shall then store them: Carp, Bream, and Tench by themselves; and Pike, Perch, Eels, and Mullet by themselves; for the Tench, being the Fishes Physician, is seldom devoured: Also in all Ponds, you shall put good Store of Roach, Dace, Loch, and Minnow; for they are both Food for the greater Fishes, and also not uncomely in any good Man's Dish. You shall to every Melter put three Spawners, and in five Years put five, and in three Years the Increase will be great; but, in five, hardly to be destroyed. And thus shall you manage your Ponds and their Storings.

C H A P. II.

Of the taking of all Sorts of Fish, with Nets, or otherwise.

IF you will take Fish with little or no Trouble, you shall take of Sal-Armoniack a Quarter of an Ounce of young Chives as much, and as much of a Cal Kell; beat them in a Morter, until it be all one Substance; then make Pellets thereof, and cast them in any Corner of the Pond, and it will draw thither the Carp, Bream, Chevin, or Barbel, that are within the Water; then cast your Shove-net beyond them, and you shall take Choice at your Pleasure. If you will take Roach, Dace, or any small Kind of Fish; take Wine-Lees, and mix it with Oil, then hang it in Chimney Corner till it be dry, or look black, and then putting it into the Water, they will come so abundantly to it, that you may take them with your Hand. If you will take Trout, or Grailing, take two Pounds of Wheat-Bran, Half so much of White Pease, and mix them with strong Brine, beat it till it come to a perfect Paste; then put Pellets thereof into any Corner of the Water, and they will resort thither, so as you may close your Net about them at your Pleasure. But if you will take either Perch, or Pike, you shall take some of a Beast's Liver, black Snails, yellow Butterflies, Hog-Blood, and Opoponax; beat them altogether, and having made a Paste thereof, put it into the Water, then be assured, that as many as are within forty Paces thereof will presently come thither, and you may take them at your Pleasure.

Lastly, If you take eight Drachms of Cock-Stone, and twice so much of the Kernels of Pineapple Tree burnt; beat them well together, then make round Balls thereof, and put them into the Water, either fresh or salted; any Salmon or great Fish will presently resort thither, and you may take them either with Net or otherwise.

Also, it is a most approved Experiment, that if you take Bottles, made of Hay and green Oziers, or Willow mixt together, and sink them down in the Middle

your Pond, or by the-Bank-Sides; then let them rest two or three Days, having a Cord so fasten'd unto them, that you may twitch them upon Land at your Pleasure: And believe it, all the good Eels which are in the Pond will come into those Bottles, and you shall take them most abundantly. If you please to beat those Bottles, by binding up Sheeps Guts, or other Garbage of Beasts within them, the Eels will come sooner, and you may draw them oftner, and with better Assurance. There be other Ways, besides these to take Eels; as with Wheels, with the Eel-Spear, or with Bobbing for them with great Worms; but they are so generally known and practis'd, and so much inferior to this already shewed, that I hold it a needless and vain Labour to trouble your Ears with the Repetition of the same; and the rather, since in this Work I have laboured only to declare the Secrets of every Knowledge, and not to run into any large Circumstance of those Things which are most common and familiar to all Men. And thus much of Fish and Fish-Ponds, and their general Knowledge.

Of Angling, &c.

CHAP. I.

The whole Art of Angling, as it was written in a small Treatise in Rhime; and now, for the better understanding of the Reader, put into Prose, and adorned and enlarged. And first, of the Antiquity of Angling.

IT is by some Writers said to be found out by *Deucalion* and *Pyrrha* his Wife, after the general Flood; others write, it was the Invention of *Saturn*, after the Peace concluded betwixt him and his Brother *Titan*; and others, that it came from *Belus* the Son of *Nimrod*, who first invented all holy and virtuous Recreations: And all these, tho' they savour of Fiction, yet they differ not from Truth; for it is most certain that both *Deucalion*, *Saturn* and *Belus*, are taken for Figures of *Noah*.

Noah and his Family; and the Invention of the Art of Angling is truly said to come from the Sons of *Setb*, of whom *Noah* was the principal. Thus you see it is good, as having no Coherence with Evil; worthy of Use, inasmuch as it is mix'd with a delightful Profit; and most antient, as being the Recreation of the first Patriarchs; wherefore now I will proceed to the Art itself, and the Means to attain it.

CHAP. II.

Of the Angle-Rod, Lines, Corks, Hooks, and other Tools for Angling.

IN as much as the first Ground-work or Substance of this Art of Angling, consisteth in the Implements belonging and appertaining thereunto, and that except a Man be possessed of them which are most exact, nimble, or necessary for the same, his Labour is vain, and to little or no Purpose employed; and for as much as the Angle-Rod is the greatest, principallest, and sole Director of all other Tools belonging thereunto, I think it not amiss to begin with the Choice and Order thereof according to the Opinions of the most noted Anglers, which either have been in Times past, or are at this Day living.

Of the Angle-Rod.

For the Choice then of your Angle-Rod, you shall understand that some Anglers are of Opinion, that the best should be composed of two Pieces, a main Body, and a small pliant Top. The main Body should be of a fine grown Ground-witchen, or a Ground-Elm, of at least nine or ten Feet in Length; straight, smooth, without Knots, and not much differing, at either End of one Substance or Thickness: It should be gathered at the Fall of the Leaf, near or about *Allballonside*, and laid up in some dry Place, where it may lie straight, and of itself season; for to bake them in the Fire (as many do when they are green, is not so good; but after they be well dried and seasoned of themselves, then to bake them in the Fire, and set them so straight and even that an Angle

yet I
w, Bee

now cannot surpass them, is excellent; then you may take off the upper Rind, and, what with the Smoak and their own Age, their Colour will be so dark that they will give no Reflect into the Water, which is a principal Observation. Your Rod being made thus straight and seasoned, you shall at the upper End thereof, with an Augre or a hot Iron, but a hot Iron is the best, burn a Hole about three Inches deep, and of a Finger's width; then on the Outside of the Rod, from the Top of the Hole to the Bottom, you shall wrap it about, either with strong double twisted Thread, well waxed or pitched, or with Shoemaker's Thread many Times doubled, and well waxed with Shoe-maker's Wax, and the last End fastened under the last Folds, so close, and so sure, that it may by no Means loose, for this will keep the Rod from cleaving or breaking in that same Place where the Hole was made.

The Stock being thus made, you shall into the Hole fix the Top, which should be a very small Ground-Hazle, growing from the Earth upwards, very smooth and straight; which should be cut at the latter

*Of the Top
of the
Angle-
Rod.*

End of the Year, and lie in Season all the Winter; the upper Rind being by no Means taken off, neither the Rod put into the Fire at all, but only seasoned in a good dry Place, where it may lie straight, and have both the Wind and some Air of the Fire to come unto it. This Top must be pliant and bending, yet of such a sufficient strength that it will not break with any reasonable Jirk, but as it is any Way bowed, so to return again to the former Straightness. This top Wand should be of a Yard and a Half, or an Ell, at least, in Length, and at the smallest End thereof should be fastened with a Warp of Hair, a strong Loop of Hair, about an Inch long, to which you may at Pleasure fasten your Fishing-Line; and the bigger End of the Top must be thrust into the socket of the Stock, and made so fast that it may not loosen nor shake out with any Shaking; or other reasonable Violence. And tho' the Witchen or Ground-linn are accounted the best to frame these main Stocks, yet I have seen very good Stocks made both of Sal-
w, Beech, and Poplar, for the lighter your Rod is

(so

(so it be strong) it is so much the better, and more for the Ease of him that useth it.

The Angle-Rod of one Piece.

There be other approved good Anglers which allow only that Rod which is composed all of one entire Piece, and think them stronger, nimbler, and less casual and these Rods they would have chosen of an excellent straight and well-grown Ground-Hazel, being from the Bottom to the Top finely Rush-grown, the upper End thereof being small, pliant, and bending. This Rod should be gathered at the Fall of the Leaf, when the Leaves are some fallen and some sticking: As soon as you have cut them up, you shall cut away the Leaves and small Sprigs, yet not so near that you hurt the Bark for that by no Means must be stirred, as well for the Strength of the Rod as for the Colour; which being dark will not so soon catch the Eyes of the Fish, and offend them. Then bringing your Rods home you shall lay them upon a level Floor, and, pressing them down with good Weights to keep them from warping, let them lie and season all the Winter; then in the Spring time take them up for your Purpose, which is only to make the Knots smooth, and to fix your Loop of Hair to the upper End. Now of these Rods the longest is the best, so it be straight and well grown; for most commonly they are so short that they will serve to fish with but in little narrow Brooks, or else in a Boat in great Waters.

The Angle-Rod of many Pieces.

There be other Anglers, and many of the best and most approved Judgment which allow the Angle-Rod of many Pieces as those which are made of Canes, each Piece exceeding another one Degree in such even Proportion, that being fix'd and thrust one within another, they will shew as one even and most straight Rush-grown Body, without any Crookedness or other evil Favouredness. These Pieces should not be above four Feet in Length a-piece, and three such Pieces, which make twelve Feet, are sufficient for the Stock of the Rod, besides the Top: Now for those Ends, which are Sockets into which you fix the other Canes, you shall hoop them about with fine Plates of

Brass

Brass, an Inch and a Half broad, well soldered and smoothly filed, which will keep the Cane from splitting; And for the Top of this Rod the round Whalebone is thought the best; and surely, in my Opinion, so it is, both for this or any other Rod whatsoever; for it is tough, strong, and most pliant. These Rods most commonly are made to have the small Canes thrust down into the wide Canes, so that a Man may walk with them as with a Staff, and when he pleaseth draw them forth, and use them as occasion shall be offered. The only Exception which is taken at this Kind of Rods, is the bright Colour of the Cane, which, reflecting into the Water, oftentimes scareth the Fish, and maketh them afraid to bite: But if you fish in deep and thick Waters, there is no such Matter, for the Shadow of the Rod is not discerned through the Sun, only in shallow and clear Brooks it is a little Hindrance; and therefore he which is a Master in this Art will darken the Rod, by rubbing it over a gentle Fire with a little Capon's Grease, and Brown of Spain, mix'd together.

Now for your Lines, you shall understand that they are to be made of the strongest, longest, and best grown Horse-hair that can be got; not that which groweth on his Mane, nor upon the upper Part or Setting-on of his Tail, but that which groweth from the Middle and inmost Part of his Dock, and so extendeth itself down to the Ground, being the largest and strongest Hairs about the Horse; neither are these Hairs to be gathered from poor, lean, and diseased Jades, of little Price or Value, but from the fattest, soundest, and proudest Horse you can find, for the best Horse hath ever the best Hair; neither shall your Hairs be gathered from Naggs, Mares, or Geldings, but from Stone-horses only, of which the black Hair is the worst, the white or grey best, and other Colours indifferent. Those Lines which you make for small Fish, as Gudgeon, Witling, or Menow, should be composed of three Hairs; those which you make for Pearch, or Trout, should be of five Hairs; and those for the Chub, or Barbel, should be of seven: To those of three Hairs, you shall add one Thread of Silk; to those of five, two Threads of Silk; and

*Of the
Lines.*

and to those of seven, three Threads of Silk. You shall twist your Hairs neither too hard nor too slack, but even so as they may twine and couch close with one another, and no more, without either snarling or gaping one from another: The End you shall fasten together with a Fisher's Knot, which is your ordinary fast Knot, folding four Times about, both under and above; for this will not loose in the Water, but being drawn close together, will continue when all other Knots will fail: for a Hair being smooth and stiff, will yield and go back if it be not artfully drawn together. Your ordinary Line should be between three and four Fathom in Length yet, for as much as there are Diversities in the Length of Rods, in the Depth of Waters, and in the Places of standing to angle in, it shall be good to have Lines of divers Lengths, and to take those which shall be fittest for your Purpose.

The Colouring of Lines.

These Lines, tho' the natural Hairs, being white or grey, be not much offensive yet it will not be amiss to colour them according to the Seasons of the Year, for so they will least scare the Fish, and soonest entice them to bite with most Greediness; and of Colours the best is the Water-green, which you shall make after this Manner. Take a Pottle of Allum-water, and put thereunto a great Handful of Marigolds, and let them boil well, till a yellow Skum rise upon the Water; then take Half a Pound of green Copperas, and as much Verdigrise beaten to fine Powder, and put it, with the Hair, into the Water, and so let it boil again a pretty Space, and then set it by to cool for half a Day; then take out your Hair, and lay it where it may dry; and you shall see it of a delicate green Colour, which indeed is the best Water-green that may be.

This Colour is excellent to angle with in all clear Waters, where the Line lies plain and most discovered, and will continue from the Beginning of the Spring to the Beginning of Winter. Now if you will have your Lines of a yellow Colour, you shall boil your Hair in Allum-water, mix'd only with Marygolds and a Handful of Turmerick; but if you cannot get Turmerick then you shall stamp so much of green Walnut-tree

Leaves

Leaves, and mix it with the Water, and steep your Hair therein twenty-four Hours at least.

Lines of this Colour are good to angle with in Waters that are clear, yet full of Weeds, Sedge, and such like; for it is not unlike the Stalks of these Weeds, and it will well continue to angle with all the first Part of the Winter, as from before *Michaelmas* till after *Christmas*.

If you would have your Lines of a russet Colour, you shall take a Part of Allum-water, and as much strong Lye, then put thereto a Handful of Soot, and as much Brown of *Spain*, and after it hath boiled an Hour or two; let it by to cool; and when it is cold, steep your Hair therein a Day and a Night, and then hang it up to dry. These coloured Lines are good to angle with in all deep Waters, whether they be Rivers or standing Pools, as Ponds, and such like, and are most in Use from *Christmas* till after *Easter*.

Now if you will have your Lines of a brown or dusky Colour, you shall take a Pound of Umber and half so much Soot, and seeth it in a Pottle of Ale a good space; then when it is cold, steep your Hairs therein a Day and a Night, and then hang them up to dry, and the Colour will be perfect; yet ever the darker you would have it, the more Umber put unto it. These Lines are excellent to angle with in Waters that are black, deep, and muddy, be they either running or standing Waters, and will continue all Seasons of the Year whatsoever; only in bright Waters they are too black, and cast too large a Shadow. Lastly, if you would have your Lines of a tawny Colour, (altho' in the Water it sheweth almost all one with the other darker Colours,) you shall take Lime and Water, mix it together, and steep your Hair therein half a Day, and then take it forth and steep it double so long Time in Tanner's Boze, and then hang it up to dry, and the Colour will be perfect. These Lines are best to angle with in moorland and heathy Waters, which are of a reddish Colour, and will serve for that Purpose all Seasons of the Year. With this Colour, or the green, you mix a silver Thread it will not be amiss, and with the other Colours gold Thread is good also. And note, that at each End of your Line you make a Loop, the one to fasten to the
Top

Top of your Rod, being the larger, and the other to fasten your Hook-Line unto, which should be some what smaller.

*Of the
Cork.*

After your Lines be made, you shall make your Corks in this Manner: Take of the best and thickest Cork you can get, and with a fine Razor, having pared it smooth on the Outside, cut it into the Fashion of a long Catherine Pear, big and round at one End, and long and slender at the other, and according to the Strength of your Line, so make your Work bigger or lesser; as, for a Line of three Hairs, a Cork of an Inch and a Half in Length, and as much in Compass in the thickest Part is big enough; and for a Line of more Hairs, a Cork of more Length and Compass will become it: And indeed, to speak truly for as much as it serveth but only for a Direction to your Eye to know when the Fish biteth, and when you shall strike, the smaller your Cork is the better it is, and breedeth less Fright in the Water, insomuch that many Anglers will fish without any Cork, with a bare Quill only; but that is not so certain, nor giveth so sure Direction as the Cork doth. After you have shaped your Cork, you shall with a hot Iron bore a Hole, long-wise through the Midst thereof, and into that Hole thrust a Quill, and through the Quill draw your Line, and fasten them both together with a Wedge of the hard End of the Goose Feather: And note, that both your Quill and your Wedge be white, for that breedeth less Offence in the Water; then place the smaller End of your Cork down towards your Hook, and the bigger End towards your Rod, that the smaller End sinking down with the Hook, the bigger may float aloft and bear the Quill upward; which, when at any Time you see or perceive pull'd down into the Water, then you may safely strike, for without Doubt it is an assured Sign that a Fish hath bitten at the Bait.

There be other Anglers which make their Corks in the Fashion of a Nunn-gigg, small at both Ends and big in the Middle; and it is not much to be disliked, only it is a little sooner apt to sink, and you may thereby strike before the Fish hath fully bitten. Others shape the Corks in the Fashion of a Whirle, or of a little Apple round, and flattish at both Ends; and this Cork is best

angle for the greatest Fishes, because it being not so apt to sink, will float till the Hook be fastened, and the Fish beginneth to shoot away with the Bait, so that a Man when striking can seldom or never lose his Labour,

Next to your Corks are your Hooks, and they be of divers Shapes and Fashions; some big, some little, some between both, according to the Fish at which you angle: The best Substance whereof to make them, is either old *Spanish* Needles, or the strong Wire drawn as near as may be to that Height of Temper, which being nealed and allayed in the Fire, you may bend and bow at your Pleasure. Now for the best softening of your Wire, if you make your Hooks of old Needles, you shall need but to hold them in the Blaze of a Candle till they be red-hot, and then let them cool of themselves, and they will be soft and pliant enough: but if you make your Hooks of strong *Spanish* Wire, you shall roll it round, and then lay it upon burning Charcoals, turning it up and down till it be red-hot in every Place; then let it cool of itself, and it will be soft enough. Now for the making of your Hooks, I advise you to go to such as are best reputed for making of them, and buy of all Sorts of Hooks, from the biggest to the smallest; that is to say, from that which taketh the Loach, that which taketh the Salmon, and let them lie before you for Examples; then look of what Sort of Hooks you intend to make, and with a fine File first make the Point of your Hook, which should neither be too sharp, for when it will catch hold of every Thing when it should not; nor too blunt, lest it fail to take hold when there is Occasion; therefore in that observe a Medium, making it less sharp than a fine Needle, and more sharp than a small Pin. When you have made the Point, then, with a small Knife of a very good Edge, you shall cut out and shape up the Beard, which you shall make greater or less, according to the Bigness of the Hook and the Strength of the Wire; for you must by no Means cut the Beard so that thereby you weaken the Hook, but it must be strong in that Place as any other. When the Point and Beard is made, you shall, with a small Pair of round nippers, turn and compass the Hook about, making it round, circular-wise, being somewhat more than a Semi-circle;

Of Angling Hooks.

circle; and ever observe, that the rounder the Compass or Bought cometh in, that so much the better proportioned the Hook is. This done, you shall leave as much as you think convenient for the Shank, and then cut off from the rest of the Wire; which done, you shall beat the End down flat, and somewhat broader than the rest, and so polish and smooth it all over; then heating red-hot in a little Pan of Charcoals, put it suddenly in Water and quench it, which will bring your Hook to full Strength and Hardness. Thus you see how to make Hooks of all Sizes and Shapes, whether they be single or double Hooks; for altho' the Quantities alter, yet the Shapes do not, and the double Hook, which is the Pike-hook, is no other but two single Hooks, all of one Wire, turned contrary Ways; and this double Hook must not have the Line fix'd unto it, but a strong Wire join'd unto it of three Inches long, well wound about and wrapped with a smaller Wire; then to it another Wire of the same Length, as if they were two several Lines joined together, and then the Line fixed to the last Line and therefore are called armed Hooks, for they defend the Line from shearing or cutting in Pieces with the Teeth of the Pike.

Now for your single Hooks, you shall thus fix them unto your Lines; take a Length of your twisted Hair containing that Number which is fit for the Hook, and having made a strong Loop at the one End, lay the other End where is no Bought upon the Inside of your Hook then with a strong red Silk, either single or double, according to the Bigness of the Hook, being well waxed whip and wrap the Hook round about, as thick, close and straight as may be, in such Sort as you see Men wrap their Bow-strings, and in the same Manner make the Ends of your Silk fast; then with a Pair of Scissars cut the Silk and Hairs off close by the Hook, and you may be sure that they will not loose one from another with reasonable Violence.

After your Hook is thus fastened to your Line, you shall then plumb your Line; which is, to fix certain Pieces of Lead, according to the Bigness of your Line about it, some being in Length a Quarter of an Inch, some half an Inch, some bigger and some less, according

the Weight of your Hook and Bigness of your Cork; these Plummets are only to carry down your Hook and lay it in the Bottom, neither being so heavy to make the Cork sink, nor so light as not with the smallest Touch make the Cork dip into the Water. You shall then understand that your first Plummets should be twelve or fourteen Inches from the Hook, the rest not above one Inch distant from each other, not being above five, or seven at the most, tho' some Anglers use nine, and some more, as their Fancies rule them. There are in plumb-
of Lines three several Fashions of Plummets used; as, the long, another square, and the third in a Diamond form, but all tending to one End, have but one Use; the long ones are accounted the best, so that they are neatly set too, and the Ends very smooth and close down, so that they tangle not the Line by catching upon Weeds, or other Trash in the Bottom of the Water.

Thus have you seen the best Choice of Lines, Corks and Hooks, and how to fix and couple them altogether to do several Offices; it now resteth that we speak of other necessary Implements which

*Of other
Implements
for Ang-
lers.*

shall accompany the painful and industrious Angler, and they be these: He shall, besides these before spoken of, have a large Musket-bullet, through which having fixed a double twisted Thread, and thereof made a strong Loop, he may at his Pleasure hang it upon his Hook, and therewith sound the Depth of every Water, and so know how to plumb his Lines, and place his Corks in the due Places; then he shall have a large Ring of Lead, six Inches at least in Compass, and made fast to a long Line, through which, thrusting your Angle-rod, and letting it fall into the Water by your Hand, it will help to undo your Hook, if it be fastened upon Weeds or Stones in the Water.

Then he shall have a fine smooth Board of some hard Wood, for Shew sake, being as big as a Trencher, cut Battlement-wise at each End, on which he shall hang his several Lines. His Hooks he shall have in a dry Box; he shall have a little Bag of red Cloth to put his Worms in, and mix with them a little fresh

L

Mold

Mold and Fennel; then he shall either have a close stop Horn, in which he shall keep Maggots, Bobs, Palmer and such like, or a hollow Cane, in which he may put them and Scarrabs: He shall have a close Box for a Sorts of live Flies, and another for Needles, Silk Thread, Wax, and loose Hairs; then a Roll of pitch Thread to mend the Angle-rod withal, if it chance break; a File, a Knife, and a Pouch with many Purse in which you may place all your Implements whatsoever severally.

Lastly, he shall have a little fine wanded Pebb to hang by his Side, in which he shall put the Fish he catcheth and a small, round Net, fasten'd unto a Pole's End wherewith he may land a Pike, or any other great Fish of that Kind whatsoever. To have also a little Boat Cot, if you angle in great Waters, to carry you up and down to the most convenient Places for your Pastime is also right necessary and fit for an Angler. And thus have shewed you the Substance of the Angler's Instruments.

C H A P. III.

Of the Angler's Apparel and inward Qualities.

TOUCHING the Angler's Apparel, (for it is a Respect as necessary as any other whatsoever) it should by no Means be garish, light-coloured, shining; for whatsoever with a glittering Hue reflected upon the Water, immediately frighteth the Fish, and maketh them fly from his Presence, no Hunger being able to tempt them to bite when their Eye is offended and of all Creatures there is none more sharp-sighted than Fishes are.

Anglers Apparel.

Let then your Apparel be plain and comely, of a dark Colour, as Russet, Tawny, or such like, close to your Body, without any new-fashion'd Slashes or dangling Sleeves waving loose like Sails about you, for they are like Bait which will ever chase your Game from you; let it, for your own Health and Ease sake, be warm and well lined.

at neither the Coldness of the Air, nor the Moistness of the Water may offend you; keep your Head and Feet dry, for from the Offence of them springeth Agues, and worse Infirmities.

Now for the inward Qualities of the *Anglers Virtues*, tho' some Writers reduce them into twelve Heads, which indeed whosoever enjoyeth cannot chuse but be very compleat in much perfection, yet I must draw them into many more branches; the first, and most essential whereof, is, that a skilful Angler ought to be a general Scholar, and in all the liberal Sciences; as, a Grammarian, to know how either to write or discourse of his Art in true and fitting Terms, without either Affectation or Rudeness; he should have Sweetness of Speech, to persuade and entice others to delight in an Exercise so laudable; he should have Strength of Argument to defend and maintain his Profession against Envy or Slander; he should have Knowledge in the Sun, Moon and Stars, that by their Aspect he may guess the Seasonableness or Unseasonableness of the Weather, the Breeding of Storms, and from what Coasts the Winds are ever directed; he should be a good Knower of Countries, and well used to Highways, that by taking the readiest Paths to every Lake, Brook, or River, his Journies may be more certain and less wearisome; he should have Knowledge in Proportions of all Sorts, whether circular, square, or diametrical, that when he shall be questioned of his diurnal Progresses, he may give a geographical Description of the Angles and Channels of Rivers, how they fall from their Heads, and what Compasses they fetch in their several Windings; he must also have the perfect Art of Numbering, that, in the sounding of Lakes or Rivers, he may know how many Feet or Inches each severally containeth, and by adding, subtracting, multiplying the same, he may yield the Reason of every River's swift or slow Current; he should not be skilful in Music, that whensoever either Melancholy, heaviness of his Thought, or the Perturbations of his Fancies stir up Sadness in him, he may remove the same with some godly Hymn or Anthem, of which David gives him ample Examples.

He must be of a well settled and constant Belief enjoy the Benefit of his Expectation, for then despair it were better never to put in practice; and he must ever think, where the Waters are pleasant and any thing likely, that there the Creator of all good Things hath stored up much of his Plenty; and that your Satisfaction be not as ready as your Wishes, yet you must hope still, that with Perseverance you shall reap the Fullness of your Harvest with Contentment: Then he must be full of Love, both to his Pleasure and to his Neighbour; to his Pleasure, which otherwise would be irksome and tedious; and to his Neighbour, that he neither give Offence in any Particular, nor be guilty of any general Destruction: Then he must be exceedingly patient, and neither vex nor excruciate himself with Losses or Mischances; as, in losing the Prey when it is almost in the Hand, or by breaking his Tools thro' Ignorance, or Negligence; but with a pleased Sufferance amend Errors, and think Mischances Instructions to better Carefulness.

He must then be full of humble Thoughts, not daring when Occasion commands to kneel, lie down or wet his Feet or Fingers, as oft as there is any Advantage given thereby, unto the gaining the End of his Labour. Then he must be strong and valiant, neither amazed with Storms or affrighted with Thunder, but hold them according to their natural Causes, and the Pleasure of the Highest; neither must he, like the Fox which preyeth upon Lambs, employ all his Labour against the smaller Fry; but, like the Lyon that seizeth Elephants, think the greatest Fish which swimmeth a Reward little enough for the Pains which he endureth: Then must he be liberal, and not working only for his own Belly, as if it could never be satisfied; but he must with much Chearfulness bestow the Fruits of his Skill amongst his honest Neighbours who, being Partners of his Game, will doubly renown his Triumph, and that is ever a pleasing Reward to Virtue.

Then must he be prudent, that, apprehending the Reasons why the Fish will not bite, and all other casual Impediments which hinder his Sport, and knowing the Remedies for the same, he may direct his Labours to without Troublesomeness: Then he must have a mod-

Contention of the Mind, to be satisfied with indifferent Things; and not, out of an avaricious Greediness, think every Thing too little, be it ever so abundant: Then must he be of a thankful Nature, praising the Author of all Goodness, and shewing a large Gratefulness for the least Satisfaction: Then must he be of a perfect Memory, quick and prompt to call into his Mind all the needful Things which are any way in his Exercise to be employed, lest, by Omission, or by Forgetfulness of any, he frustrate his Hopes, and make his Labour ineffectual: Lastly, he must be of a strong Constitution of Body, able to endure much Fasting; and not of a rawing Stomach, observing Hours; in which, if it be unsatisfied, it troubleth both the Mind and Body, and taketh that Delight which only maketh the Pastime pleasing.

Thus having shewed the inward Virtues and Qualities which should always accompany

Cautions.

company a perfect Angler, it is very meet now to give unto you certain Cautions; which, being carefully observed, you will with more Ease obtain the Fulness of your Desires. First, therefore, when you go to angle, you shall observe that all your Tools, Lines, or Implements be (as the Sea-man saith) yare, fit, and ready; or to have them ravell'd, ill-made, or in unreadiness, they are great Hindrances to your Pleasure. Then look that your Baits be good, sweet, fine, and agreeing with the Season; for if they be improper in any of their natures, they are useless, and you had been better at home than by the River. Then you must not angle in unseasonable Times, for the Fish not being inclined to bite, it is a strange Enticement that can compel them: Then you must be careful, neither by your Apparel, motions, or too open standing, to give Affright to the Fish; for when they are scared they fly from you, and you seek Society in an empty House. Then must you labour in clear and untroubled Waters, for when the Brooks are any thing white, muddy and thick, either for Inundations or other Trouble, it is impossible to get any Thing with the Angle. Then to respect the Temper of the Weather, for extream Wind or extream cold taketh away from Fish all Manner of Appetite; so doth likewise too violent Heat, or Rain that is great,

heavy,

heavy, and beating; or any Storms, Snows, Hail or Blusterings, especially that which cometh from the East, which of all is the worst; those which blow from the South are best, and those which come from the North or West are indifferent. Many other Observations there are, but they shall follow in their due Places.

C H A P. IV.

Of the best and worst Seasons to angle in, and their Use

BEFORE I direct you in the best Seasons, and their contrary, for the general Art of Angling I think it not amiss, a little by the Way, to give you a Glance or Speculation how to order your Body, and Art of each several Water; for the Manner of your standing and concealing yourself, is a material and chief Point in this Art.

The Angler's Manner of standing. Know then, that if you angle in any Pond or standing Water, you shall, before you fall to your Business, with your Plumb sound the Water in divers Places, and where you find it deepest, blackest, and least transparent, there you shall stand to angle, placing yourself under the Bank, and, if it be possible, so as your Shadow may be carried from the Water; for you must at no Time, if you can chuse, let your Shadow lie upon the Water; and altho' in these deep Places your standing open or close are either of them reckoned indifferent, because the Water's Depth is a sufficient Concealment; yet the closer you stand is accounted, amongst Anglers, most handsome and artificial.

But if you go to angle at the River, then the best Place to cast in your Line is where it is deepest and clearest, so as you may behold the Sand or Gravel at the Bottom: And in these Places you shall strive to conceal yourself as much as possible, as standing behind Poplars, Oziers, or other Trees; or under the Cover of some Bank, Rock, or other Ruins, at the Side of the River; also in covert Places, where are many Weeds, Roots of Trees, and other Rubbish, is good angling, but very troublesome; for Fish, lying there warm and in Safety, will have a great Resort thereunto, and be free

freely, so that the Angler must be careful in the putting in of his Hook, and very deliberate in striking; least, doing any Thing rashly, he break his Line and Hook, being ever so little entangled.

It is good also to angle in Whirl-Pools, for they being like Pits within the Rivers, are seldom unfurnished of the greatest Fish: Also, it is good to angle at the Falls of Water, as under Bridges, standing behind the Arches, or at the Flood-gates of Mills, being hid with the higher Timbers; and generally where you see the Water deepest, clearest, and calmest, being least troubled with Wind or Weather, is the fittest Place to angle in. Other Observations there are, but they will follow in more necessary Places.

To return then to our first Purpose, you shall know the best Season to angle in is *The best Seasons to angle in.* from *April* to the End of *October*, speaking of the general Use of the Pleasure; and the

best Hours also, in general account, are from Four in the Morning till Nine, and from Three in the Afternoon till after Five in the Evening, the Wind blowing from South, West, or North, and the Air temperate, inclin'd to Warmness. But to speak of particular Observations of Seasons, know, that if the Day is dark, close, and pouring, or hath a gentle whistling Wind playing upon the Water; it is good to angle in, and the Fish will bite with Pleasure; nay, if a fine misting Dew or Rain fall gently, without Violence, they will then bite the faster; also after Floods are gone away, and the Rivers are come within their own Banks, their first Clearness recovered, and the Water pure, then it is good to angle. And generally for your Summer Angling chuse the coolest Time of the Day, for in the Heat of the Day Fish betake themselves to their Rest, and will neither bite nor play.

But for your Winter Angling, which is from *October* to *April*, you shall not make any Difference of Time, if the Weather be calm, for all Hours of the Sun are alike, only the Noon-tide or Mid-day is most preferred, especially in Ponds and standing Waters. If the Water where you angle ebb and flow, the best Time of angling is held to be in the Ebb; yet in some Places where the Tide is not great, there the Flood is preferred. Lastly, when-

soever you see the Trout play or leap above the Water and the Pike shoot in Pursuit of other Fish, it is then very good Time to angle in, using such Baits as then meet for the Month and Season, as shall be shew hereafter.

Seasons ill to angle in. Now for those Seasons which are nought to angle in, there is none worse than in the violent Heat of the Day, or when the Winds are loudest, Rain heaviest, Snow, and Hail extreme. Thunder and Lightning are offensive, or a sharp Air which flieth from the East. The Places where Men use to wash Sheep you shall forbear, for the very Smell of the Wool will chase Fish from their Haunts. Land Floods are Enemies to Anglers; so also, at the Fall of the Leaf, is the shedding of Leaves into the Water; and many other such like Pollutions, of which we will speak something more hereafter.

Of Fishes Therefore, to conclude this Chapter, and *Haunts.* to shew you as well how to find your Fish as the Art to take it when found, you shall know, that the Carp, Eel, and Tench, do ever haunt muddy Places; the first, which is the Carp, lieth ever at the Depth and Bottom thereof, the Tench, among the Weeds and Roots of Sedges; and the Eel under Stone Blocks, or the Roots of Trees.

The Bream, the Chevin, and the Pike, haunt ever in the clear and sandy Bottom: The Pike, where you see great Store of small Fry; the Chevin, where the Stream runneth swiftest, and the Shade is greatest; and the Bream, where the Water is broadest, and the Depth giveth greatest Liberty: And generally these three Sorts of Fish delight more in standing Waters than in running Rivers, although the antient Proverb is,

*Ancome Eel and Witham Pike,
In all England is none like.*

Which are Rivers in *Lincolnshire*. Now the Salmon hath its Haunt in the swiftest and broadest Rivers whose Channels fall down into the Sea: The Trout loveth smaller Brooks, whose Current is swift, clear and gravelly, and ever hath his Lodging in the deepest Hole

bles that are therein : And the Perch haunteth Rivers of the same Nature, only he abideth most in the Creeks and Hollownesse which are about the Bank, and indeed these three Fishes generally, Salmon, Trout, and Perch, in the clear Streams, being green with Weeds, and the Bottoms hard with Gravel and Pebble.

The Gudgeon, the Loach, and the Bulhead, haunt the shallowest Places, and where Streams are slow, yet transparent. The Barbel, Roach, Dace, and Ruff, hunt the deep shady Places of those Brooks which are strewed with more Sand than Gravel, or where the Clay is firm, and not slimy ; and delight ever to lie under the Shadows of Trees, Brambles, or other Things growing from the Bank.

The Luce or Lucern, which indeed is but the overgrown Pike, haunteth the broad and large Mears, which are Miles in Compass, being deep and still, and ever green in the Bottom thereof amongst the Roots, Tufts of Sedge, and Bulrushes, being quiet and least troubled. The Humber haunts the clayey Rivers of high Counties, where the Soil is rich and full of Marle, or in Lakes or Ponds of the same Nature. The Shad and Roach haunt those Waters which are blackish, deep, and accustomed to ebb and flow : And where they haunt are commonly also is found both the Mullet and the Pike, all which love to lodge close and flat at the Bottom of the Water, so it be more Ooze than Gravel.

But here now methinks I hear the Customary Objection, thus reprehend me, saying, that if these Fishes should be infallible, no River or Pond could contain above three Sorts of Fish ; when daily Experience teacheth us, that some Rivers have ten, some twenty, some thirty, as the *Trent*, for Example, whose ancient Name in the *French* is *Frianta*, in *Latin* *Triginta*, in *English* *Thirty*, derived from this Ground, because she standeth upon her thirty Castles, thirty Market-towns, and are in her thirty several Sorts of Fish.

To which I thus answer, that forasmuch as into most Rivers fall many several Waters and many Soils, according to the Nature of the Countries through which the Channels run, that before every Alteration of Soil may alter the Breed of

Fry, and many several Kinds may be in one Stream; that the Angler, in the Choice of his Pastime in such Places, must either have a perfect Knowledge how the Soils do alter, (which he may commonly know by the Banks,) or else rely upon his Experience, which will be the best Tutor to direct him unto the Haunts of several Fishes; but for Ponds or standing Waters which are on one Earth, there you shall surely find them best profits which are before rehearsed.

C H A P. V.

Of Baits in general, and of every particular Kind; the Seasons, Use, and Preservation.

SINCE I have thus far orderly passed over the outward and instrumental Necessaries appertaining to this modest Recreation, shewing the several Tools and Implements which are to be employed therein, and have also shewed the inward and mental Knowledge which should be harboured in his Breast that will be an Angler. I will now proceed to speak of the Baits and Enticements which are the Agents and Effectors of our Desires in this Pastime, without which all other Employments are vain and useless; for what doth it avail to have other Things in Perfection, when this, which is the Strength and Life of the rest, is either imperfect or defective.

To speak then generally of Baits, they are divided into three Kinds, which are, live Baits, dead Baits, and Baits living but in Appearance only. Your live Baits are Worms of all Kinds, especially the red Worm, the Maggot, the Bob, the Dor, brown Flies, Frogs, Grasshoppers, Hornets, Wasps, Bees, Snails, Crabs, Roach, Bleaks, Gudgeon or Leach. Your dead Baits are Pasties of all Makings, young Brood of Worms, dried or undried, the clotted Blood of Sheep, Cherries, Bramble-berries, Corn, Seeds, Cherries, and such like. And your Baits which seem to live, yet are dead, are artificial Flies of all Sorts and Shapes, made of Silk, Feathers about your Hooks, which will serve for

several Season throughout the Year, and being by your Line moved upon the Water, seem to be live Flies, which the Fish with great Greediness will catch up and devour.

Now for the Seasons in which these Baits are most profitable, you shall understand, that the red Worm will serve for small Fish all the Year long; the Maggot is good in *July*, the Bob and Dor in *May*, the brown Flies in *June*, Frogs in *March*, Grasshoppers in *September*, Hornets in *July*, Wasps and Bees in *July*, and Snails in *August*; for the Roach, Bleak, or Gudgeon, they serve the Pike at any Season. All Pastes are good in *May*, *June*, and *July*; dried Wasps in *May*, Sheep's Blood and Cheese in *April*. For Bramble-berries, Corn and Seeds, they are good at the Fall of the Leaf.

Lastly, for your dead Flies, which are most proper for the Trout or Grayling, you shall know that the dun Fly is good in *March*, being the lesser, but the greater dun Fly will serve the latter End of *February*: The stone Fly is good in *April*, the red Fly and yellow Fly in *May*; the black Fly, the dark yellow Fly, and the moorish Fly in *June*, the tawny Fly, Part of *May*, and Part of *June*; the Wasp-Fly and the Shell-Fly in *July*, and the cloudy, dark Fly in *August*.

Now for the making of these Flies: The cloudy, dark Fly is made of black Wool, whip'd from between a Sheep's Ears, and whip'd about with black Silk, his Wings of the under Mail of the Mallard, and his Head made black and suitable, fix'd upon a fine Piece of Cork, and folded so cunningly about the Hook that nothing may be perceived but the Point and Beard only. The Shell-Fly is made of fine green Flocks, and the Wings of the Wings of a new-glead. The Wasp-Fly is made of black Wool, whip'd about with yellow Silk, and the Wings of the down of a Buzzard. The tawny Fly is made of tawny Wool, and the Wings set one contrary to another, and made of the white Down of a Widgeon. The moorish Fly is made of fine Flocks, thorn from a freeze-grey Ruffet, and the Wings of a Drake. The bright yellow Fly is made of yellow Wool, and his Wing's of a red Cock's yellow

yellow Mane. The sad yellow Fly is made of black Wool, with a twisted yellow Silk, like a Lift, whip down on either Side, and the Wings of the Wings of Buzzard, set on with black Thread. The black Fly is made of black Wool, and lap'd about with the Herle of Peacock's Tail; his Wings with the brown Feathers of the Mallard, and some of his blue Feathers on his Head. The red Fly is made of red Wool, lap'd about with black Silk, and the Wings of the Mail of a Mallard, with some of the red Feathers of a Capon. The stone Fly is made of black Wool, made yellow under the Wings and under the Tail with Silk, and the Wings of Drake Down. The greater dun Fly is made of black Wool and his Wings of the dun Feathers of a Drake's Tail. The lesser dun Fly is made of dun Wool, and his Wings of the Mail of a Partridge.

Now for the Shapes and Proportions of these Flies it is impossible to describe them without painting; therefore you shall take of these several Flies alive, and laying them before you, try how near your Art can come unto Nature, by an equal Shape and Mixture of Colours; and when you have made them, you may keep them in close Boxes uncrushed, and they will serve you many Years.

Preservation of Baits. Now for the Preservation and Keeping of your quick Baits, (for longer than they are neat and sweet they are not good) you shall understand, that they must not be kept altogether, but every Kind several by itself, and nourished with such Comforts as it delighteth in when it is at Liberty, or with such Things as they breed upon when they are first taken. And first for the red Worm. When you take them you shall put them in a Bag or red Cloth, and, chopping a Handful of Fenel, mix it with half so much fresh Mold, being black and fertile, and they will both live and scour therein. There be some Anglers which put wet Moss both under and above them; others there be which put Parsley or Sweet-Majoram unto them; but the former Way is the best, so you observe every Night to renew the Earth, or once in two Days to refresh them with a little new Ox Dung, and thus you may keep them two Months.

Months without Imperfection. For the great white Maggots, you shall mix with them Sheep's Tallow, or little Bits of a Beast's Liver: The best way to scour them, is to put them into a Bag of Blanketing, with Sand, and hang them where they may have the Air of the Fire, or other Warmth, for the Space of an Hour or two. For Frogs and Grasshoppers, you shall keep them in wet Mofs and long Grass, moistened every Night with Water; and when you angle with them you shall cut off their Legs by the Knees, and the Grasshoppers Wings near unto the Body. For other Worms, as the Bob, Cadis-worm, Canker, and such like, you shall keep them with the same Things you find them upon. And for all live Flies, you shall use them as you take them; only the Wasp, the Hornet, and Humble-bee, which is without Sting, you shall first dry them a little in a warm Oven after the Bread is drawn, and then dip all their Heads into Sheep's Blood, and dry them again, and so keep them in a close Box, and they will continue two or three Months in all good Perfection.

Now lastly, to speak of your made Baits, which are Pastes, the most of them will last the whole Year; and as they be divers,

Of making Pastes.

I will shew you how to compound every one of them to its true and perfect Nature. First, to make Pastes that shall last the longest, you shall take Bean-flour, and some of the Parts of the Coney's Leg which are called the Almond of the Coney; or if it be of a fat young Whelp, or a Cat, it is as good; and to these put a like Quantity of Virgin-Wax and Sheep's Suet, and then beat them together in a Mortar until they be made one Body; then, with a little clarified Honey, temper it before the Fire, and so make it up in round Balls, and it will last the Year: And the Use thereof is, when you angle, dip your Hook therewith, and not any Fish which swimeth in fresh Waters but will greedily bite thereat. There is also another Paste which is of equal Quality to use with this, and will last as long; and that is, take the Kidney-Tallow of a Sheep, and as much of Cheese, and beat them in a Mortar till they be made one Body; then add to them as much Wheat-Flour as will bring it to an exceeding stiff Paste, then knead it before

before the Fire, and allay the Stiffness with Live-Honey and so make it up into Balls.

The Use of this Paste is like the former. Take the Blood of a Sheep, and of Honey like Quantity, and beat them together with a Lump of fresh Cheese; then with the fine greated Crumbs of white Bread, work them into a stiff Paste, and so roll it up in Balls; and when you angle, do not bait your Hook therewith, but no and then cast little Pellets thereof into the Water, and will entice the Fish to resort unto you, and to bite with great Greediness.

There be others which take Bread Crumbs, and beat them in a Mortar with ripe Cherries (the Stones being taken out) until it come to a stiff Paste, and then knead it up into Balls, and use it as you do that which was last recited. It is most approved and very excellent for all Sorts of Fish in fresh Waters.

Lastly, if you take the Oil of the *Aspray*, *Coculus India*, and *Assafætida*, beaten, and mix with as much Live-Honey, and then dissolve them in the Oil of *Polypody*, and so keep it in a close Glass, and when you angle, anoint your Bait with this Confection: This do tho' the Weather be ever so unseasonable, or the Fish ever so ill disposed to bite, yet be sure you shall not lose your Labour, but take, when all Men else fail of their Purpose; for the Secret hath been rarely approved, and hitherto concealed with great Secrecy. And thus much for Baits and their Uses.

C H A P. VI.

Of angling for every several Kind of Fish, according to their Natures.

NOW to shew you how you shall angle most properly for every several Fish, with true Art, according to the Nature of the Fish, I think it not amiss first to begin with the Gudgeon, Roach, and Dace, which being Fishes of eager Bite, most foolish, least affrightful, and soonest deceived, are the first fit Preys for young Scholars, and such as are but Learners.

in the Art of Angling; for the Easiness of their Gaining will not only settle an unresolved Mind, but give unto Ignorance both Comfort and Encouragement.

If then you will angle for any of these small Fish in great Streams, it shall be meet to take a Boat, and finding the Places of their Haunt, which is commonly in sandy, clear Waters, and where they run swiftest, there angle for them with your smallest Hooks well leaded, and your smallest Lines well corked. Your Hook should rather drag than be an Inch from the Bottom, and your best Baits are the red Worm, Cod-Worm, Maggot, clotted Blood of Sheep cut in little Bits, or else the white Spawn or Brood of Wasps; and ever, as soon as you see the Cork stir, suddenly strike, for they will lie nibbling at the Bait, and, finding the Hook, forsake it. If you angle for them in small Brooks, you shall stand under Bridges, at the Falls of Mills, behind Poplars or Oziers, or any where, where the Stream runneth deep and swift: And ever note, that when your Bait fails you remove your Place, and seek out a new Standing; and withal forget not, ever when you angle for any of these Fish, to cast in some of your Paste before your Hook, for this will make your Sport much more abundant: And altho' the Dace, of his own Nature, biteth high and near the Top of the Water, yet these Baits and Enticements will make him stoop and be taken easily.

*Of the
Gudgeon,
Roach, and
Dace.*

If you will angle for the Carp, you must have a strong Rod, and a strong Line, of at least seven or nine Hairs, and either mix'd with green or watched Silk; your Cork must be large, long and smooth; your Leads smooth and close, and fix'd near the Hook; and the Hook of almost a Three-penny Compass. He is very dainty to bite but at some especial Hours, as, very early in the Morning, or very late at Night, and therefore he must be much enticed with Paste. His best Baits are the Meele Worm, the red Worm, or the Menow, for he seldom refuseth them. The Cadis-Worm is good for him in June; and the Maggot, black Worm, or Grasshopper in July, August, and September. If you make him Paste

*Of the
Carp.*

of

of four Ale, White of Eggs and Bread Crumbs, it will very much entice him : Also I would ever wish you, before you fish for the Carp, to cast a Handful of white Bread Chippings into the Pond or River ; for they will not only entice him to your Bait, but also give you Notice if you be near his Haunt, for you shall presently hear him smack above the Water, and then if you misse him, either your Fortune or Skill is not good.

*Of the
Chub, Che-
vin, or
Trout.*

If you will angle for the Chub, Chevin, or Trout, all your Instruments must be strong and good ; your Rod dark and discoloured ; your Line strong, but small and short ; your Hook of a Two-penny Compass ; and, if you angle with a Fly, then neither Lead, Cork, or Quill ; if otherwise, then all of a handsome and suitable Proportion.

The best standing to take them is in close and concealed Places, as, behind Trees, Walls, or Arches of Bridges. Their Haunts are in clear Waters, which run upon Sand or Gravel ; and they are in best Season from *March* till *Michaelmas*. If you angle for them with dead Flies, without Lead or Cork, I have shewed you in the former Chapter the several Flies for each several Month ; but if you angle for them with other Baits, then you must have both Cork and Lead, for they will bite near the Bottom ; yet sometimes you may angle for them with a small Menow, hung at your Hook by the nether Parts, without Cork and Lead, and so draw the Bait upon the Top of the Water ; and both with this, and with every Fly, strike rather before than after they bite. If you angle for them at the Ground in *March, April, May, and September*, the Menow is good Bait ; so is the Stone-Fly, Cadis-Worm, Blood-red Worm, Ditch-Canker, young Frogs, the Worm that breedeth on the Ozier-Leaf, or the Dock-Canker mix'd together. In *June* Crickets and Dor Flies are good ; in *July* the Grasshopper is good, so is the Humble-Bee, dried Wasps or dried Hornets, or any of the young Brood in the Combs ; in *August* flying Pismires are good, so is the Colewort-worm, or the Maggot, and in *September* either Cherries, Mice before they have any Hair, or the great Sow-Worm.

I now will angle for the Eel. The best Place is at Wears, Mill-Ponds, Bridges, hollow Banks, or any swift falling Water: Your Line strong, and not above two Ells in Length, and very heavily plumb'd; a good round Hook, but no Cork, because you must not strike till the Eel plucks; neither must you by any Means pull hastily, but holding your Line stiff, with Labour and Patience tire him, lest by tearing his Chaps you lose him. The best Bait is the red Worm, or little Pieces of Sheep's Guts.

Of the Eel.

The Flounder and Sewant are greedy Fishers, yet very crafty, for they will nibble and suck at a Bait a good while before they swallow it, and if they perceive the Hook, they will fly from it; therefore, to make them more hasty of the Bait, you must be ever moving your Line, and seldom let it lie still. They lie most commonly in the deepest Places of the River, where the Water is stillest, and runneth with least Force; also they lie near unto the Bank, and delight most in the stream which is brackish, and mix'd with the salt Water. Your Line must be strong, and well plumbed near to the Hook: And the best Baits are the red Worm, and the young Brood of Wasps.

Of the Flounder and Sewant.

The Barbel or Grayling, which some call the UMBER, are very subtile and crafty Fishes, therefore you must be very careful that your Baits be sweet and new; and when you angle for them, do in all Things you do for the Trout, for they bite aloft in the Summer, and at the Bottom in the Winter. Your Lines must be extraordinary strong, and your Hooks of a three-penny Compass; for they are Fishes of weighty Bodies, and when they are struck, must have Liberty to tire themselves, or else they will endanger the breaking of your Rod, and therefore your Line must be the longest Size.

Of the Grayling or Barbel.

The best Season to angle for the Bream, is from the latter End of February till September. He is a very lusty, strong Fish, therefore your Tools must be good. The Baits in which he most delighteth, are Worms of all Sorts, Butterflies,

Of the Bream.

Butterflies, green Flies, Paste of Bread Crumbs, or the Brood of Wasps.

*Of the
Tench.*

The Tench is a Fish that ever loveth the Bottom of Rivers, where the Ooze or Mud is thickest; and is most fit to be angled for in the Height of Summer, for at other Seasons he is not apt to bite, and at all Times he is very dainty.

The Baits in which he delighteth most are Pastes that are very sweet, and the browner the better, especially they are made with the Blood of a Sheep: At the green red Worm also he will bite, and so much the sooner you mix it with this Paste: The Maggot and the Wasp he will seldom refuse, chiefly being dipped in Honey.

*Of the
Blake,
Ruff and
Perch.*

The Blake, Ruff and Perch, are Fishes which bite neither high nor low, but for the most Part in the Middle of the Water; therefore your Line must be very light and plumb'd, and far from the Hook. The Baits which most entice them, besides the red Worm are the House-Fly in the Summer, and the Fat of Bacon in the Winter; in April they will bite well at the Bait of a Worm or Maggot, and in all other Seasons they seldom refuse any Worm or Canker. Your Line should be small, and well armed from the Hook with small Wire for the Teeth of the Perch will else gnaw it asunder.

*Of the
Pike.*

The Pike is a Fish of great Strength and Weight, insomuch that you can hardly hold him with a Line of Hair to hold him; therefore your best Anglers use most commonly a Chalk-Line: Your Angle-Rod also must have no small Top, but be all of one Piece and Bigness, and the Line made exceeding strong from slipping. Your Hook should be of the strongest Wire, white or yellow, and made double, the Point turning two contrary Ways, and then armed with strong Wire a Foot at least. His best Bait is a live small Roach, Dace or Menow, the Hook being put into the Tail and coming forth under the Gills; and you must seldom or never let your Bait lie still in the Water but draw it up and down as tho' the Fish did move the Water, and fled from the Pike, for this will make him more eager and hasty to bite; and, having

you must be sure to tire him well before you take him

The yellow, live Frog is also an excellent Bait for the Pike, for you must understand that they naturally delight not in any dead or unmoving Food.

There be some which take a great deal of Delight and Pleasure to snickle or halter the Pike, which is good, when Pikes are broke out of Ponds or Rivers, and come

*Of snick-
ling the
Pike.*

no little, small Ditches or Rundels, as is oft to be seen in low Countries. The Way then to halter them is first to find the Pike where he lieth, (which, in the heat of the Day, you may easily do) then take your chalk-Line, and making a large running Noose thereof, put it gently into the Water about two Feet before the nose of the Pike; then when you feel it touch the ground, cause one to go behind the Pike; and with a Pole stir him; then as he shooteth meet him with your Noose, and so, with a sudden and quick Jirk, throw him upon the Land. In this Sport you must be very ready, nimble, and quick-fighted, for if you give him the least Time he will escape you.

Now lastly, touching the angling for the Salmon, tho' he is a Fish which Truth is unfit for your Travail,

*Of the
Salmon.*

because he is too huge and cumbersome, as also in that he naturally delighteth to lie in the Bottoms of the deep Rivers, and as near as may be in the Middle of the Channel; yet, forasmuch as many Men esteem that which is got with most Difficulty, you shall understand that the best Baits in which he most delighteth are those which serve for the Trout, as, Paste or Flies in the Summer, and red Worms, Bob-Worms, or Cankers in the Water-Docks after Michaelmas. And thus much of the Art of Angling, and taking of each several Sort of Fish which live in the fresh or brackish Waters.

*That a burlesque
Salmon fishing!*

C H A P. VII.

Of taking Fish without Angles ; and first, of laying Hooks

THE laying of Hooks to take Fish in the Night most commonly used for the Pike, in great bro Waters or Mears, full of Sedge, Bulrushes, and oth Weeds, being very deep and muddy. Some do use lay them for the Eel also ; but you shall understan that if you lay them for the Pike, you must by Means let your Hook go to the Bottom, but, with Float, keep it half a Foot from the Ground : But if y lay for Eels, then let your Hooks be smaller, and f as low as they will.

Now for the Matter of laying them. You shall b the Hook as you did when you angled, with Men Roach, Dace, Gudgeon, or Millers-Thumbs ; a being made fast to strong Packthread, fasten also t Packthread to a strong Cord, which Cord, if it be th Fathom in Length, may hold sixteen or twenty Hoo then fixing two strong Stakes into the Earth, fasten two Ends of the large Cord to the two Stakes, and let it lie from Sun-set to Sun-rise, and you shall ne fail, but some of your Hooks will have taken. O observe if you lay for Pikes, to lay in the Midst of Water, near the Sedge and Weeds ; but if you lay Eels, lay very near the Banks, so there be no hollow rotten Trees growing thereon.

Now if you would with these laid Hooks take a other Sort of Fish, you shall lay such Hooks as are for them ; and before you depart away, cast into Water good Store of Pellets of those Pastes which proper for the Fish you would take ; as, the Paste w is made of Bran, Sheeps-blood, Garlick, and Lee Wine, will take all Sorts of small Fish. That P which is made of Sheep's-liver, Guts, Hog's-bl Bread-crumbs, and Opopanax, will bring Perch, Ten Carp or Bream unto your Hooks ; and that Paste w is only made of Rue, Pine-apple Kernels, Bean- and Honey, will bring the Salmon, the Trout, Che or Barbels unto your Hooks at all Times of the Year

C H A

C. H. A. P. VIII.

Of preserving Fish from all Sorts of Devourers.

AMONGST all the ravenous Creatures which destroy Fish, there is none more greedy than the Otter, whose only Food being thereon, hourly lieth in wait to consume them; therefore, tho' some Fishermen use to take him with a Wheel made with a double channel, and called by the Name of the Otter Wheel, whose Practise is so ordinary that every Fisherman knows the Use of the same: Yet, for a more ready and easy Way to destroy them, you shall, as near as you can, find out their Haunts, and the Holes that are in the Bank and under the Roots of Trees, where they lodge; and then take a great Eel, and sitting her Back above her Navel, cut in three or four Lumps of Arsnick, and then stitch the Skin again, and so lay the Eel from the Navel downward in the Water, and from the Navel upward upward of the Water; which when the Otter finds, it is his Property to eat unto the Navel, and no further; which, if he doth, it is certain it is the last he will eat. Next to the Otter, the Hern is a great Devourer of Fish, especially the small Fry, or that which lives in shallow Places; therefore to destroy the Hern, you shall take a strong Barbel Hook, and bait it either with a piece of raw or a Piece of Dog's Flesh; colour your Line green, and lay it in a shallow Place made fast to some Stake, where the Hern may wade to the Knee to take it; and as soon as he hath swallowed it, he shall no more go out of the Place.

Now, forasmuch as this Fowl is a great Destruction to the young Spawn or Fry of Fish, it shall be good, for the Preservation thereof, to stake down into the Bottom of your Ponds good long Kids or Faggots of Brushwood, mix'd with the Boughs of green Willows or Sallows, in which the Fish casting their Spawn, it will be a Defence for them till they are able to flee into betwixt the safety.

Next to the Hern, the Water-Rat is a great Destroyer of young Fish, especially Trouts, Crevisses, or other that lie in Holes in the Banks. The best Way to destroy

destroy them is by hunting them with Water-Dogs which is a very good Sport, and I have seen twenty kill'd in an Afternoon: But some do use to take them with Hutches, or Dead-Falls, set in their Haunts; but the former Way is the better.

Next them, the Sea-Pye and Sea-Mew are great Devourers or Consumers of Fish, and there is no better Way to take them than by setting Rods, dress'd with Water-Lime, shoring on the Edge of the Water, and Row over another, in such Places as the Water is shallowest, and upon some Tufts of green Weeds lay Fish for a Bait under the Rods, at which he can no sooner strike but he is presently taken.

Next these the King-Fisher (which is a small, green Bird) is a great Destroyer of Fish, and the Way to take him is to mark the Haunt where he commonly sitteth, which is always in some Bush next the River; then make a little Cradle of limed Straws about his Seat, and he will quickly take him, for he seldom changeth, but continueth upon one Bough.

Now, to conclude, for the Cormorant, the Moor-Hen, the Baldcoot, or the Ospray, which destroy all Kinds of Fish whatsoever, there is no better Way to kill them than by watching their Haunts, to shoot at them with a Fowling-Piece, and in the Breeding Time of the Year to destroy their Nests.

C H A P. IX.

Of the Ordering of Ponds for the Nourishment of

TH E R E is nothing that killeth Fish, or makes them prosper worse, than putrified and stinking Waters; neither is there any Thing which corrupts Water sooner than Weeds, Sedge, and such Filth being suffered to grow therein; therefore it is once in three Years to cleanse your Ponds of all Masses of Weeds and Filth, which, with a small Boat and sharp Hook, you may easily do at the Fall of the Year for to cut them in the Spring doth encrease them. if your Ponds be much subject to Mud, as for the

For those in a Clay Country are, then it is proper once
seven Years to drain and lade them, and this should
be done at the Beginning of the Spring; and such Fish
you are willing to preserve, you shall put into smaller
Stews, and the other dispose at your Pleasure;
then causing the Mud to be trodden with Mens Feet as
you tread Mortar, you shall see all the Eels rise aloft,
which when you have taken also, then with Shovels and
rough-Spades cast out all the Mud and Filth (which is
singular Compass for Land) upon the Bank; then
the Bottom of the Pond and the Sides with green
Sods, and fix them hard into the Earth with small Stakes
Sallow, and these Sods will nourish the Fish exceed-
ingly.

This done, if your Pond have not any fresh Spring in
it then you shall lade the Water back again into it; and
in draining your Stews, take out your Store of Fish,
and put them again into your Pond, observing ever that
there be two Parts Spawners, and put a Third Melters.

These Pits and small Stews, howsoever others write
the contrary, are better for feeding of Fish than breed-
ing; therefore you shall always keep them with fresh
Water, and placed so one by another, that you may
empty them at Pleasure; once in three Months renew
your Banks and Bottoms with fresh Sods of the fruitfullest
Grass: Also, you shall put into them good Store of
Fry, as Roach, Dace, Menow, Loach and
Worms-Thumbs, for the bigger Fish will feed thereon;
the inward Garbage and Blood of Sheep, Calves,
Pigs, and such like, which will fatten Fish suddenly;
you must know, that as the Fish in Rivers have, by
force of the Current, ever something brought to them
to feed on, so the Fish which are imprison'd in Ponds,
want that Help, must either be relieved or else
starved; and there is nothing better to feed them with
than that before spoken of, or else Brewers Grains,
Milk, Curds, and any Corn whatsoever, thrown
into the Ponds Morning and Evening.

C H A P. X.

Of the best Water-Lime.

THE best Water-Lime that can be made, which will most surely hold within the Water, to take a Pound of the strongest Bird-Lime, and wash in nine running Waters till there be no Hardness in, and then beat out the Water clean, and dry it; when done, put it in an earthen Pot, and add thereunto much Capon's Grease as will make it run, two Spoonfuls of strong Vinegar, a very little Lamp Oil, and Venice Turpentine, and boil them all gently together upon a slow Fire, stirring it continually. Then take from the Fire, and let it cool; and at any Time when you mean to use it, warm it, and then anoint either your Rods, Bushes, Straws, or Lines, and no Water will take away the Strength.

—♦♦♦♦♦—
Of particular Recreations.

C H A P. I.

Of Shooting in the Long-Bow.

THERE be many other particular Recreations necessary for the Knowledge and Practice of a Husbandman; as first, shooting in the Long-Bow, which is both healthful for the Body, and necessary for the Common-wealth; the first extending the Limbs, and making them pliant; the other an able Strength fit to preserve and defend his Country. And first, shooting in the Long-Bow, a Man must observe the following few Rules; first, that he have a good Eye to behold and discern his Mark; a knowing Judgment to understand the Distance of Ground; to take the true Advantage of a side Wind, and to know in what Compass his Arrow

ft fly; and a quick Dexterity to give his Shaft a
 sharp, and sudden Loose. He must in the
 position itself stand fair, comely, and upright with his
 Left-foot a convenient Stride before his Right,
 his Hams stiff, his Left-arm holding his Bow in the
 left stretch'd straight out, and his Right-arm, with
 three first Fingers and his Thumb, drawing the
 Arrow unto his Right-ear, the Neck of his Arrow
 lying between the Fore-Finger and long-Finger
 of his Right-hand, and the Steel of his Arrow below
 the Feathers upon the middle Knuckle of his Fore-finger
 of his Left-hand; he shall draw his Arrow up close unto
 his Head, and deliver it on the Instant, without hanging
 the String. The best Bow is either *Spanish* or *English*
 yew, and the worst of Withen or Elm. The best
 Arrow is of Birch, Sugar-Chest, or Brazil; and the
 best Feather grey or white.

The Marks to shoot at are three, Buts, Pricks, or
 Targets: The But is a level Mark, and therefore would
 require a strong Arrow with a very broad Feather; the
 Prick is a Mark of some Compass, yet most certain in
 Distance, therefore should have nimble, strong
 Arrows, with a middle Feather, all of one Weight and
 Length; and the Rover is a Mark uncertain, sometimes
 high, sometimes short, and therefore must have Arrows
 lighter or heavier, according to the Distance of Place.

Infirmity in the Arms or Back take
 a Man the Use of the Long-Bow, he
 may then, with a Cross-Bow made for
 him, carried upon a String, and the
 Trigger End placed in a Rest, with Arrows

*Of Shoot-
 ing in
 Cross-
 Bows.*

strong, heavy, and suitable to the Strength of
 the Bow, shoot at all the former Marks, and reap the
 Pleasure he formerly did with his Long-Bow.

There is another Recreation, which,
 however unlawful in the Abuse thereof, yet
 used with Moderation, is even by Phy-

*Of Bowl-
 ing.*

sicians themselves held exceeding wholesome, and hath
 been prescribed for a Recreation to great Persons; and
 is Bowling, in which a Man shall find great Art
 in choosing out his Ground, and preventing the winding
 of the Ball, and many turning Advantages of the same,
 whether

whether it be in open, wide Places, or in close Allies and in this Sport the chusing of the Bowl is the greater Cunning, your flat Bowls being the best for close Allies your round biaſſed Bowls for open Grounds of Advantage, and your round Bowls, like a Ball, for great Swarths that are plain and level.

Not inferior to these Sports, either for Health or Action, are the Tennis, or Balloon; the first being Pastime in close or open Courts, striking a little round Ball to and fro, either with the Palm of the Hand or with Rackets; the other a strong and moving Sport in the open Fields, with a great Ball of double Leather filled with Wind, and so driven to and fro with the Strength of a Man's Arm, arm'd in a Bracer of Wood; either of which Actions must be learnt by the Eye and Practice not by the Ear or Reading.



Directions for Gardening.

In JANUARY.

GREAT Care is now to be taken of Plants in Hot Beds, by covering the Glasses with Mats or Inter, before Sun-Set. However, Cucumber and Melon Plants must have as much Sun as can come thro' the Glasses, in order to defend them from the Steams of the Hot-Bed, which descend in unhealthy Drops, and to the tender Plants. These Steams may, in a great Measure, be corrected, by giving the Dung a Cover of Earth six Inches thick. The Hot-Beds ought to be recruited, by laying hot Dung to their Sides every fifth or twenty Days.

Cucumber and Melon Seeds should now be sown every Week for fear of Accidents.

Small Sallads, such as Mustard, Radish, Cresses, Lettuce, may now be sown, and Mint set up in the declining Hot-Beds. Let them have Air to give them their Tastes.

Pease and *Spanish* Beans may now be sown; and Turnips, Carrots, Parsnips, and Cabbages set for Seed: and Sage, Thyme, and other sweet Herbs, ought to have fresh Earth, without disturbing their Roots.

Now it is proper to make Composts of Earth, by mixing several Soils together, such as Sand and Clay; which is better for Trees, and other durable Plants, than Dung. Don't suffer Weeds to grow upon your heaps.

Now dress the Strawberry-Beds with new Earth, if you have not done it in *December*. Uncover also the roots of too luxuriant Trees, and cut off some of the bigger Roots; and add Manure, if Occasion, but lay it not too near the Roots.

If the Weather be open, trench the Ground, and lay in Ridges till you use it. If it be Frost, remove great trees, plant your Timber Trees on Banks of Earth, if your Ground be wet and heavy; but in Holes of broken Earth, six Feet square and three deep, and lay dung, or rather Composts at their Roots, if the Soil be dry or sandy. You must never plant such Trees deep, whose Roots spread near the Surface. Don't cut off the right Branch or Stem, but cut the collateral Branches close to the Stem.

Chuse small Trees rather for planting than those of a large Size; but always have a just Regard to the Soil and Exposure, considering whether it be suitable to the Tree.

Continue to prune Vines, all dwarf Trees, and all forward Fruit-Trees, (by cutting off the too luxuriant and disorderly Branches close to the Stem) Pears and Peaches excepted.

If the Weather be wet, rub the Moss off the Trees. Now, about the End of the Month, gather Cions and Grafts, before their Buds sprout, from good-bearing Fruit-Trees, Pears and Plumbs, and lay them half buried in Earth to be used next Month.

Now make Beds for Mushrooms, and Mats to cover the Beds of tender Plants; and fill your Caps with fresh Earths for several Uses

244 *The Gentleman's Companion.*

Now is a proper Time to make and enrich Hop-Hills for planting young Hops, and to manure and cover with fresh Earth your old Hop-Hills.

It is also now proper to turn up your Bee-Hives, and to besmear them with fresh Wax.

Observables of the Green-House and Flower Garden.

In the Green-House pick off all mouldy Leaves, and don't water any Plant that is able to hold up its Head; it being now better to keep Cold out from Plants than make them grow; for which Reason you must keep your Heats very temperate, and stop up such Cracks as admit the cold Air. Upon a Thaw, make some Charcoal Fires to dry the Damps; and let in a little Air, if the Wind is not too cold.

In the Flower-Garden strew some loose Straw over the Beds of Anemonies and Ranunculus; and if Snow has lain upon the Beds, throw it off as soon as the Thaw begins.

If the Weather be gentle and warm, plant Anemonies and Ranunculus Roots, in Beds well wrought with Spade; or rather in sifted Earth, fresh and free from Dung.

About the Middle pick off the dead Leaves from your Auriculas, and take away as much Earth out of the Pot as you can, without disturbing the Root, and fill the Pot up with fresh Earth, prepared with sandy Loam, mixed with rotted Wood or Leaves; raise this Earth quite to the Leaves, but bury none of them. And Note, all composed Earths should lie a Year before they are used.

Now is the Time to transplant the Winter Aconite Flower, by parting its Roots, which are now visible.

Flowers now blowing in the Green-House and Flower Garden.

Ficoides, Aloes, Indian yellow and white Spanish Ixamies, Candy Tuft-Tree, or Thlaspi Sempervivum, some Kinds of Geranians, the Precoc-Tulip, Barba-Jovis, Carnations, Kidney-bean Tree.

In the Flower-Garden. Winter Aconite, single

Flower, Christmas-Flower or Black-Hellebore, Snow-Drops, Brufnal-Hyacinth, some Stock July-Flowers, single Anemonies, Gentiàella, Spring and sweet-scented Cyclamens, *Canary* Campanella, Primroses, and some Polyanthus, *Oriental* Hyacinth, *Levantine* Narcissus, some Auriculas, the *Venetian* Vetch, the *Laurus-Tinus*, Mezereon, Arbutus-Holly, Pyracarilba, Amomum-Plinii, and the *Glastenbury* Thorn. These are more forward or backward, according to the Soil.

Fruits which are most lasting are,

Some Grapes; the *Kentish*, Ruffet, Golden, *French*, *Kirton*, and *Dutch* Pippins; John-Apples, Winter-Queenings, the Marygold and Harvey-Apples, Pomewater, Golden-dropt, Renneting, Loves-Pearmain, and the Winter-Pearmain.

Winter-Burgamot, Winter-Boncretien, Winter-Musk, Winter-Norwich, and Great Surrein-Pears.

In F E B R U A R Y.

Continue to sow Melons and Cucumbers, and screen Mold to be used next Month; and renew the Heat of your Hot-Beds, as before. Upon declining Hot-Beds now sow Cauliflowers and Purslane green, but not the red Sort.

About the Middle sow Anise, Pease, Beans, Rashes, Carrots, Parsnips, Potatoes, Onions, Spinach, Barley, Corn-Sallad, Leeks, some Turnips, *Dutch* Brown Lettuce, Skirrits in light Ground, *Battersea* Kidney-Beans in Hot-Beds, to be ready in *April*.

Now plant out Cabbage and Cauliflowers in warm places; also Liquorice and Asparagus, if the Season be mild: Also Garlic, Shalots and Rocambole. Plant out under Glassees the curl'd Lettuce to cabbage early.

Now make Hot-Beds and Caps, and sow all Sorts of Annuals, except *French* and *African* Marygolds: such as Larks-Spurs, Hollyoaks, Sweet-Williams, Canterbury-Bells, Prifur-Rose-Tree, Annual-Stocks, Candytufts, Pinks and scarlet Lychnis, Auriculas, Polyanthus, and Anemonies.

Now sow Seeds of *Laburnum*, *Spanish Broom*, *Bay Yew*, and *Holly-Berries*: Also the Seeds of *Lemon* and *Oranges*, taken fresh from the Fruit, and sown in Pots, which must be set deep in *Hot-Beds*.

Now sow hard Seeds, *Kernels*, *Nuts*, or *Stone-Fruit*.

Now is the best Time to set any Sort of *Slips*; to make *Layers* of *Roses*, *Jeffamine*, *Honeysuckles*, *Plum*, *Lareu*, *Laurus-Tinus*, and other *Shrubs*; also *Pomegranates*, *Olives* and *Arbutus*, and to lay *Branches* to take *Root*, such as *Elm-Sets* gathered from large Trees and all Trees propagated by *Slips*.

This is also a very convenient Time to plant Trees either for *Fruit*, *Timber* or *Ornament*; to set *Acorns* of the *Ilex English Oak*, *Cork-Tree*, *Walnuts*, *Chestnuts*, *Bay-Berries*, and the Seeds of the *Elm*, which will come up the next Year. Also to sow *Ash-Keys* and *Beech-Mast* which have been prepared a Year in *Sand*. Also *Haws*, *Yew*, *Holly*, and *Evergreen-Berries*, if prepared.

Now make *Plantations* for *Strawberries*, *Rasberries*, *Gooseberries*, *Currants* and *Roses*. Plant yet *Vine*, *Honeysuckles* and *Jeffamines*. About the End begin to graft *Apples*, *Pears* and *Cherries* in the *Cleft*. Now plant out the following *Shrubs*; viz. *Syringa*, *Lilac*, *Guilder Rose*, *Laburnum*, *Spireas*, *Altheus*, and plant and transplant *Peonies*.

Plant *Hops* this Month, seven or eight *Sets* in a *Hole*, each having no more than two *Joints*.

Now trim your *Palisado-Hedges* and *Espaliers*, and spread the *Wall-Trees* well at the *Bottom*. Prune and nail your *Fruit-Trees*, and cleanse them from *Moss* and *Canker*: But don't prune tender *Wall-Fruit* till the *Frost* is over; tho' you must do it before the *Buds* grow turgid. Also feed weak *Stocks*.

Now shift *Myrtles* into larger *Pots*, shaving off the outside *Fibres* of their *Roots*, and pruning their *Heads* pretty close. If there be *Occasion*, also head *Orange Trees* waxing the *Wounds* with soft *Wax*, and give them fresh *Earth*.

Some *Anemonies* and *Ranunculus* may be now set, but late; and *Carnations*, planted out in *Autumn*, are now to be earthed. Now sow *Alaternus* and *Lar*.

Spur

Spurs, and Air-housed Carnations. Also sow Amaranthus in Hot-Beds, in Drills not too thick, and transplant in six Weeks.

Flowers now blowing in the Green-House and Flower-Garden.

In the Green-House. The Thlaspi-Sempervirens, some Ficoides and Geranians, also the yellow and Indian Jessamines.

In the Flower-Garden. Hellebores of several Kinds, the Winter Aconite, Snow-Drops, Crocus, some Hyacinths, Double-Dazies, and Stock-Gilli-flowers, Spring-Cyclamens, Single-Anemonies, *Persian* Iris, Single-Hellebatics, Daffodills and Wall-Flowers, Laurus-Tinus and Mezereon, some Tulips, the Radix-Cava, Polyanthus, Auriculas, Mistleto, *Canary* Campanella, Spring-Calthicum, Narcissus, some Carnations, Primroses, *Venetian* Vetch, Cornelian-Cherry, Dens-Caninus, *Yorkshire* Sedum, Perriwinkle, Dwarf-Almond, Fritillaria, Ananas or Pine-Apple.

Fruits which are yet lasting.

The same as in *January*, except the Golden-Pippin and Pomewater: also the Pomeroy, and the Winter Peppering and Dagovent-Pear.

In MARCH.

NOW carry Dung into the Orchards and Gardens, and smoak your Orchards. Plant all Sorts of Trees that are to be planted in moist Grounds, as Pears, Apples, Plumbs, Peaches, Apricots and Nectarines; but don't, from the Peach and Nectarine, cut off the top Root, as in the others. Now shelter the tender fruit-Trees and Flowers from the Winds and heavy showers. Also water every Morning all young-planted Trees and Shrubs, for the Rains will not pierce deep enough.

Still continue your Slit-Grafting, first of Pears, then the Apples. About the Middle of the Month prune the Peaches and Apricots, and your last Year's Grafts, and

cut off the Heads of your budded Stocks. Also separate the Suckers of your Fig-Trees that have been in Earth and set them in Cases in Hot-Beds. Also prune Pear and Fir-Trees.

Now cover the Roots of such Trees as have been laid open all Winter, and remove young Trees, (if you have not done it before) if the Bud is not too forward; and stake and bind up all new set Trees and weak Plants.

Edge your Borders with Herbs about the End of the Year or Beginning of next Month. Also slip and set Box net for Edgings. Top your Rose-Trees near a Leaf-Bud and keep them in single Stems, taking off the withered Branches.

Slip and set Sage, Thyme, Rosemary, Lavender, Mint, Balm, Pennyroyal, Savory, Rue, Tansey, and all Sorts of durable Garden Sweet-Herbs, and Summer-Flowers. Strip all Kinds of fibrous Roots not now flowering, as Gentianella, double White-Rockets, Scarlet-Lychnis, Rose-Campions, Cardinal-Flower, double Stock July-Flowers, Hollyoaks, Perennials, Sun-Flowers, Asters, Monks-Hood, Sweet-Williams, Sea-Pinks, Primroses, Hepaticas, Auriculas, Camomile, Hyacinth, Tuberose, Matricaria, Hellebore, Wall-Flowers, Lupines, Convolvulus, *Spanish* Jessamine.

Now set Lemon, Orange, and Myrtle-Trees, Oleanders, Dates, Aloes, Leutiseus, Amomuses; and open the Windows of your Conservatory, to acquaint them with the Air in the Day Time.

Also transplant the Arbor-Judæ, and sow its Seeds. Plant and make Layers of the Passion-Tree in moist Places, to make it bear. And graft the *Spanish* white Jessamine upon the common *English* white.

Towards the End transplant Yews, Hollies, Phillyreas, and other Evergreens; and sow the Seeds of Evergreen-Privet.

Now review in the Hot-Beds such Exotics as have sickned in the Conservatory; but let the Beds be covered eight Inches thick with Earth, to prevent the Plants being injured by the Steams of the Dung. Now water a little and often your Orange and Lemon-Trees, also your Auriculas Seedlings, which are to be now set in Shade.

Shade. Give also a little Water to the most succulent Ficoides.

Transplant your Amomum-Plinii, or Winter-Cherry, pruning their Roots and Branches, and giving them fresh Earth, a good deal of Water and Shade. Transplant also your Carnation Layers for blowing (that were not transplanted in Autumn, which is much the best Time) in Earth, composed of $\frac{2}{3}$ of sandy Loam, mix'd with $\frac{1}{3}$ of rich, melon Earth, or rotted Wood, which has lain in the Compost two Years.

Now sow Radishes, Marygolds, *Silesia*, Imperial and Cabbage-Lettuce among all the Crops; Scorzonera, Pease, Beans and young Sallad, such as Spinach, Rape, Sorrel, Cabbage and Savoys for Winter, and Cellery for early blanching, Endive, Leeks, Onions, Beats, Charvil, Fennel, Dill, Burnet, Alifanders, Basil, Borzage, Buglos, Cresses, Garlick, Marjoram, Orach, Carrots, Turnips, Parsnips, Parsley, Succory, and Smallage. Transplant Lettuce to cabbage, and for Seed.

Now sow Pinks, Carnations, Sweet-Williams, Bays, Alaternus, Phillyrea, and most perennial Greens, Pine-Kernels and Fir-Seeds. Also Poppies, Venus's Looking-glass, Stock July-Flowers, and Noli-me-Tangere, Auriculas in Pots or Cases, in good Earth.

In Hot-Beds now sow your choice Exotic-Flowers, your Balsamines, your Balsamum-Mofs, Pomum-Amoris, *Ethiopic* Apples, your choice Amaralbus, Dactyls, Geranium, Hedyfarum, Clypeatum, the Humble and Sensitive Plants, Leutiseus, Myrtle-Berries, Capsicum Indicum, Cana Indica, Flos-Africanus, Marvel of Peru, Nasturtium Indicum, *Indian* Phaseoli, Myrrh, Carobs, Maracoe, *French* and *African* Marygolds, and Convulvulus.

Now transplant Cauliflowers to succeed those planted in Autumn. About the Middle rake and dress your Asparagus-Beds, and made new and unnatural Ground thus; first trench your Ground, and lay a good Coat of Dung at the Bottom, which cover with eight Inches of Earth; set your Plants in four streight Lines, at ten Inches distance, and let the Allies between your Beds be two Feet. Sow Onions over the whole.

Now dress Artichokes, leaving only three or four Suckers on each strong Root; but don't take the Dung off your Beds till the Frosts are gone.

Now plant Liquorice and Hops, and dress your Hop-Grounds and Strawberry-Beds; and plant out Cives, and Taragon-Slips, at eight Inches distance from Salads. Refresh your Melon and Cucumber-Beds, and sow now on new Beds for a full Crop.

Now earth up your Layers, and cut off the infected Leaves; give fresh Mould to your Campanula-Pyramidalis, and set your Pots in a Pit so that the Sun may come at them; sow their Seeds and set their Slips.

Plant Tuberose in Pots of fresh Earth, giving them gentle Heat, but no Water till they sprout.

Now cover and defend from Blights, by Mats, or Canvas laid on Frames over your Beds, your choice Tulips, Anemonies, Chamæ-Iris, Auriculas, Spring Cyclamen, and Brufnal-Hyacinth.

Cover also your Seedlings of Pine, Firr, Phillyrea, Bays, Cyprus, and all other Winter Greens, till they have pass'd two or three Years in the Nursery, and are fit to be transplanted.

About the End of the Month set your Auriculas Pots in order, facing the East, and let them be defended on every other Side from the Sun.

Now your Bees sit, therefore keep them close Night and Morning.

Flowers now blowing in the Green-House and Garden.

Anemonies, Hyacinths, Junquills, Narcissus, Precoc Tulips, white Crocus, Polyanthus, Violets, Dazies, Wall-flowers, Stock July-Flowers, Iris, Hepaticas, Crown-Imperial, Dens-Caninus, some Fritillaria, Auriculas, black and white Hellebore, Hermodactyls, Chamæ-Iris and Tuberose-Iris, Leucoion, Dutch Mezerian, Zebion, Rubus, Adoratus, Cheledomin, Winter Aconite and Arbor-Judæ.

Trees in Blossom.

The Almond-Tree, Apricot, Peach, Laurus-Tinus, some Oranges, some Indian yellow Jessamine, some Ficoides, or Fig-Marygolds, and Aloes.

Fruit

Fruits yet lasting.

Golden Ducks, Dorset, Pippins, Rennetings, Loves Pearmain, and John Apples; the latter Boncretien, and Double-blossom Pear.

In **A P R I L.**

NOW water your new-planted Trees once in ten Days, and fence your Seed-Onions, Smoak your Orchards every Evening with Straw or Litter.

Be careful to gather all Snails and Slugs every Morning and Evening; and the best Defence against these Vermin is, to twist about the Roots of your Standard-Trees three or four Wreaths of Hair-Line. About your Wall-Trees you must also make a Circle of the same, without the Extremities of their Branches. Do the same about your Beds of Plants.

Now be careful to hough and pluck up all Weeds, that they may not shed their Seeds in your Grounds.

Now set Kidney-beans three Inches asunder, in dry Weather and light Earth, and let each Row be two Feet distant. Also set Beans to succeed others, and cut down those that are too thick. Set also Artichokes and Madder. Also plant Cuttings or Slips of Rosemary, Lavender, Sage and Penny-royal, after Rain.

Sow now Cabbage-Lettuce, Cellerly, Spinach, Spanish Chardons, Purslane, Cauliflowers, Radishes, Carrots, Nasturtium-Indicum; all small Sallads, and all Aromatic Plants, as Marjoram, Thyme, Hyssop, Winter Savory, Basil and Scurvy-grass, in natural Grounds.

Now sow Pinks and Carnations, Sweet-Williams, Leucium and Lupines; also the less tender Exotic-Seeds, scarlet Beans, Scabious and Columbines once in four or five Years; Marygolds, Gnaphalium, Cyanus, Belvider, Digitalis, Delphinium, Candy Tufts, Muscipula, Media, Hollyoaks, Garden-Pansies and Scorpoides, all in natural Ground.

Now

Now sow all Sorts of Garden Seeds in dry, and set all Sorts of Garden Herbs in wet Weather. Also Pine and Fir-Seeds, Phillyrea and Alaternus.

Continue to plant Strawberries at ten Inches distance and water your Strawberries in blossom two or three Times a Week.

Still make Layers of Jessamine, Honeyfuckles, Rose and transplant your tender Shrubs; such as *Spanish* Jessamines, Myrtles, Oleanders, young Oranges, Cyclamens and Pomegranatas, all after they begin to sprout.

Now plant and transplant all fibrous-rooted Plants that were neglected last Month; such as Violets, Hepaticas, Primroses, Hellebore and Matricuria.

Set out your Flos-Cardinalis; slip and set Marum Water-Anemonies and Ranunculus. Take off your Sets of Tube-roses, and set them in new Earth, with a Layer of rich Earth under it; place them in a temperate Hot-Bed, and don't water them till they spring. Use in the same Manner the Narcissus of *Japan* or *Jersey* Lily, only mix a little more Sea Sand with the Earth and plant them near the Surface.

You may now open the Windows of your Conservatory from Morning to Night, and bring out all your choice, tender Shrubs, except your Oranges; and you may also begin now to graft all such by Approach. But be still careful how you expose your tender Exotics, upon the Appearance of two or three fine Days.

Now remove all Sorts of Ever-greens, and sow Winter Greens. Make fresh Hot-Beds to transplant your Seedling Oranges and Lemons from their first Beds; and put some of your Amaranthus, Tricolor and Cocks-comb into Pots, and put them into such a fresh Bed to make them tall.

Auriculas now in full Bloom should be watered once in three Days, but they are to be kept from Sun and Rain. Water their Seedlings, which now begin to appear, but keep their Cases in Shade till *August*.

Give a very small Quantity of Water, and then when the Sun shines hot, to Aloes, Sedum, Euphorbium, Torch Thistles, and other succulent Plants.

Stake up your Carnations, and all Plants and Flowers that are grown to any Height.

If the cold Winds are past, clip Phyllyrea, Alaternus, Cyprus, Box, Myrtle, Barba-Jovis, &c. Also clip your Edgings of Box, and mow your Grass Walks, and Edgings often. Roll your Grass and Gravel Walks, and rake and roll your Gravel and Shell Walks.

Hough Carrots and Parsnips, leaving five Inches betwixt each Root; and Onions, leaving three Inches betwixt each.

Make Ridges for Cucumbers and Melons for a full Crop, and prune off the superfluous Melon-Branches on the most forward Ridges; but don't lift your Runners off the Ground to do it, lest you bruise them.

The Fruit of Vines which have been planted against forward Frames, and have had artificial Heats, begin now to set; therefore you must pick off the Buds of the bearing Branches, two or three Buds above the Fruit.

Now pole your Hop-Grounds, and tie the Vines to the Poles. Also open the Doors of your Bee-Hives, for now they hatch, and must have the Benefit of the Spring Flowers.

You have now in the Kitchen-Garden and Orchard,

Autumn Carrots, Winter Spinach, Sprouts of Cabbage and Cauliflowers, Turnip Tops, Asparagus, young Radishes, Dutch brown Lettuce and Cresses, Burnet, Taragon, young Onions, Scallions, Leeks and early Kidney-Beans. On Hot-Beds, Purslane, Cucumbers and Mushrooms: Some Cherries, green Apricots, and Gooseberries for Tarts.

Flowers in the Green-House and Flower-Garden.

Anemonies, Auriculas, Almonds, Arbor-Judæ, Aranthus, Bell-Flowers, Chama-Iris, Crown-Imperial, Campanifolium, Cyclamen, Cowslips, Caltha, Palustris, Cocklearia, Dens-Caninus, double Dazies, Frittilaria, Florence Iris, Gentianella, Geranium, Musk-grape Flower, Hypericum-Frutex, Hepatica, some Hyacinths, Starry Hyacinth, Persian Hyacinth, double Junquills, Persian Lilies, Ladies Smock, Lucoium, Lilacs, Narcissus, Muscavia Revers'd, Primrose, Pulsatilla, Pavietaria, Peonies, Persian Jessamine, Pavietaria-Lutea, Rosemary, Ranunculus, Radix Cava, Stock July-flowers, some Tulips, and double Violets.

Trees

Trees in Flower.

Lilac, *Persian* Jessamine, Laburnum, double and single-blossomed Almonds, some Pears, Cherries and Apricots, Oranges, Ficoides, Aloes, Arbor-Judæ, and some Kinds of Geranium.

Fruits yet lasting and in Prime.

Pippins, Deuxans, *Westbury* Apple, Russeting, Gilliflower, flat Bennet, &c. Later Boncretien, Oak-Pear, and double-blossom'd Pear, &c.

In *M A Y*.

IF you are behind-hand in the Work of the foregoing Months, no Time is to be lost the first Week of this, for a Day now is equal to ten in *March*.

Now smoak your Orchards, as before; bind down your Branches of Arbours, and clip Hedges and Trees. Bind your Hop-Poles, and make up your Hills after Rain. Also set your Bees at full Liberty, and expect Swarms.

About the 15th you may trust abroad your Exotics and most tender Shrubs, cleaning them from Dust, and giving them four Inches of rich, fresh Earth and Water. Loosen the Earth about them with a Fork.

You may now bring forth your Lemon and Orange Trees, when the Mulberry Leaves are pretty forward for the Juice of that Tree being very thick, requiring a settled Warmth and an equal Temperature in the Air to put it into Motion, its Leaves shew the good Condition of the Season. You may also now transplant your Orange Trees: If you do, fill your Cases with natural Earth taken up half a Spit deep under the Turf of your best Pasture; mix this with Cow-Dung, or mellow, screened Soil, with a few rotten Willow Sticks. If the Roots are too big, cut the largest a little at the Bottom, and don't set them too deep. Put some Brush-wood in the Bottom of your Cases, and set your Trees thus transplanted in Shade fourteen Days; then bring them to the Sun,

watering

watering them with Water that has stood in the Sun, mix'd with Sheeps-Dung, but don't wet the Stem. And if you cut any Branch, lay a Sear-cloth on the Wound, smeared with Rosin, Turpentine, Bees-wax and Tallow.

You may now inarch Lemon and Orange Trees, on Lemon rather than Orange-Stocks, which may be cut from the Mother-Trees in *August*. You may also inarch *Spanish* white and *Indian* yellow Jessamine on common white Jessamine strong Stocks.

Now plant Cuttings of *Arabian* Jessamine, Geranium, and other exotic Shrubs, to strike Root. Also the Cuttings of Ficoides and Sedums, letting them lie two Days in the Sun after they are cut to dry their Wounds, then plant them in open Borders to strike Root, and put them into Pots in two Months. You may likewise, about the End of this Month, cut some Leaves off the *Indian* Fig, letting them lie two or three Days in the Sun before you set them in Earth, composed of $\frac{1}{3}$ of sifted Rubbish of old Brick-Walls, and $\frac{2}{3}$ of light and rich well-sifted Earth. Let them remain abroad fifteen Days after they are thus set, before you put them into your Hot-Beds.

Set Sage and Rosemary, take up Tulips dry'd in the Stalk, tie up the Spindles of your Carnations; cut down the Leaves and Flower-Stems of Crocus, and all other bulbous-rooted Flowers that have done blowing, except such as you chuse to let stand for Seed; and gather the Seed of Anemonies as it ripens, for the least Air carries it away; shade from Sun and Rain your choice Tulips, and when they have done blowing, break off their Seed-Pods, that the Roots may gather Strength.

If the Weather is now well settled, transplant from the Hot-Bed into open Borders your choice Annuals, such as Capsicums, *French* and *African* Marygolds, Amaranthus, Basils, Convolvulus. Plant out all Winter Greens, Stock July-Flowers and Water-Ranunculus, the Cuttings of the Passion Flower, and of the tender Shoots of Pyracantha, into moist Places.

Now sow Geranium-Seeds in fresh, sandy Loam, and many other annual Flowers, such as the small, annual Stock, Venus Looking-Glass, Candy Tufts, sweet Margoram, Basil, Thyme, and hot aromatic Herbs and Plants:

256 ~ *The Gentleman's Companion.*

Plants: And also, if the Weather be dry, water them frequently till they come up.

Now take great Care of your Melon Beds or Ridges, carefully prune off all the Water-Branches, which are known by their Breadth and Flatness, pinch off the Tops of such Runners as have Fruit on them, leaving three or four Joints beyond the Fruit. Let the Fruit be well sheltered by the Leaves during their Growth, which is about forty Days, from their setting to their beginning to ripen; after that they can't be too much exposed to the Sun. In dry Weather water the Alleys between your Melon-Ridges, but don't pour it on your Plants, or near their Stems; but Cucumbers require it much. Pond-Water, that lies exposed, is the best.

In light, fresh, natural Ground, now sow Cucumbers twelve Seeds in a Hole, for Sallads and pickling; Lettuce, Radishes, Purslane, Cabbage, Ronceval Pease and Endive, very thin. Also *Dutch* brown Lettuce, to be planted out next Month.

Also replant Imperial and *Silesia* Lettuce, if large enough; and if any of them be cabbaged, cut them cross-wise on the Top, that the Flower-Stems may have Liberty to shoot for Seed. Transplant Cauliflower flowers, and make Drills for Cellery, if it is large enough to be planted out.

Be now careful to gather and destroy the Nests of Catterpillars and Insects; and all Weeds, before they shed their Seeds.

The Product of the Kitchen and Fruit-Garden the Month.

Asparagus, Cauliflowers, Imperial, *Silesia*, Royal and Cabbage-Lettuce, Burnet, Purslane, Cucumbers, Nasturtium-Flowers, Pease and Beans sown in *October*, Artichokes, scarlet Strawberries, and Kidneybeans upon the Hot-Beds. *May* Cherries, *May* Dukes on Walls, green Apricots and Gooseberries.

Flowers now blowing in the Green-House and Flower Garden.

Late-set Anemonies, Asphodel, Antirrhinum, Bluetaria, Bulbous-Iris, Bells double and white, Bee-Flowers, Bugla

Buglafs, Barba-Jovis, Aloes, Chamæ-Iris, Cytiffus, Marantha, Cyclamen, Columbines, Caltha-Palustris, double Cotyledon, Cinamon, Centifol, Cherry-bay, Cowslips, Chalcedons, Crowfoot, Campanellas or *Canterbury Bells*, Candy Tufts, Digitalis or *Deptsford* Pinks, double Pinks, double yellow Globe-flowers, double Dazies, double white Rockets, Fraxinella, Featherfew, Foxgloves, Gladiolus, Granium, Guilder-Rose, Hellebonine, Horminum-Creticum, Hesperis, Honey-suckles, Ficoides, Jaera, Iris-Lychnes, Lilies, Lilium-Convallium, Ladies Slipper, *Persian* Lilies, Leucoium, Laurus, *Laburnum* Larks Spurs, Lupines, Millefolium-Luteum, red Martagon, Mulleins, Homers-Moly, Mary-golds, Monkshood, Sea-Narcissus, Oleaster, Oxyacanthus, Orchis, Oranges, Phalangium Pink, Panfies, Panella, Peonis, Perriwinkle, Pyracantha, Poppies, Ranunculus, Roses, Rosemary, Syringas, Sedum, Stock-Gillyflowers, Star-Flowers, Sifymbrium, Sambucus, Stæchas, Satyrion, Sweet-William, Sea-Pinks, annual Stock, Spireas, *Spanish* Broom, Spider-wort, Tulips, Trachelium, Thalictrum, Tamariscus, Valerian, Veronica, Venus Looking-Glass, Musk Violets: And in Water-Tubs, the yellow Nymphia, or Water-Lily, Pond-Seeds, Water-Ranunculus, Flammala or Spearwort, Frogbits, and Apple-Blossoms.

Fruits in Prime yet lasting.

Pippins, Deuxans or John-Apple, *Westbury* Apples, Ruffeting, Gillyflower-Apple, the Maligar and Codling.

The great Kairville, Winter Boncretien, black *Worcester* Pear, Surrein, and double-blossom Pear.

Now is the most proper Time to distil Herbs, which are in greatest Perfection.

In J U N E.

AS in the foregoing Months we guarded against Wind and Rain, so now we must against the Sun; therefore we must be careful in the Evening to water the extreme Fibres of Roots new set, and all late-planted Trees,

Trees, stirring the Earth a little about them; and laying moist Weeds about the Roots of them; tho' we must hough the Weeds in our Nurseries, and destroy them every where else.

Early in the Mornings mow your Grass-Walks and Edgings, and trim Knots. Now lay the Branches of the Espalier Fruit-Trees, to supply Vacancies and bear Fruit. Also bud and inoculate Peaches and other Stone-Fruits, and pluck off Buds you would not have sprung forth; but beware of cutting any other than the young Shoots of this Year.

Also inoculate Jessamines, Roses, &c. and transplant Myrtle-Slips, and give all your Myrtles a great deal of Water; also the Cytissus Lauratus, of this Year's Shoots.

Cleanse your Vines of exuberant Branches and Tendrils, by cropping, not cutting, stopping at the second Joint above the Fruit, and give frequent Waterings to your Orange-Trees now in flower: Also pick off the Blossoms that are too thick.

Now take up your bulbous Roots that have done blowing, and whose Stalks are dried: After Rain wash them clean, and dry them well in the Sun before you lay them up, and keep them dry. Also take up such Roots as endure not well, and transplant them immediately; such as early Cyclamen, *Oriental* and other bulbous Hyacinths, Iris, Fritillaries, Crown Imperials, Martagon, Dens-Caninus, &c.

Now transplant Roots of Cyclamen, Saffron and Colchicum; and bring Aqueducts from Pools, Ponds and Fens into your Water Tubs.

Lay such Carnations as are strong enough, picking off their tender and weak Flower-Buds. Now help the large-podded Carnations bursting on one Side, by carefully slitting it on the other: Also set on Hooves, or Tobacco-pipes over them, to take the Earwigs; and shade your best Carnations from the Sun.

Continue to transplant Annuals after Rain, and sow others to succeed those sown in the former Months.

Lay your July-flowers, and set Rosemary, and gather and save the Seeds of your Flowers; but keep those of the Polyanthus and Auriculas in the Pods till you sow them.

Now bring out your Aloes, Euphorbiums, Torch Thistles, and Tithymalas, clean them from Dust, pull carefully off the decay'd Leaves of the Aloes, and transplant them into larger Pots, if you see Occasion. Also take off the Sets of your Aloes, and plant them in such Earth as you did the *Indian Fig* last Month. In the same Earth set the Cuttings of your Euphorbium and Torch Thistle, but let all stand fifteen Days abroad before you put them into the Hot-Bed, and give them little Water till they have taken Root.

Now sow and replant Lettuce for cabbaging; sow Radishes and Endive; set Kidney-Beans and Ronceval-Pease, about four or five Inches apart, for *September*.

Now at the full Moon gather Herbs to dry, for the Still and for Syrups; as Sage of Virtue, Mint, Carduus, Sweet-Marjorum, Thyme, Lavender, Rosemary, and Marygold-Flowers. Also set Leeks in good Ground, at six Inches Distance. Cut no Asparagus after the first Week.

Product of the Kitchen and Fruit-Garden.

Asparagus, Garden-Beans and Pease, Kidney Beans and Cauliflowers, Artichokes, *Battersea* and *Dutch* Cabbage, Melons on the first Ridges, young Onions, Carrots, Parsnips sown in *February*, Purslane, Burrage, Burnet, the Flowers of Nasturtium Indicum, the *Dutch* Brown, the Imperial, the Royal, the *Silesia* and Coss Lettuces, some blanch'd Endive, Cucumbers, and all Sorts of Pot-Herbs.

Green Gooseberries, Strawberries, some Raspberries and Currants, white and black Duke Cherries, red Hearts, the *Flemish* and Carnation Cherries, Codlings, Jennet-apples, and the masculine Apricot; and in the Forcing-Houses, all the forward Kinds of Grapes.

Flowers now blowing in the Green-House and Flower-Garden.

Amaranthus, Antirrhinum, After Atticus, Amerius, Allobrogium, Asphodels, Blattaria, or Spider-wort, *Spanish* Broom, Campanula, Cyclamen, Cyanus, Rose Campions, Corn-flag, Citratum, Clematis, Creticum, Carnations, Convolvulus, Candy Tufts, *China* Pinks, Digitalis,

Digilatis, Fraxinella, Ficus Indicus, Female Balsams, Gladiolus, Gentian, Ficoides, Fritillaries, Crataegus, Featherfew double flowered, Geranium, Horminum Creticum, Hieracum, Hesperis, Hellebore, Honey-suckles, Hollyoak, Hedysarum, Jessamine, bulbous Iris, Leutifum, Lychnes, Larks-heels, Lime Trees, Lilies, Lupines, Martagon, Millefolium, Muscavaria, Monks-hood, *African* and *French* Marygolds, Mulleirs, Moth Mulleirs, Nasturtium Indicum, Nigella, Night-shade, Oranges, Lemons, Olives, Oleander, Orchis, Pansy, Phalargium, Pilosella, Palma Christi, Pomgranate, Poppies, Perriwinkles, Sea Pinks, Roses, Rosemary, Sea Ragwort, Stock July-Flowers, Serpillum, Citratum, Sun-Flowers, scarlet Beans, Sweet-Sultan, Sedums, Sweet-Williams, annual Stocks, Trachelium, Thlaspi-Creticum, Veronica, Valerian, Venus Looking Glass, Virgins Bower, Viola Pentaphyl.

Fruits yet lasting.

Pippins, John Apples, Rabillaud, &c. Now dig Hop-Grounds, and watch your Bees.

In JULY.

DON'T trust to the Showers that fall now, as to make you neglect watering Morning and Evening, the outward Fibres of all new-planted Trees and Plants, and such as stand abroad in Pots and Cases, and such as are now seeding; also your Hop-Hills, the Season be very dry.

Now streighten the Entrance of your Bee-Hives, to prevent late and weak Swarms; kill Drones, Wasps, and Insects; and, for this Purpose, plant Phials of Honey and Ale near your Fruit-Trees to catch them. Also now destroy Ants.

Destroy all Weeds with the Hough, and cut down all Flower-Stems that stand not for Seed, covering the Roots with new, fat Earth.

Now sprinkle your Gravel Walks with Brine, Lye, Pot-ashes, or Water in which Walnut Rinds have been steep'd, to kill the Worms.

Now is the chief Time to graft by Approach, and to inoculate your choice Fruit, as Oranges on Lemon Stocks, Jessamines on Roses: To prune your Apricots and Peaches, saving as many of the young, lively Shoots as are well placed. *Note*, The new Bearers commonly perish; cut close those you design should succeed, and discreetly pluck off the Leaves which shade the Fruit. Also tie up and prune all your Exotics which grow disorderly.

Gather the Tulip and other Flower Seeds that are now ripe, letting them dry first in the Beds, and afterwards for eight or ten Days in the Sun. Also pull up your Seed-Plants, when the Seed is full grown and coloured in the Husks, and let them stand in the Green-House till the Pods are dry; so they will escape the Winds, the Wet and Birds. Now let your olitory Herbs run to Seed.

Water young-planted Shrubs and Layers, as Orange Trees, Myrtles, and Granades, but especially Amomum.

The best Time to raise Myrtles from the tender Cuttings, setting them in Shade, and watering them frequently; also to lay July-Flowers and Carnations, shading their Flowers from the Sun-Beams, and watering them. When the Rains come on, lay the Pots on one Side.

Now clip a second Time your Box Edging and other tonfil Plants, and sow some Annuals in your Edgings to flower in *September*.

Make Cuttings of Torch Thistles, *Indian Fig*, Fig Marygolds, Tythimals, Sedums, and other succulent Plants, and lay down young Stocks of the *Arabian Jessamine*; also new earth at the Surface of your Orange Tubs.

Transplant such Bulbs as were left in the Ground last Month, as Tulips, &c. but some you may keep longer out of the Ground.

Take now up your early Cyclamen, and gather its Seed to be sown in Pots immediately.

Remove Seedling Crocus, and plant them at a greater Distance.

Take

Take up some Anemonies, Ranunculas, Crocus, Crown Imperial, *Persian* Iris, Fritillaries, and Colchicum; also Gladiolus, when the Leaves are dry: Also take up and remove Dens Caninus.

Now sift Beds, and prepare them for Off-sets of Tulips and other bulbous Roots; as also for Anemonies and Ranunculas.

Sow some Anemonies, keeping them temperately moist; also Tulips in Cases of light Earth, to be sheltered in Winter.

Nip the exuberant Shoots of Vines, at the second Joint above the Fruit.

The Berries of the Coffee-Tree are now ripe, and of a bright Red; gather them, and clean them from the Pulp, and sow them immediately in Pots of fine Earth one Inch deep, to be assisted by the Hot-Beds.

The Ananus is now ripe, therefore cut off the Crown of Leaves which grows on its Top, and set it in light, sandy Earth; and with the Assistance of the Hot-Bed, made of Tanners Bark, it will strike Root immediately. It can't bear the Steem of Dung.

Now sow Kidney-Beans, latter Peas, and Salading; Royal, *Silesia*, and *Dutch* brown Lettuce to cabbage for Winter, and plant them close together, and defend them from Wet and Frost by Glassess. Also sow Turnips, Carrots and Onions for Winter. Also plant out Cauliflowers, Cabbages, Savoyes, and Chervil, for Winter. Sow also Cucumbers on a Bed of dry Litter, covered with Earth ten Inches thick; when they blossom in *September*, cover them with a common Frame and Glass, and they will yield Fruit at *Christmas*.

Earth up your Cellery Drills, and plant out more to succeed.

Make Beds for Mushrooms, covered with no more than two Inches of Earth.

Now take up Shallots, Garlick and Rocambole, when the Stalks turn yellow.

Pull up your Onions when the Stalks change Colour, and let them dry in the Sun; but let no Rain fall on them after they are pulled.

Transplant Endive for blanching, and tie up Char-doons in Hay or Straw Bands for blanching.

Product

Product of the Kitchen and Fruit Garden.

Ronceval and Winged Pease, Garden and Kidney Beans, Cauliflowers, Cabbages, Artichokes, and their small Suckers. All Sorts of Kitchen and aromatick Herbs. Sallads, as Cabbage Lettuce, Purslane, Tarragon, Burnet, young Onions, Cucumbers, blanch'd Endive, Carrots, Turnips, Beets, and Nasturtium Flowers, Musk-Melons, Wood-Strawberries, Currants, Goosberries, Raspberries, red and white Jennetings, and the Margaret Apple. The Pinate, Russet, Summer, green Chiffel, and Pearl Pears. The Carnation, Morella, great Bearer, *Morocco*, Erigot and Bigarreaux Cherries. The Nutmeg, Isabella, *Persian*, *Newington*, Violet, Muscat and Rambouillet Peaches. Nectarines. The Primordial, Myrobalan, Red, Blue, Amber, Violet, Damask, Pear, Apricot and Cinnamon Plumbs. Also the King's and Lady *Elizabeth's* Plumbs, and the Damascen, &c. Some Figs and Grapes.

Flowers now blowing in the Green-House and Flower-Garden.

Amaranthus, Asphodel, Antirrhinum, Flos-Africanus, Alkekengi, Agnus Castus, Arbutus, Amomum Plinii, late-sown Annuals, Aloes, Balsam Apple, Female Balsam, Campanella, Clematis, Cyannus, Corn-Flower, Convolvulus, Caryophyllata, Flos-Cardinalis, Caluteas, Capers, Bear Caper, Capsicum, *China* Pinks, Chrysanthemum, Digitalis, Dittany, Eringrum Planum, Eagle-flower, Fraxinella, Ficoides, Fritillaria Croffa, Foxgloves, Everlasting Flowers, Geranium Triste, Gladiolus, Gentian, Golden Rod, Hespers, Hedysarum, Holyoak, Jacca, Jessamines, Hyacinth, *Indian* Fig, Lupines, Liminium, Linaria Cretica, Ligustrum, Lemons, scarlet Lychnes, Millefolium, Musk Rose, Myrrh; also Myrtles, Marygolds *French* and *African*, *Peru* and monthly Roses, Nasturtium Indicum, Nigella, Oleander, Olive, Oranges, *Indian* Phascalus, Prunella, Phalangium, Periperbola, Passion-Flower, Pomgranates, Marvel of *Peru*, double Poppies, Scorpion Grass, Stock-Julyflowers, Scabious, Spartum Hispanicum, Sweet-

Sweet-Sultans, Sedums, Sun-flowers, scarlet Beans, Spiderwort, Roses, Tilia Indica, Tuberoses, Tulip Tree, Veronica, Volubilis, &c.

Fruits yet lasting.

The Deux-Ans, Pippins, and Winter Russeting.

In *AUGUST*.

IN this Month we may, till the 15th, water in the Evening, but afterwards only in the Morning, for fear of Frosts.

The Beginning is a good Time to inoculate, and to prune away all superfluous Branches from the Wall-Fruit, as also to nail up such as are proper to cover your Walls; but leave not your Fruit bare, except the red Nectarine.

Cut your inarched Oranges from the bearing Trees, but leave the Clay on till Spring; and unbind the Buds you inoculated last Month, if they have taken: Also pull up all Suckers from the Roots of your Trees.

You may with Security remove your perennial Greens, as Phillyreas, Myrtles, and plant Roses, and dress your Rose Trees that have done blowing.

This is also the best Time to plant Strawberries. You may also transplant Oranges and Myrtles; and now, rather than in the Spring, make Layers of the most tender Shoots of all Shrubs that remain abroad in Winter.

Slip and set Savory, Thyme, Hyssop, Rosemary, &c. and cut down such aromatic Herbs as are run to Seed within three Inches of the Ground.

Gather Seeds of Flowers and Herbs, and destroy Vermin and Insects.

Plant Saffron, sow Anise, set Slips of July-flowers and transplant most Flowers and Garden Herbs. Plant single Anemonies, and transplant Hyacinths, Narcissus, Lilies, Martagons, Snow-drops, and Seedling Carnations at a Foot distance, and Seedling Auriculas, at five Inches distance, upon a well-sifted Border. Water

them gently; and, after planting, shade them fifteen Days with Matts. Also transplant Seedling Polyanthus, and divide old Roots.

Take also up now, rather than in the Spring; and plant out such Carnation Layers as are well rooted, and set them where they are to blow; and remove old promising Carnation Roots into the Green-House in Pots of new Earth, for Winter Flowers. Remove also into the Green-House your Aloes, Torch Thistle, Euphorbiums, and other such tender and succulent Plants.

Now lay such Carnations as were not strong enough last Month, to be transplanted in *March*; and transplant bulbous Roots.

Plant Slips of Pinks into Nurseries; to be transplanted next Summer.

Give Air to your Torch Thistles, Aloes, and *Indian Figs*, in your Hot-Beds.

Cut down the withered Stalks of Flowers, and part their Roots for Increase; and shade your Anemonies and Tulip Seeds sown last Month.

Sow Larks-heels, *Candy Tufts*, Columbines, and such Plants as will endure the Winter. Also good Seeds of Bulbous Iris, Frittilaries and Ranunculus, covering them with a thin Coat of fine-sifted Earth.

Gather your Seeds in dry Days.

Now sow Cauliflowers for Winter, lest the former run to Seed. Sow also Radishes, Cabbages, Coleworts, Onions, Lettuce, Chervil, Cresses, Corn-sallad, Turnips, Endive, Spinach, Angelica, Scurvygrass, and other Plants, Roots and Herbs, for Winter and Spring; and transplant Cabbage-Lettuce, especially the *Dutch brown*: Also break off the Stems of your Artichokes that have done blowing.

Tie up Endive for blanching, and give more Earth every Fortnight to the blanching Cellery.

Till the 10th of this Month sow Turnips in Fields in the Latitude of *London*; more northerly, sow them sooner; and more southerly, later.

Near the End, gather your Hops, and take your Bees, and streighten their Passages against Wasps, and other Robbers.

The Product of the Kitchen and Fruit Garden.

Cabbages and their Sprouts, Cauliflowers, Artichokes, Cabbage Lettuce, Beets, Carrots, Potatoes, Turnips, some Beans, Pease and Kidney-Beans; all Sorts of Kitchen Herbs, Radishes, Horseradish. Cucumbers, Cresses, some Tarragon, Onions, Garlick, Shalots, Rocambole, Melons, Cucumbers for pickling, and some Cellery.

Goosberries, Raspberries, Currants, Grapes, Figs, Mulberries and Filberts, Apples. The *Windsor*, Sovereign, Orange, Burgamot, Slipper, red Catherine, King Catherine, Penny, *Prussian*, Summer Poppering, Sugar and Lording Pears. Roman, Man, Quince, Rambouillet, Musk, Grand Carnation, *Portugal*, Crown, *Bourdeaux*, Lavar, Despot, *Savoy*, and Malacotta Peaches. The Maroy, Tawny, Red, Roman, Little, Green, Cluster and Yellow Nectarines.

Imperial blue, Date, yellow late Pear, Black Pear, white Nutmeg, late Pear, Great Anthony, or Turkey and Jane Plumbs.

Cluster Grape, Muscadine, Corinth and Cornelian Grapes.

Flowers in Prime in the Green-House and Flower-Garden.

Amaranthus, Anagallis, Lusitanica, After Atticus, Amethystinum, Agnus Castus, *African* and *French* Marigolds, Asphodels, Arbutus, *Arabian* Jessamine, Aloes, Apocinum, and some Auriculas, Blatonias, *Spanish* Bells, Belvidere, Feminine Balsam, Carnations, Campanella, Clematis, Cyclamens, Venum, Convolvulus, Colchicum, Colutea yellow, Autumn Crocus, Capsicum, and Candy Tufts, Datura Turcica, Dazies, Delphinum, double Violets, Eliochryson, Eryngium Platum, Cardinal Flower, Geranium, Creticum and Nocteoless, *Guernsey* Lily, Hieracium, Minus, Aspestre, Tuberose, Hyacinth, Heartsease, Helictan, Hollyoak, Hellebore, several Jessamines, Limonium, Linaria, Lychnes, Lupines, Leucaion, Lark-spurs, Malva Arboroseus, Martagons, Myrtles, Maracoe, Marvel of Peru, Nigella, Nasturtium Indi-

cum

Oranges, Pomegranates, Mirabile, Peruvian
Pansies, Poppies, Polyanthus, Oleanders, monthly
Roses, Rosemary, Thilasi Creticum, Tuberose, double
Violets, Sweet-Sultan, Sabions, and Fiboides.

In S E P T E M B E R.

In the Beginning hough Turnips the first Time,
and gather such Fruits as are ripe, and others full
grown, that are willing to leave the Tree without
force, to be laid up for Use; but don't pull your lasting
fruit till after Michaelmas. Make also Cyder and Perry
of such Fruits as don't last.

Dry your Hops, cleanse and lay up your Hop-Poles,
take your Bees; also remove Bees, and streighten the
Entrance into their Hives, and destroy Wasps, &c.

Release inoculated Buds, if they have taken and are
inched.

Plant Stone Fruit-Trees, such as Peaches, Nectarines,
apricots, Plumbs and Cherries.

Transplant Strawberries, Asparagus, and Artichokes.
plant Endive, Cabbages, Coleworts, and Cauli-
flowers sown in August, and all fibrous rooted Plants,
and Herbs; also Dutch brown Lettuce.

Put down your Tulips, and all other bulbous Roots,
you formerly took up, your Anemonies in a light, well-
fired, natural Soil; your Ranunculus in a Compost of
half natural Earth, and half rotted Wood; your Tulips,
design'd for Borders, in a Compost of half natural Soil,
and the other half of the Rubbish of old Buildings, or
about the Roots of your pyramidal Yews which have stood
long enough to impoverish the Soil about them. Put
down also your Jonquils, to stand two or three Years;
transplant Hepaticas, Camomile, Capellaries, Matri-
maria, Violets, Primroses, Iris, Calcedon, Cyclamen,
and plant Daffodils and Colchicum. Take off your
Stratification Layers, and plant them where they are to
grow. Also transplant and make Layers of all Flower
shrubs, and all fibrous-rooted Flowers; and cut down
your Flower Stems which have done blowing, within
three Inches of the Ground.

268 *The Gentleman's Companion.*

Remove Seedling *Digitalis*, and plant out Slips of *Lychnes*; take off July-Flower Layers, Earth and all, and set them in Pots on shaded Borders, or in a Compost of dry Soil, mix'd with Lime-Rubbish.

Gather Saffron, and Earth up your Winter Plants and Sallading; Also prepare Compost to trench your Earth and Borders.

Put your choice Plants into your Conservatories; also your Greens, except Myrtles, taking off the exhausted Earth from the Surface of your Pots and Cases, stirring up the rest, and filling the Cases with rich and well-prepared Mold. Keep your Tuberoses in dry Sand, or in Papers laid up in Boxes near the Fire. Altho you house your Oranges, Lemons, Geraniums, *Ficoides*, and other tender Trees and Plants, yet let the Windows of your Conservatory stand open Night and Day.

Shelter your tender Plants, that stand abroad, and such as don't endure the House, as *Marum Syriacum*, *Cistus*, *Geranium*, *Noctolens*, *Flos Cardinalis*, *Maracoe*s, choicest *Ranunculus*, *Anemonies*, and *Acacia* of *Egypt*, &c. set two or three Inches into the Earth, in a warm Place, cloathing them with dry Moss, and covering them with Glasses; but when the Sun shines out, or kindly Showers fall, take off their Covers and give them Air.

Tie up your tall Flowers to Stakes, to defend them against the Wind.

Sow *Nasturtium Indicum*, and small hot Herbs for Salads, in Pots which must be sheltered in the Green House.

Sow Poppies, Larkspurs, annual Stocks, Candy Tufts and Venus Looking-glass, to blossom in the Spring; and Stock-July-flowers in a dry Soil, mix'd with Lime-Rubbish.

Sow the Seeds of bulbous-rooted Plants, as Tulips, *Anemonies*, *Ranunculus*, Bulbous Iris, *Martagon*, *Crocus*, and *Fritillaries*, in Pots or Cases of fresh natural, well-sifted Earth: Also *Alaternus*, *Phillyrea*, *Primroses*, *Crown Imperial*, *Delphinium*, *Nigella*, and Candy Tufts; *Auriculas* Seeds sow in Cases, and set them in the Sun till April.

No

Now sow *Spanisb* Radishes, Sorrel, Chervil and Spinach, and set out Cauliflowers under some warm Wall, defending them with Glasses from the Frosts: Also cover at Night your Cucumbers sown in *July*.

Gather your Leek Seed, if it be black, and dry the Heads upon a Sheet every Day in the Sun till you thresh or rub it out: Also gather all small Seeds that are now ripe, and Pods of Garden and Kidney Beans, and choice Peas, drying them in the Sun, then lay them up in the Pods till the Ground is ready for sowing them.

Now take the Seeds and Pulp out of Cucumbers, and let them lie together two or three Days; after that, wash them clean in fair Water, and thoroughly dry them before you lay them up.

Product of the Kitchen and Fruit-Garden.

Garden and some Kidney Beans and Roncival Pease, Artichokes, Radishes, Cauliflowers, Cabbage Lettuce, Cresses, Chervil, Onions, Taragon, Burnet, Cellery, Endive, Mushrooms, Carrots, Turnips, Skerrets, Beets, Scorzonera, Horseradish, Garlic, Shalots, Rocambole, Cabbages and their Sprouts, with Savvys, which are better when more sweetened with the Frost.

Peaches, Grapes, Figs, Pears, Apples, Plumbs, Walnuts, Filberts, Almonds, Quinces, Melons and Cucumbers.

Flowers in the Green-House and Flower-Garden.

Amaranthus, Anagalis, Antirrhinum, *African* and *French* Marygolds, After Atticus, Amomum Plinii, Asphodels, Golden Apples; some Aloes, annual Stocks, Arbutus, Auriculas, Althea Frutex, Belvederes, Bellis, Balaustia, Female Balsams, Campanulas, Colemicum, Cyclamen, Clematis, Chrysanthemum Angustifol, Candy Tufts, Convolvulus, Crocus, Capsicum Indicum, Carnations, *China* Pinks, Colutra, Dutura, double Violets, Eupatorium of *Canada*, *Aethiopic* Apples, July-flowers, Gentianella, Geranium Creticum Ficoides, Hieracion Indicum, Holyoaks, Hyacinth, Jessamines, white, *Spanisb* white, *Brasil* and *Indian* yellow, Lychnes, Linaria Cretica, Limonium, *Indian* Lily, Leonurus, *Guernsey* Lily, Larkspurs, Marvel of *Peru*, Millefolium, Moly, Malva Arborescens,

feus, monthly Roses, Myrtles, Nasturtium, Narcissus, Oranges, Oleanders, Phalargium, *Indian Phaseolus*, Passion Flowers, Poppies, Polyanthus, *Indian Pink*, *Portugal* Ranunculus, Pomegranates, Rhododendron, Sun-Flowers, Spiderwort, scarlet Beans, Saffron Crocus, Thlaspi Sempervivens, Tuberoses, Veronica, and Venus Looking-glass.

In OCTOBER.

NOW trench your Ground for Orcharding and Gardening, and lay open the Roots of old, unthriving Trees, and such as spend themselves too much, or too soon in Blossoms: Also now transplant your Fruit and Forest Trees, 'tis the best Time. Gather your Winter Fruits, and make Cyder and Perry of Winter Fruit.

Chuse no Trees for your Walks that are not above two Years grafting.

You may now plant Hops, and safely remove your Bees.

Continue to transplant and lay Roses, and such like flowering Shrubs; as also the Cuttings of Jessamines and Honeyuckles, in shady, well-wrought Borders, burying at least two Joins in the Ground.

Complete your Plantations of Herbs for Winter Use.

Sow all Sorts of Fruit Stones, Nuts, Kernels and Seeds, either for Trees or Stocks.

Sow Cyder-Pressings in Beds of fresh Earth, to raise Stocks; and lay up Acorns, and the Mast of other Trees in dry Sand.

Plant Gooseberries, Currants and Raspberries, from Suckers or Cuttings.

Make Plantations of Apples in Pots, grafted on Paradise Stocks.

Now sow the Berries of Yew, Holly, and such Evergreens as have been prepared in Earth or Sand.

Set your Pots of Carnations, which are now blowing, into the Green-House, near the Door to get Air.

Make an end of, planting Tulips; put also down Anemonies and Ranunculus.

Take

Take Care your Carnations get not too much Wet. You may plant out all bulbous Roots; and, if you have neglected to do it last Month, you may still remove Herbs and Plants with fibrous Roots. House your Myrtles, Amomum Plinii, Morum Syriacum, Meleanthos, and such other tender Greens as remained abroad, giving them, and all others in the Green-House, a fresh Coat of Earth, without disturbing their Roots; also tie up such as grow disorderly, and set them in proper Places to stand the Winter: And let the Shelves of your Green-House be so disposed as to be ranged in the Middle, at an equal Distance from the Wall behind, and the Windows before. Place your tenderest Plants, such as Aloes, Euphorbium, Torch and Melon Thistles, &c. nearest the Sun. Give no Water to your succulent Plants after the Middle of this Month, and whenever you water any of your housed Plants, let it be in the Morning when the Sun is upon them. Keep your Windows open Day and Night till the 15th; after that, only in the Day.

Move your Seedling Holyoaks, and others.

Sow Alaternus, Phillyrea, Cyprus, Ranunculus and Vernal Crocus, &c.

In the first Week sow Cucumbers on natural Ground, to be transplanted into Pots, and sheltered in the Nights, till a Hot-Bed is necessary for them; these will prove stronger and better than those planted in *December* and *January*.

Sow Cresses, Lettuce, Beets, Mustard-seed, Radishes, Turnips, Mint and Spinach on some decay'd Hot-Bed; also Radishes and Pease, in some warm Soil and Exposure, for Spring; Also Hotspur Pease and *Spanish* Beans in some well exposed Border, under a Hedge or Wall.

Transplant Cabbages, Cauliflowers and Lettuce. Cover your *July* Cauliflowers by Night, but give them Air by Day, if the Season permits.

Continue to earth up Cellery for blanching, and dress and earth up such Artichokes as have done blowing.

Set Kidney Beans in Baskets under a warm Wall, to be assisted by Hot-Beds. They will bear early.

Take up Cauliflower Plants which begin to flower, tie their Leaves together, and bury their Roots and Stalks in Sand in a Cellar: They will increase, and

keep two or three Months. Also cut Artichokes with long Stalks, and set them in Sand.

Take up Carrots and Parsnips, and lay them close in a Trench six Inches deep, in a dry Place in your Garden, cutting off their green Tops, and cover them about six Inches deep with Wheat Straw Ridgewise, and they will keep till June.

Roll and mow your Walks and Camomile, finish your Weeding, and cleanse your Garden.

The Product of the Kitchen and Fruit-Garden.

Some Cauliflowers, Artichokes, Pease, Beans, Cucumbers and Melons, also Kidney Beans sown in July; Turneps, Carrots, Parsnips, Potatoes, Skirrets, Scorzonera, Beets, Onions, Garlic, Shalots, Rocambole, Chardoons, Cresses, Chervil, Mustard, Radish, Rape, Spinach, Lettuce small and cabbaged, Burnet, Tarragon, blanched Cellery, and Endive. Late Peaches and Plumbs, Grapes, Figs, and Mulberries, some Filberts and Walnuts, the Bullace, Pines, and Arbutus, and a great Variety of Apples and Pears.

Flowers blowing in the Green-House and Flower-Garden.

Amaranthus, Tricolor, &c. After Atticus, Amomum, Antirrhinum, Arbutus, Golden Apple, Aloes, Apocinums, Anemonies, *African* and *French* Marygolds, Balusts, Colchicum, Clematis, Cyclamen, Carnations, Saffron Crocus, Capsicum, double Violets, Ficoides or Fig-Marygolds, Stock July-flowers, Geranium Triste, Heliotropes, Hearts-Ease or Viola Tricolor, Hyacinth, several Jessamines, Limonium, Lychnes, Leonurus, Laurustinus, Myrtles, Marvel of Peru, Millefolium Luteum, Marygolds, Nasturtium Persicum, Oranges, Phalangium, Pomegranates, Pölyanthus, Pilosella, monthly Roses, Passion Trees, Violets, Veronica.

In NOVEMBER.

TRENCH and dig your Grounds, and set early Pease and Beans. Remove and plant Fruit and Forest

Forest Trees, and furnish your Nurseries against Spring. Stake all new-planted Trees, and shelter your tender Plants from Frosts and Rains.

Now prune your Vineyards, and plant new Vines; the best Bearers in Borders here are, the black Currant Grape, the white Muscadine, *Burgundy*, and the *July Sweet-water*. Also draw Branches of Vines, that were the Shoots of last Year, thro' the Holes in the Bottom of your Pots, so as that when your Pots are filled with Earth, there may be a good Number of Eyes above Ground.

Plant Suckers and Cuttings of Gooseberries, Currants and Vines, also plant Mint on your Hot-Beds: Plant Roses, Althea Frutex, Lylial, Syringas, Peonies, Cytisus, and all fibrous Roots; also your fairest Tulips, if the Weather be open, in Places of Shelter; and transplant ordinary Jessamine.

Continue to trench your Ground, laying it up in Ridges to mellow, and wheel in Dung, if the Weather be frosty it will not spoil your Walks; and cleanse your Walks from autumnal Leaves.

House your best Carnations, or rather set them in a Pent-house against a South Wall; and sow *Agri-colas* Seeds.

About the Middle cover your tender Plants in your Conservatory, shutting out all Cold; and if the Frosts reach your Green-House, kindle some Charcoal; and only shew Light to your Plants while the Sun shines.

Don't water Aloes or Sedums during the Winter: Cover Ranunculus, and Evergreen Seedlings.

Set *Spanish* Beans and Hotspur Pease, in a well-exposed Place, and prepare a gentle Hot-Bed for Cucumbers sown in *October*, and one colder for Kidney Beans: Also plant the Roots of Asparagus, out of some old, worn-out Bed, into Hot-Beds, two Inches at least from the Dung, and let them be covered with four or five Inches of Earth.

Earth up Cellery, and tie up Endive Plants for blanching: Also cut off the Stem of your Asparagus within two or three Inches of the Ground, and fling up some Earth out of the Allies on the Beds; if they are warm, give them a Covering of rich Soil.

Take up Potatoes, Carrots, Parsnips, Cabbages, Cauliflowers, &c. either for Use, or to transplant for Seed in the Spring; and dig up Liguonies.

Carry Dung into your Hop-Garden to rot; and cover your Strawberries, and other tender Plants, with Dung, Litter, or Straw.

Fit your Ground for Artichokes, and as yet sow Nuts and Fruit Stones.

Cover with Matrasses, Boxes, Pots, Straw or Litter, your new-sown Plants and tender Seedlings.

Stop up your Bees close, but leave little Breathing-Holes; or you may house them.

The Product of the Kitchen and Fruit-Garden.

Cauliflowers in the Green-House and some Artichokes, Carrots, Parsnips, Turnips, Beets, Skirrets, Scorzonera, Horseradish, Potatoes, Onions, Garlic, Shalots, Rocambole, Cellery, Parsley, Sorrel, Thyme, Savory, sweet Marjorum and Clary, Cabbages, their Sprouts, Savoy Cabbages, Spinach, late Cucumbers, hot Herbs on Hot-Beds, Burnet, Cabbage Lettuce, Endive blanched. Several Sorts of Apples and Pears, some Bullace, Medlars, Services, Arbutus, Walnuts, Hazel Nuts and Chestnuts.

Flowers blowing in the Green-House and Flower-Garden.

Anemonies, Antirrhinum, Aloes, Amomum Plinii, golden Apples, Bellis Clematis, Carnations, Candy Tufts, Ficoides, Geraniums, Gentianella, several Jessamines, Leonurus, Laurustinus, Myrtles, Musk Rose, Meadow Saffron, Pansies, Passion Flowers, Polyanthos, Stock Jule-flowers, Violets, Veronica, &c.

In D E C E M B E R.

GUARD against Frosts, by providing Shelter for your Plants abroad, by Litter or otherwise.

Keep the Doors of your Conservatory and the Windows well matted, if the Frosts are extreme; for if your

your Oranges and the Plants take Cold, it will be difficult to recover them.

Transplant such Fruit and other Trees as are not very tender, and can endure the Frost. Plant Vines, and prune them.

If the Weather be open, plant also Cions, and other Slips and Stocks for Grafting.

Lop off confused and useless Branches in your Orchard Trees, covering the Wounds with a Mixture made of an equal Quantity of Bees-Wax, Rosin and Tar, and a Quantity of Tallow equal to half the Quantity of any of the rest.

Cut also your Hedges and Trees, remove all damaged Fruits out of your Fruitary, set Traps for Vermin, and feed weak Bees.

Sow or set Bay and Laurel Berries; dig weedy Hop-Gardens, and carry Dung into them, and necessary Manure into your other Gardens; and dig Liquorice.

Sow Peas and Beans of the same Kinds as in the former Month: Sow also on Hot-Beds, Lettuces, Radishes, Cresses, Mustard, and other hot Herbs for Sallads; and line your Hot-Beds, to preserve their Warmth: Also make Hot-Beds for Asparagus, as in the former Month,

Preserve your best Anemonies, Ranunculus, and Carnations, &c. from too much Rain and Frost.

The Product of the Kitchen and Fruit-Garden.

Many Sorts of Cabbages, Savoys, Spinach, and some Cauliflowers in the Conservatory, and Artichokes in Sand. Roots we have, as in the last Month; small Herbs on the Hot-Beds for Sallads; Also Mint, Tarragon, and Cabbage Lettuce preserved under Glasses, Cresses, Chervil, Cellery, and Endive blanched Herbs, as Sage, Thyme, Savory, Beet Leaves, Tops of young Pease, Parsley, Sorrel, Spinach, Leeks and sweet Marjorum, Marygold-Flowers and Mint. Asparagus on the Hot-Bed, Cucumbers on the Plants sown in July and August, and Plenty of Pears and Apples.

Flowers now blowing in the Green-House and Flower-Garden.

Anemonies, Antirrhinum, Aloes, Golden Apples, Winter Aconite, Geraniums, Winter Cyclamen, *Glaftonbury* Thorn, Ficoides, Arbutus, Amomum Plinii, black Hellebore, Citrons, Oranges, Lemons, *Candy* Tuft Trees, several Jessamines, Iris Clusii, Primroses, Polyanthos, strip'd Lily, Laurustinus, Pyracantha, Snow Drops, Stock July-flowers, Thlaspi Sempervivens, Wall Flowers, Yucca, &c. and in our Hot-Beds some Hyacinths and Narcissus.

Note, That great Care is to be taken of your Conservatory, for a too-sharp Air let in will shrivel and kill your Plants, and if fresh Air is not let in they will be suffocated; therefore the Air of the Anti-Chamber of your Green-House ought only to be let in to impregnate the other with new Parts, which contribute to Vegetation: For when the Qualities of the Air necessary to preserve either the animal or vegetable Life are exhausted, the remaining Air will be useless. Even those Qualities in the Air which are necessary to preserve and maintain Fire and Flame, when they are exhausted the Flame or Fire will go out, but a little fresh Air timely let in will revive it, before it is quite extinct.

This same Quality of the Air is that which preserves the vital Flame, which the Air returning from the Lungs is deprived of; and therefore new Air is taken in as a Supply, in every Act of Inspiration.

Now give little Water to your Green-House Plants, and give none to your Aloes, Euphorbiums, Torch and Melon Thistles, Sedums, and *Indian* Figs, till almost the End of *March*.

Shelter your tender Flowers, and pick rotted Leaves from your Exotics.



A S H O R T

A SHORT T A B L E,

Expounding the Herbs, Drugs, &c.
before-mention'd.

A

A *Uripigmentum* or *Orpiment*, is a yellow, hard Substance, to be bought at the Apothecaries.

Aristolochia longa, otherwise called *red Madder*, is an Herb growing in almost every Field.

Aristolochia rotunda, is the Herb called *Gallinal*.

Agrimony, or *Egrimony*, is an usual and known Herb.

Ameos, *Cummin-royal*, is an Herb by some called *Bulwort*, *Bishops-weed*, or *Herb-William*.

Annise, is that Herb which bears *Annise-Seeds*.

Aves, by some called *Dill*, is an Herb like *Fennel*, only the Seeds are broad like *Orange-Seeds*.

Agnus-castus, by some called *Tulesain*, is an Herb with redish Leaves, and full of Sinews, like *Plantain*.

Egyptiacum, is a redish Unguent, to be bought at the Apothecaries, and is sovereign for *Fistulas*.

Assafœtida, a stinking strong Gum, to be bought at the Apothecaries.

Adraces or *Adarces*, is that Salt which is engendered on the Marshes by the Violence of the Sun's Heat, after the Tide is gone away.

Asterion, is an Herb growing amongst Stones, as on Walls, or such like. It appeareth by Night. It hath yellow Flowers like Foxgloves, and the Leaves are round and blewish.

Aloes, is a bitter Gum to be bought at the Apothecaries.

B

Beet or *Beets*, is an Herb with long, broad Leaves, indented, and grows in Hedge-Rows.

Bale

278 *Table of Herbs, Drugs, &c.*

Bole Armoniac, is a red, hard, earthy Substance, to be bought at the Apothecaries, and is of a cold and binding Nature.

Broomwort, is an Herb with brown-coloured Leaves, and beareth a blue Flower, and most commonly grows in Woods.

C

Cresses are of two Kinds, *Water-Cresses* and *Land-Cresses*. They have broad, smooth Leaves; and the first grows in moist Places, the latter in Gardens, or by Highways.

Cummen. See *Ameos*.

Carthamus, is an Herb in Taste like *Saffron*, and is called *Bastard Saffron* or *Mock Saffron*.

Calamint, is an ordinary Herb, and grows by the Sides of Ditches in Highways, and sometimes in Gardens.

Coriander, is an Herb which beareth a round, little Seed.

Cives, are a small, round Herb, growing in Gardens, like young *Onions* or *Scallions*, not above a Week old.

D

Diapente, a sovereign Powder made of five equal Simples, as *Bay-berries*, *Ivory*, *Aristolochia-retunda*, *Myrrh*, and *Gentian*, and may be bought of the Apothecaries.

Dittory, is an Herb called *Peppercorn*, and grows in many open Fields.

Dragon, is an Herb common in every Garden.

E

Elecampane, is an Herb by some called *Horsehelm*, and grows almost in every Field and Garden.

Eye-bright, is an Herb growing in every Meadow.

F

Fenugreek, is an Herb which hath a long, slender Stalk, hollow within, and sown in Gardens, but easier to be had at the Apothecaries.

Fern-Osmund, is an Herb by some called *Water-Fern*, hath a triangular Stalk, is like *Polipody*, and it grows in Bogs and hollow Grounds.

G

Galingal. See *Aristolochia-retunda*.

Horse-Mint,

H

Horfe-Mint, is an Herb that grows near the Water, and is called *Water-Mint* or *Brook-Mint*.

Horfe-helm. See *Elecampane*.

Houfeleek, is a Weed that grows upon the Tops of Houfes that are thatched, and is like a small *Artichoke*.

Herb-Robert hath Leaves like *Herb-Bennet*, and small Flowers of a purple Colour, and grows in most common Fields and Gardens.

I

Ivory, is the Shavings of the Elephant's Tooth, or the old Hart or Stag's Horn, being the smooth White thereof.

K

Knot-grass, is a long, round Weed, with little, round, smooth Leaves, and the Stalk very knotty and rough, winding and wreathing one Seam into another very confusedly, and grows chiefly in moist Places.

L

Lettuce, is a common Salad Herb in every Garden.

Lollium, is that Weed which we call *Cochel*, and grows amongst the Corn in every Field.

Liverwort, is a common Herb in every Garden.

M

Maith, is a Weed that grows amongst Corn, and is called by some *Hogs-fennel*.

Myrr, is a Gum to be bought at the Apothecaries.

Mandrake, is an Herb which grows in Gardens, and beareth certain yellow Apples, from which the Apothecaries draw a sovereign Oil for broken Bones.

N

Neepe. See *Calamint*.

O

Origanum, is an Herb called *Wild-Marjoram*, and grows both in open Fields and in low Copfes.

Orifice, is the Mouth, Hold, or open Passage of any Wound or Ulcer.

Opopanax, a Drug usually to be bought of the Apothecaries.

P

Pitch of Burgundy is *Resin*, and the blacker the better.

Plantain,

280 *Table of Herbs, Drugs, &c.*

Plantain, is a fat Leaf growing close to the Ground, and is called *Whay-bred Leaf*.

Penny-royal, is an Herb that groweth both in Fields and Gardens, and is best when it flowereth.

Patch-grease, is that Tallow which is gotten from the Boiling of Shoemakers Shreds.

Quinquesolium, by some called *Cinquefoil*, is that Herb which is called *Five-leaved Grass*.

Red Oaker, is a hard, red Stone, which we call *Raddle*, *Orell*, *Marking-Stone*, &c.

Selendine, *Celandine*, or *Tetterwort*, is a Weed growing in the Bottoms of Hedges, which, being broke, a yellow Juice will drop and run out of it.

Sherwit, is an Herb with many small Leaves, and grows most in Gardens.

Stubwort, is an Herb which grows in woody Places, and is called *Wood Sorrel*.

Sanguis Draconis, is a hard, red Gum, to be bought at the Apothecaries.

Sperma Ceti, is the Seed of the Whale, excellent for inward Bruises, and to be bought at the Apothecaries.

Stonecrop, is a green Weed, growing on the Tops of Walls.

Sal Armoniack, is a Drug to be bought at the Apothecaries.

Tussilago, is that Weed which we call *Colts-foot*.

Triapharmicon, a Composition made of three Simples, and to be bought at the Apothecaries.

Turmerick, is a yellow Simple of strong Savour, to be bought at the Apothecaries.

Verdigrease, is a green, fat Gum, drawn from Copper, and is to be bought at the Apothecaries.

Wood-roof, or *Wild Eglantine*, is that small, thin Flower which grows upon Briars, in Woods or Hedges.

Yarrow, is an Herb called the *Wound Violet*, and grows in Lakes or marshy Grounds.



I N D E X.

A

A NGLING, *the whole Art of*, Page 207. — *the Angler's Rod, Lines, Corks, Hooks, and other Tools*, 208. — *the Angler's Apparel and inward Qualities*, 218. — *the best and worst Seasons to angle in, and their Uses*, 222. — *of Baits*, 226. — *of Angling for every Kind of Fish*, 230. — *taking Fish without Angles*, 236. — *preserving Fish from Devourers*, 237. — *ordering of Ponds for the Nourishment of Fish*, 238. — *the best Water-Lime*, 240. — *See Fishing*.

B

B EES, *the Nature, ordering, and Preservation of them*, 113.
B ULL, *Cow, Calf, or Ox, their Shape, Breed, Use, Choice, and Preservation*, 67. — *Diseases and Cure*, 11.

C

C OCKS, (*fighting*) *the Choice, ordering, Breeding, and dieting them for Battle*, 137.
C O N I E S, *their Nature, Choice, Profit, and Preservation*, 109. — *Diseases and Cure*, 112.
C O U R S I N G. *See Greyhounds*.

F

F I S H I N G. *Of making the Fish-pond*, 204. — *taking all Sorts of Fish with Nets, or otherwise*, 206. — *See Angling*.

G A R D E N I N G,

I N D E X.

G

- GARDENING.** *Observables and Product of the Kitchen, Fruit, and Flower Garden in January, 242. — February, 245. — March, 247. — April, 251. — May, 254. — June, 257. — July, 260. — August, 264. — September, 267. — October, 270. — November, 272. — December, 274.*
- GOATS,** *the Nature, Shape, and ordering of them, 96. — their Diseases and Cure, 98.*
- GREYHOUNDS,** *of coursing with them, and the Excellencies of the Sport, 168. — the Laws of the Leash or Coursing, 174.*

H

- HAWKING,** *with all Sorts of Hawks, the Art thereof, 149. — general Cures for the Diseases of Hawks, 157.*
- HERBS, Drugs, &c.** *Table expounding them, 277.*
- HORSES,** *general Directions for the Choice, and ordering of them, 1. — Riding them, 8. — Breeding all Sorts for the Husbandman's Use, 29. — for Travel, and how to make them amble, 34. — ordering and dietting them for Hunting, 35. — for Running, 40. — for Travelling, 45. — How to make lean or sick ones fat in fourteen Days, 66. — How to make white Stars on them, 67. — their Diseases and Cure, viz. Fevers, Plagues, and Infections, 46. — Head-ach, Frenzy, or Staggers, 47. — Sleeping Evil, ib. — Falling Evil, Planet-struck, Night-mare, or Palsy, ib. — General Cramp, or Convulsion of Sinews, 48. — Cough, Cold, Consumption, or Putrefaction of the Lungs, ib. — Running Glanders, 49. — Hide-bound, or Consumption of the Flesh, ib. — Breast Pain, or any other Sickness proceeding from the Heart, as the Anticor, &c. ib. — Tired Horses, 50. — Diseases of the Stomach; as Surfeits, loathing of Meat and Drink, &c. ib. — Foundering in the Body, ib. — Hungry Evil, 51. — Diseases of the Liver, as Inflammations, Obstructions and Consumptions, ib. — Diseases of the Gall, especially the Yellows, ib. — Spleen, 52. — Dropsy, ib. — Cholick, Belly-ach, and Belly-bound, ib. — Lax,*

I N D E X.

— *Lax, or Bloody-flux*, 53. — *Falling of the Fundament*, ib. — *Bots and Worms*, ib. — *Pain in the Kidneys*, *Pain-Piss, or Stone*, 54. — *Strangurion*, ib. — *Pissing Blood*, ib. — *Colt Evil, Mattering of the Yard, Falling of the Yard, and shedding the Seed*, ib. — *Drinking Venom, as Horse-Leaches, Hens-Dung, &c.* 55. — *Costiveness*, ib. — *Neefings and Frictions*, 56. — *Diseases in the Eyes; as Watry, Bloodshot, Dim Eyes; a Stroke, Wart, Inflammation, Pearl, Pin, Web, or Harw in the Eye*, ib. — *Imposthume in the Ear, Pole-evil, Fistula, Swelling after Bleeding, gall'd Back, Canker in the Withers, Sit-fast, Wens, Navel-Gall, or hollow Ulcer*, 57. — *Vives*, ib. — *Strangle, or any Boil, Botch, or other Imposthumes*, ib. — *Canker*, 58. — *Bleeding at the Nose*, ib. — *Diseases of the Mouth; as bloody Rists, Ligs, Lampas, Camery, Inflammation, Tongue-burt, or Barbs*, ib. — *Pain in the Teeth, or loose Teeth*, 59. — *Crick in the Neck*, ib. — *Falling of the Crest, Manginess in the Mane, or shedding the Hair*, ib. — *Pain in the Withers*, ib. — *Swaying the Back, or Weakness in the same*, 60. — *Itch in the Tail, general Scab, Manginess, or Farcy*, ib. — *Halting, by Strain or Stroke*, ib. — *Foundering in the Feet*, 61. — *Splent, Curbe, Bone-spaven, knobby or bony Excreffion or Ring-bone*, ib. — *Malander, Selander, Pains, Scratches, Mellet, Mules, Crown-scabs, &c.* ib. — *Upper or Nether Attaint, or Hurt by Over-reaching*, 62. — *Infirmity of Hoofs*, ib. — *Blood-spaven, or Hoof-borry, &c.* 63. — *Wind Galls*, ib. — *Enterfairing, or Shackle-gall, or any Gallings*, ib. — *Hurts on the Crownet, as the Quitterbone or Matlong*, 64. — *Wounds in the Foot, as Gravelling, Pricking, &c.* ib. — *Aubury, or Tetter*, ib. — *Cords, or String-bolt*, 65. — *Spur-galling, or fretting the Skin and Hair*, ib. — *Old Sores and Wounds*, ib. — *Cut Sinews*, ib. — *Dead Flesh*, ib. — *Knots in the Joints*, ib. — *Venomous Wounds; as Bite of a Mad Dog, &c.* ib. — *Lice and Nits*, 66. — *Flies*, ib. — *Broken Bones, or out of Joint*, ib. — *Sores*, ib.

HUNTING, the particular Knowledges belonging thereunto, 176. — the Diseases and Cure of Hounds, 190. — Breeding all Manner of Hounds, 195. — the several Chases which Hounds are to hunt, 198.

MARES,

I N D E X.

M

MARES, *their Diseases and Cure*, viz. *Barrenness, Consumption, Rage of Love, casting Foals, Hardness to Foal, and how to make them cast their Foals*, 55. — See *Horses*.

P

POULTRY. *The ordering, fattening, and cramming of Dunghill Cocks, Hens, Chickens, Capons*, 118. — *their Diseases and Cure*, 124. — *the Nature, Choice, Breeding and Diseases of Geese*, 127. — *the Nature, &c. of Turkeys*, 130. — *tame and wild Ducks, and such Water-Fowl*, 131. — *Swans, and their Feeding*, 132. — *Peacocks and Peahens, their Increase and ordering*, 133. — *tame or rough-footed Pidgeons*, 134. — *nourishing and fattening Hearnns, Puets, Gulls and Bitters*, 135. — *feeding Partridge, Pheasant, and Quail*, 135. *Godwits, Knots, Gray-Plover, or Curlews*, 136. *Blackbirds, Thrushes, Felfares, or any small Birds*, ib.

R

RECREATIONS. *Of shooting in the Long-Bow*, 240. — *Cross-Bow*, 241. — *Bowling*, ib. — *Tennis or Baloon*, 242.

RIDING. *The Art of riding a great Horse, or for Service or Pleasure*, 8.

S

SHEEP, *their Use, Choice, Shape, and Preservation*, 84. — *Diseases and Cure*, 88. — *Precepts for the Shepherd*, 95.

SWINE, *their Nature, Use, Shape and Preservation*, 100. — *Diseases and Cure*, 103. — *feeding for Bacon or Lard*, 107.



F I N I S.

Con-
to
See

g of
their
ling
of
such
32
ing,
nou-
ers,
35
36
ib.

oon,
vice

ion,
hep-

CO.
u or